

## Foreword

---

Thank you for purchasing this car.

Please read this manual carefully before using this vehicle for the first time and keep it properly after reading. This manual is applicable to BJ60 series light off-road vehicles and their derivatives. This Manual will help you to familiarize yourself as quickly as possible with the structure, various functions and methods of using the car, as well as the relevant provisions of the Company. The user will lose the right to make a claim for any losses which may result from failure to use the car in accordance with the guidance of these Instructions or make alterations without the approval of the Company. Any application for warranty will be rejected by our authorized service providers. The contents of the Manual will help you understand the correct ways in which the vehicle can be driven and maintained, allowing you to enjoy your driving to the full.

The purpose of this manual is to provide the user with instructions and guidance on the use and maintenance of BJ60 series light off-road vehicles and their derivatives. If you have any questions about this vehicle or this manual, please contact our authorized dealership of BAIC Group Off-road Vehicle Sales Service Co., Ltd.

Given that this Company will continue to develop new models and improve the car, the equipment and performance of subsequent models will change. However, no separate notice will be made of such changes. Please do not use another edition of the instructions to make comparisons with the equipment or performance of the car you have purchased, or use discrepancies between the two to request supplementary equipment. If you have any questions about the vehicle you have purchased and this manual, please consult authorized dealership of BAIC Group Off-road Vehicle Sales Service Co., Ltd.

The driver must strictly abide by all auto-related laws and regulations. When this Manual was compiled, the relevant laws and regulations were fully taken into account and complied with. However, some of the entries of the Manual may not accord with the latest revised laws or regulations at the time of your purchase.

## Foreword

---

WARNING, CAUTION, HINT and a number of special symbols will appear frequently in this Manual. Special attention should be paid to these contents. Ignoring these warning notes may result in personal injury or damage to your vehicle.



“WARNING” indicates that if the operational instruction is not followed, it is very likely to cause serious personal injury or even death result;



“Note” implies that dangerous or unsafe operation will cause personal injury or vehicle damage;



“HINT” provides useful information.

Equipment marked with "\*" is only available for some model or as an option or optional feature on some model. The actual configuration of the vehicle shall prevail.

This Company continuously improves all its car models. We therefore reserve the right to modify any part of the vehicle, equipment or technical specification at any time. Your kind understanding will be appreciated. Data relating to delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weight, fuel consumption, specifications, and functionality are accurate at the time of publication or availability. Some of the equipment described in this article may not have been fitted to the vehicle (please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for details).

Without the written consent of the Company, no one shall reproduce, photocopy or translate any part of this manual, or reproduce or store this publication in a public retrieval system, or record it electrically or mechanically or disseminate it in any other form.

The Company hereby solemnly declares that it shall be fully responsible for the revision, interpretation and explanation of this User Manual and that it shall reserve all the rights and interests as set forth in the Copyright Law, as well as the right of revision.

BAIC International Development Co., Ltd

March 2023

## Contents

---

<b>1 Instructions for Safe Operation .....</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>3 Driving guideline .....</b>	<b>149</b>
Safe Driving .....	6	Start and Driving .....	150
Seat belt .....	11	Drive mode .....	162
SRS .....	22	Transmission system .....	164
Car Safety for Children .....	32	Differential lock * .....	165
Safety label .....	40	Crawl control (CCO) .....	168
 		Brake system .....	170
<b>2 Operation system and equipment .....</b>	<b>41</b>	Parking sensor * .....	185
Cab .....	42	Backup camera .....	188
Turn on and turn off vehicle .....	65	AVM .....	189
AVM sunroof* .....	83	APA system * .....	193
Electric side step * .....	86	Remote control parking with the mobile phone* .....	197
A/C system .....	88	Reverse with track guidance assist * .....	199
Vehicle Lights and Vision .....	98	System of depth detection .....	200
Seats and Storage Facilities .....	114	Cruise control * .....	201
Dashcam* .....	143	Introduction to intelligent driving assistance .....	204
Accessories and Refitting .....	147		

## Contents

---

ACC.....	205	Urea system .....	281
Vehicle active security .....	225	Battery .....	283
HUD* .....	236	Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade .....	286
Software upgrade (OTA) .....	237	Tire.....	290
Idle start-stop system * .....	239	Recovery and environmental protection .....	297
Driving Skills .....	241		
<b>4 Maintenance .....</b>	<b>250</b>	<b>5 Accident handling.....</b>	<b>298</b>
Safety and Maintenance .....	251	Roadside assistance .....	299
Fuel system.....	253	Warning Triangles .....	299
Remote communication module .....	255	Spare Tires and Tools .....	300
Internal Maintenance.....	256	Replacement of Fuse .....	308
External Maintenance.....	258	Replacement of Bulb .....	320
Engine Compartment .....	264	Emergency Startup .....	321
Engine oil .....	268	Emergency tow .....	322
Coolant .....	274		
Brake fluid.....	278		

<b>6 Technical data .....</b>	<b>325</b>
Identification Number .....	326
Vehicle Parameters.....	330
<b>7 Rescue services .....</b>	<b>336</b>
Rescue service .....	337
<b>8 Maintenance information .....</b>	<b>338</b>
Maintenance Specifications .....	339

---

---

# 1 Instructions for Safe Operation

Safe Driving .....	6
Seat belt .....	11
SRS .....	22
Car Safety for Children .....	32
Safety label.....	40

## Safe Driving

### General Instructions

This section mainly introduces the important information, key points of operation, suggestions and safety precautions for safe driving. For your own safety and the safety of you and your passengers, please carefully read and follow the relevant provisions.

#### Note

- **The user shall correctly identify each part of the vehicle before driving.**
- **Understand the correct usage of each switch.**
- **Understand the correct usage of accelerator pedal, brake pedal, turning wheel, transmission, ABS system, etc.**
- **Please be sure to carry this manual with your vehicle. If you lend or resell the vehicle to others, please hand it over to the new owner.**

### Adjust the seat correctly

While the vehicle is running, all passengers should put their seat back upright, appropriately adjust the seat position, and wear a seat belt.

### Always use the seat belt.

Seat belt can provide the best protection in all sorts of vehicle collisions. Although the airbag assists the seat belt and provides protection, the airbag is designed to inflate only during moderate to severe frontal impacts (within 30 degrees in both directions). In addition, if a seat belt is not fastened before a collision occurs, the airbags may actually harm the driver or passengers. Therefore, although your vehicle is equipped with airbags, please still make sure that you and all passengers always correctly wear seat belts.

### Place all child occupants properly

Children should be properly placed in child seats in the back seats rather than the front seats to ensure maximum safety. If a child is too small to wear a seat belt, make sure he/she is placed properly in a specially-designed child protection device.

### Be cautious of the dangers of airbag

While airbags can play a protective role, sitting too close to them or failing to properly protect passengers can still cause serious or even fatal injuries. In particular, babies, children and shorter adults are most vulnerable. Please be absolutely sure to follow all the instructions in this Manual.

### Do NOT Drive Drunk

Do NOT drive if you have drunk alcohol. Alcohol will reduce your ability to respond to environmental changes. The more you drink, the slower your responses will be. Therefore, do NOT drive while drunk. Do NOT allow your friend to drive when drunk either.

### Control Your Vehicle's Speed

Excessive speeding is a main cause of vehicle collisions and casualties. The higher the speed, the greater the danger. Be ABSOLUTELY sure NOT to turn a blind eye to the official maximum speed limit and drive at a speed beyond that which is suitable for the driving conditions encountered.



## Keep Vehicle in a Safe Driving State

Punctures or mechanical faults are all extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, be sure to regularly check tires and vehicle condition, and complete various types of regular maintenance as specified in the maintenance sheet.

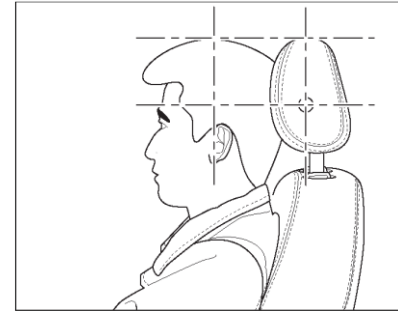
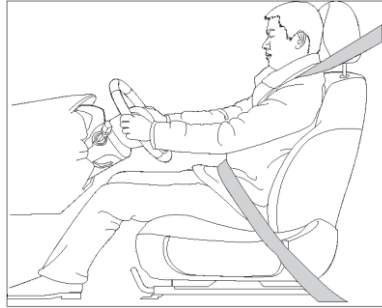
### Warning

- Never be distracted by external factors during driving, such as talking or calling the occupants.
- Never drive a vehicle when the reaction is falling. Drugs, alcohol and narcotics may impair human reaction.
- Strictly abide by traffic regulations and speed restrictions.
- Always pay attention to reducing the speed and adjusting to suitable speed based on current road conditions, traffic flow, and weather conditions.

## The correct sitting posture of driver and passengers

### Correct Sitting Posture of Driver

The sitting posture of the driver relates directly to driving safety and the degree of driver fatigue.



For his/her safety and the safety of passengers and to reduce the risk of personal injury and death during an accident, the driver should perform the following operations:

- Adjust the steering wheel so that a distance of at least 25cm is maintained between the chest and the steering wheel.
- Move the seat forwards or backwards to the appropriate position, so that the knees are slightly bent to make it possible to fully hit the accelerator pedal and brake pedal.
- Make sure you can hold the highest point of the turning wheel when bending your elbow slightly.
- Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same level as the top of your head and the back of your head is as close to the headrest as possible.

- Adjust the backrest to a suitable angle so that the back is fully attached to the backrest.
- Wear seat belt correctly.

 Warning

To reduce the risk of injury during an accident, please make sure that passengers strictly follow the following instructions:

- The distance between the driver's chest and the turning wheel should not be too close, otherwise the SRS cannot provide effective protection and may cause more serious injury to the driver.
- The driver's hands should always be held on the outer circle of the turning wheel (between 9-10 o'clock on the left hand and 3-4 o'clock on the right hand) to ensure that all instruments and indicator lights on the instrument cluster can be seen.
- Adjust the turning wheel so that it is facing the chest of the driver and make sure that the adjusting mechanism is locked firmly. This will effectively reduce the risk of injury when the airbag is triggered.

 Warning

- Do not tilt the backrest excessively during driving. Be sure to wear seat belt and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury during emergency brake.

#### Correct Sitting Posture of Front Passenger

To ensure his/her safety and to reduce the risk of injury, the front passenger should perform the following operations:

- Adjust the seat as far as possible so that the front passenger is at the proper distance from the dashboard. This will provide the most effective protection when the airbag is triggered.
- Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same level as the top of your head and the back of your head is as close to the headrest as possible.
- Adjust the backrest so that the back fits the backrest.
- Wear seat belt correctly.

- Keep your feet in the foot space in front of the front seats.

 Warning

To reduce the risk of injury during an accident, please make sure that passengers strictly follow the following instructions:

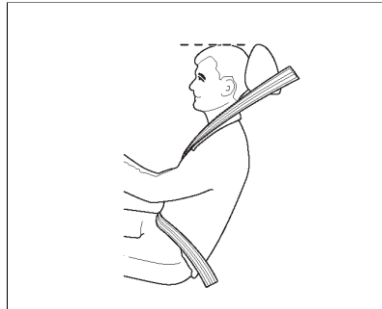
- The front passenger should not be too close to the dashboard. Otherwise, the SRS will not be able to provide effective protection and may even cause more serious injury to the front passenger.
- Never put your feet on the dashboard, stretch out of the window or sit cross-legged on the seat during driving. Always keep your feet in the foot space, otherwise you will be easily injured in case of emergency brake or accident.
- Do not tilt the seat excessively during driving. Be sure to wear seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting posture to avoid injury in case of emergency brake or accident.

### Correct sitting posture of the rear passengers

To ensure safety and reduce the risk of injuries during accidents, rear passengers must comply with the following instructions:

- Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same level as the top of your head and the back of your head is as close to the headrest as possible.
- Keep upright sitting posture and keep your back close to the backrest as much as possible.
- Keep your feet in the foot space in front of the rear seat and close to the floor.
- Wear seat belt correctly.
- Appropriate measures must be taken in accordance with relevant regulations when carrying young passengers.

### Adjust the headrest correctly



Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same level as the top of your head and the back of your head is as close to the headrest as possible.

#### Warning

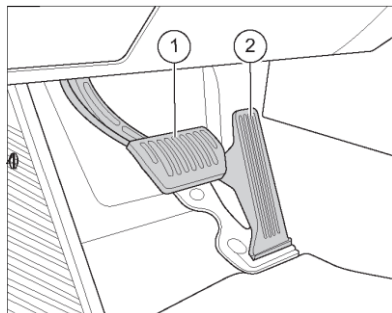
If the headrest is removed or is improperly adjusted, passengers could easily be injured or even be killed during emergency braking or accidents! To reduce the risk of accident injuries, be absolutely sure to strictly follow the following instructions:

- The headrest must always be in the installed position and adjusted correctly.
- Driver and passengers must adjust their headrests to the correct position according to their body shape. The upper edge of the headrest must be level with the top of the head as much as possible, and the back of the head should be as close to the headrest as possible.
- Never adjust the headrest during vehicle driving. If you feel that you need to adjust the headrest during driving, stop the vehicle under the premise of ensuring safety and then adjust the headrest to the correct position before start.

 Note

- **The lowest position of the rear seat headrest is not in use, and users need to adjust it to an effective locking position to avoid danger when using it.**

## Pedal area



1. Brake pedal
2. Accelerator pedal

When driving the vehicle, it is necessary to ensure that all pedals can be pressed to the bottom and returned to their original position without any obstacles at all times.

When the brake system fails, the brake pedal may require greater pedal travel and force to stop the vehicle.

 Warning

- **Obstruction of the pedal can easily lead to serious accidents and serious injuries to personnel.**
- **Do not store any items in the driver's foot space, as they may slide into the pedal area and hinder the driver's operation of the pedal. In the event of emergency braking or other emergency situations, if the driver cannot operate the brake pedal, it could easily cause an accident.**

## Driver-side floor mat

The foot mat should be fixed inside the foot well and should not obstruct pedal movement.

 Warning

- **It is necessary to ensure that the floor mat is firmly fixed in the driver-side foot space.**
- **No other floor mats or covers should be placed on the foot pads to prevent narrowing of pedal travel and hindering pedal movement.**
- **After removing and cleaning the floor mat from the car, it must be re fixed during installation.**

## Seat belt

### General Instructions

Your life is precious. Please make sure that you wear a seat belt!

This Section conveys the message that correct use of seat belts can markedly reduce the risk of injury!

- Wear the seat belt as described in this manual.
- Ensure that the seat belt is ready for use and not damaged.

#### Warning

To reduce the risk of accident injuries, make sure that you strictly follow these instructions:

- Improper wearing or non-wearing of seat belt may increase the risk of serious injury.
- Wearing seat belt properly can reduce serious injuries in case of emergency brake and accidents. For safety reasons, whenever you drive your car, you and passengers should wear seat belts throughout.

#### Warning

- Pregnant women or the disabled must also wear seat belt. Otherwise, these drivers or passengers may also be seriously injured. The best way to protect unborn babies is to properly protect the mother during her entire term of pregnancy.
- The protective effect of the seat belt can only be achieved if it is used correctly. Failure to wear a seat belt or failure to wear a seat belt correctly increases the risk of injury and death.
- You must wear a seat belt before driving every time, even in urban traffic, both front and rear passengers should do so to ensure your and passengers' safety.
- It is forbidden for two people to wear one seat belt (even for children). If your child is sitting on your knee, wearing a seat belt like this is very dangerous for your child.

#### Warning

- Do not loosen the fastened seat belt during vehicle driving.
- The seat belt should not pass through fragile objects (e.g. glasses, ballpoint pens, etc.) as this may cause injuries.
- The tongue of the seat belt must be inserted into the buckle correctly. Wrong wearing of the seat belt will affect the protective effect of the seat belt.
- When wearing a seat belt, loose and bulky clothing (such as a coat) should be removed to avoid affecting the fit with the body and protection of the seat belt.
- The seat belt must always be kept clean, and severely dirty seat belts may affect the automatic unwinding function of the automatic unwinder.

 Warning

- Even pregnant women should always wear seat belt. The seat belt should be close to the hip as much as possible, so as to prevent it from exerting pressure on the lower abdomen.
- Pregnant women should sit as straight as possible and stay away from turning wheel or dashboard. This can reduce injuries to mother and fetus caused by crash or airbag trigger.
- If the passengers wear the seat belt incorrectly, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper protection.
- The tongue socket should not be blocked by paper or similar objects, otherwise the tongue cannot be inserted into the buckle.

 Warning

- If the seat belt is loose or cracked, the seat belt connection, the automatic retractor, or the locking element is damaged, it can cause serious injury in the event of an accident. Therefore, be sure to regularly check all seat belt components.
- Do not repair, adjust, install and disassemble the seat belt explosive pretensioner or parts on the seat belt by yourself. Do NOT attempt to make changes to the seat belt in any way. Removal and refitting of seat belt parts shall be carried out by authorized dealership of BAIC ORV only.
- Seat belts that have been used and have been stretched and deformed at the time of the accident must be replaced by an authorized dealership of BAIC ORV, even if there is no obvious deformation. In addition, also be sure to check the fastening device of the seat belt.

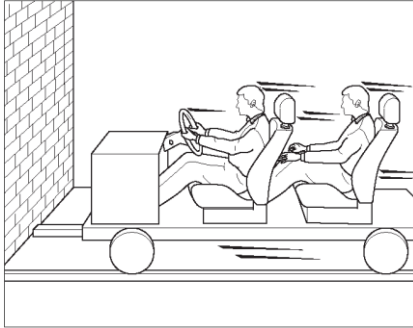
The rest of this chapter will provide more detailed instructions on how to maximize your safety.

However, please note that even when a seat belt is used correctly and the airbag has been inflated, it is still not possible to completely rule out the risk of death in accidents involving violent vehicle collisions.

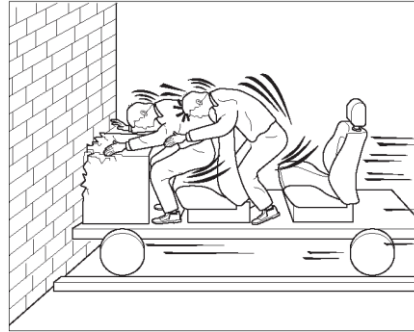
### Why should seat belt be used?

Seat belts can slow down the inertia of forward movement of the driver and passengers in the event of a frontal collision of the vehicle, minimizing the impact injuries suffered by passengers as much as possible.

## Physical principle of frontal collision



Both the vehicle and its occupants have energy (kinetic energy), which depends on the speed of the vehicle and the mass of its occupants. The greater the speed and mass, the greater the amount of energy released in a collision. Among these factors, the vehicle's speed plays a decisive role. For example, when the vehicle's speed increases from 25 Km/h to 50 Km/h, the kinetic energy released will increase four times.



Passengers who are not wearing seat belts are not integrated with the vehicle, so in a frontal collision, the driver and passengers who are not wearing seat belts still move forward at the speed before the collision. The physical principles of collision presented in this example apply not only to vehicle frontal collision, but also to all other vehicle collision.

## Consequences of driver and passengers not wearing seat belts

1

Many people think that during a light vehicle collision, they can use their hands to protect their body and thus prevent injury. This is a misunderstanding!

During a vehicle collision, inertia will continue to propel all vehicle occupants not using seat belts, forward at the pre-collision speed. However, at this time, the vehicle will not continue to move with these occupants. Therefore, any unsecured, unbelted occupants may be seriously injured.



Even if the vehicle's speed is very low, the force acting on the human body is still very large during a collision. There is absolutely no way for vehicle occupants to use their hands to protect themselves. Any vehicle occupants who do not fasten their seat belts will be thrown forward. Once they bump into any object inside the vehicle, serious injury may result.

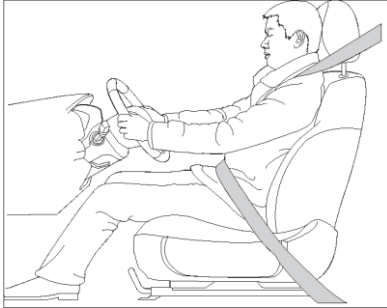


Rear passengers must also wear seat belts correctly. Otherwise, they will be thrown violently forward during a collision. Those rear passengers who are not wearing seat belts will not only be injured, but also endanger other occupants inside the vehicle.

 **Warning**

- Do not use your hands to control your body during a collision, as it may cause serious harm to yourself.
- Airbag can never replace seat belt. Whether equipped with airbag or not, it is necessary to wear seat belt correctly.
- Rear occupants must also wear seat belt correctly.





Wearing seat belts correctly can prevent or limit the movement of the driver and passengers and prevent them from injury. Correctly wearing a seat belt can prevent the driver and passengers from moving in an uncontrolled way and being placed in danger.

The seat belt absorbs most of the kinetic energy generated by the collision. In addition, the vehicle crash zone and other passive safety system absorb the collision at the same time, working together to further reduce the risk of passenger injury.

#### Warning

- The seat belt must be worn in the correct position.
- It is prohibited for two people to share seat belt, even for children.
- Always keep the correct sitting posture and wear seat belt during driving. Do NOT unfasten your seat belt during your journey. This can lead to accidents and injury.
- Do not damage or jam seat belt or rub against sharp edges.
- When wearing a seat belt, it is advisable to avoid wearing loose and bulky clothing (if worn, remove it first) to avoid affecting the fit between the seat belt and the body.
- Always keep the seat belt system clean and in good state. Do not allow foreign matter or fluid to enter the seat belt buckle.
- It is forbidden to disassemble or repair the seat belt by yourself.

## Seat belt unfastened indicator light

1



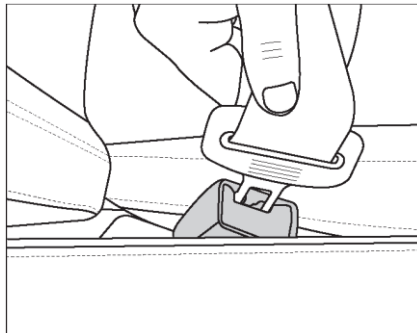
When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, if the driver does not fasten their seat belt, the seat belt indicator light in the instrument information center display screen will light up. The warning light will immediately be lit, accompanied by an audible alarm which will sound if the driver does not fasten his or her seat belt and the vehicle speed exceeds 25km/h, or when the vehicle moves forward of a distance of 500m or for more than 60s at a speed of under 25km/h.

1

The front passenger seat and the second row seats are also equipped with seat belt unfastened warning, constantly reminding us to wear safety belts correctly.

## Wear the seat belt correctly

### Wear a Front Seat Belt



Correctly adjust the front seat and its headrest, pull out the seat belt from the retractor, insert the latch of the seat belt into the buckle, and tighten the seat belt. When the latch is locked inside the buckle, a clicking sound will be heard.

The seat belt length will automatically be adjusted according to your body size and seat position. In the event of emergency braking or collision, the tensioner will tighten the seat belt. If you lean forwards too fast, the tensioner will also tighten. Slowly and smoothly moving the expendable seat belt will allow you to move freely.

The seat belt should be fully retracted before pulling out. If you cannot pull out the seat belt from the retractor, you can pull the seat belt firmly and then release it. Then you can pull out the seat belt smoothly from the retractor.

#### Warning

**If the seat belt cannot be pulled out, please send it to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible while driving safely.**

## Wear rear seat belt



Based on the need, adjust the headrest of the rear seat, sit upright in the rear seat and make your back fit the seat backrest as much as possible. Pull the seat belt out of the tensioner in the upper part of the nearer side, insert the latch of the seat belt into the buckle, and tighten the seat belt. When the latch is locked inside the buckle, a clicking sound will be heard.

### ⚠ Warning

Failure to wear seat belt properly may result in poor protection and serious injuries to passengers on board.

- The correct sitting posture of passengers and the correct wearing of seat belts are necessary to fully utilize the role of seat belts.
- The tongue must correspond to the buckle and cannot be inserted incorrectly.

### i Hint

The other points of attention concerning the wearing of rear seat belts are the same as those of the front seat belts.

## Seat belt wearing position

1



Seat belt design has fully taken into account the bone structure of the human body (such as pelvis, sternum and shoulders).

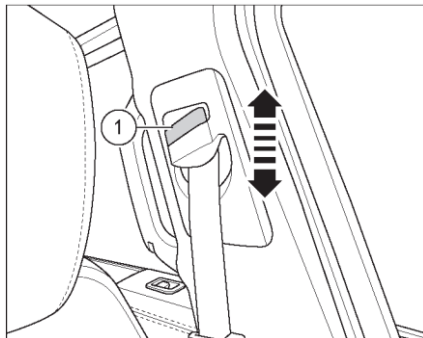
The protective role of the seat belt can only come into full play when it is correctly worn. A non-upright sitting posture will also reduce the protective role of the seat belt and could easily cause serious injuries. If the airbag is triggered during an accident, the impact of the airbag may cause serious injury to any occupant not in an upright sitting posture.

 **Warning**

The protective role of the seat belt can only come into full play when the back rest is in an upright position and the seat belt is correctly fastened. In the event of an accident, wearing a seat belt incorrectly may cause serious injury to passengers!

- The seat belt must pass through the center of the passenger's shoulder and must not be trapped in the neck.
- The seat belt must be flat and close to the passenger's chest.
- The seat belt must pass through the passenger's pelvic area and must not be pressed against the stomach. The seat belt must lay flat, be close to the pelvic area, and be tightened as needed.
- If the seat belt is not fastened tightly enough and slips onto the stomach or neck, it may seriously injure the passenger.

## Adjust the seat belt height



Use the seat belt height adjustment device to move the seat belt up and down so that it fits the body snugly.

To adjust the seat belt upwards, simply move the seat belt height adjuster directly upwards until it is in place. The method to adjust the seat belt downwards is as follows:

1. Pinch the seat belt guide ①.
2. Move the guide downward to adjust the seat belt to the position suitable for your body shape.
3. Release the seat belt guide.
4. After the seat belt height adjustment is completed, pull the seat belt firmly to check whether the guide is locked firmly.

## Pregnant women wear seat belt

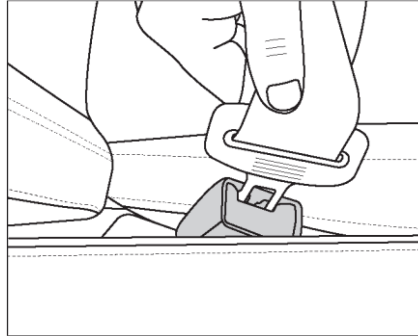


If you are a pregnant woman, the best way to protect yourself and your baby is to always wear your seat belt correctly when driving or sitting in the passenger seat, and letting the waist part of the seat belt run across your hips as low as possible.

When driving, you should sit upright and move the driver's seat backward to a suitable position so that you can handle the vehicle freely. If you are sitting in the front seat, make sure you move the seat backwards as much as possible, while still being comfortable and able to control the vehicle properly. This will reduce the risk of injury to both mother and baby during a collision when the front airbag inflates.

At each prenatal check-up, be sure to ask your doctor if you are fit to drive a vehicle.

## Unfastening the seat belt



1. Press the red button next to the seat belt buckle and the tongue will pop up automatically.
2. Hold the tongue and send it back. The retractor will automatically retract the seat belt.

 Warning

**When the vehicle is running, it is forbidden to unfasten the seat belt, so as to avoid serious casualties.**

 Note

- **Do not release the seat belt until the vehicle has come to a complete stop.**
- **When releasing the seat belt, after the tongue is released, guide the seat belt to retract by hand to prevent occupant injury caused by the metal tongue on the seat belt during rapid retraction.**

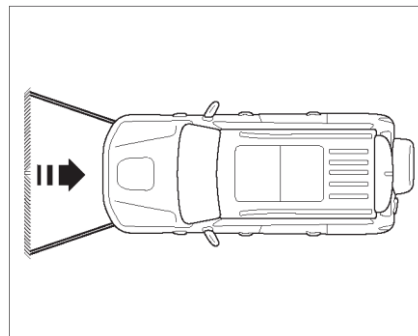
## Seat belt retractor

All the front seats of this car are equipped with seat belt retractors. In the event of a serious collision between the front and rear of the vehicle, the sensor will trigger the seat belt retractor, which will tighten the seat belt in the direction of retraction, limiting the forward movement of passengers.

The explosive pre-tensioner device of the seat belt can only be used once. In the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision or rear collision, side tipping or an accident without notable frontal action force, the seat belt retractor will not work.

 Note

- **When the seat belt retractor is triggered, it will release a small amount of smoke and dust, which is a normal phenomenon and does not indicate a fire in the vehicle. There is no need to worry.**
- **When scrapping the seat belt tensioner, relevant safety regulations must be followed. Authorized dealerships of BAIC ORV are familiar with the relevant safety regulations and can provide you with inquiry services.**



Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible in the following cases:

- An accident occurred at the front of the vehicle (marked in the figure), but the seat belt retractor did not work.
- Any seat belt retractor or its surroundings is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

## Seat belt retractor recycling

The seat belt retractor is a component of the seat belt system. Any work on the seat belt tensioner or any work that requires disassembly or assembly of the seat belt retractor for repairing other vehicle components must be carried out by authorized dealership of BAIC ORV. Otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged and the seat belt retractor may not function properly in the event of an accident.

In order to avoid personal injury or environmental pollution caused by the removed seat belt retractor, the relevant regulations must be observed when handling the removed seat belt retractor. The authorized dealership of BAIC ORV is familiar with these regulations and can help you with your inquiries.

### Warning

**If the seat belt retractor is repaired by an unauthorised workshop or professional, or if the seat belt retractor is not used correctly, the risk of injuries will increase.**

- **Do not repair, remove or install seat belt or seat belt retractor parts by yourself.**
- **Any work on the seat belt retractor and seat belt, including the disassembly and assembly of seat belt components for the purpose of repairing other components, must be carried out by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**
- **The seat belt retractor can only be triggered once. All triggered seat belt retractors must be replaced.**

## SRS

### Description of SRS

The SRS plays an auxiliary protective role. In order for the triggered airbag system to fully play its protective role, driver and passengers must maintain the correct sitting posture, and children need to use appropriate child safety seat for protection.

#### Warning

- **Airbags only serve as auxiliary protection and cannot replace the protective role of seat belts in accidents.**

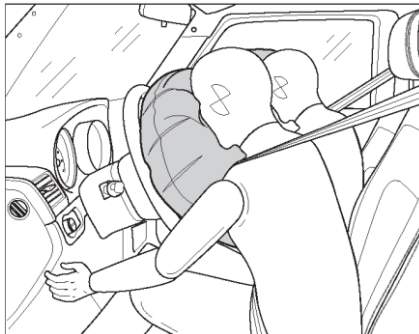
#### Note

- **Dust generated during airbag deployment may irritate skin and eyes, which may cause respiratory problems for people with respiratory disease. After an accidental airbag deployment, wash all exposed skin thoroughly with clean water and mild soap.**

#### Note

- **After airbag deployment, the SRS components and parts will become hot. Do not touch it to avoid burns.**

#### Airbag



In the event of a serious vehicle collision, the SRS will quickly open one or more gas-filled cushions between the person and the body of the driver and passengers to mitigate the impact injury.

In case of severe collision of the vehicle, the airbag will expand rapidly in a very short time, then deflate and contract to relieve the inertial impact of the human body. Therefore, the driver and passengers must keep the correct sitting posture and wear the correct seat belt, so as to be effectively protected by the airbag.

If a serious collision occurs, driver and passengers who are not wearing seat belts will be unable to control themselves, resulting in random movement or being thrown out of the vehicle. Even if the airbag expands rapidly, it cannot protect the human body effectively.

The normal sitting position of driver and passengers must be kept at an appropriate distance from the front frontal airbags, so that when the airbags are triggered, they can fully inflate and effectively protect the drivers and passengers.

#### Note

- **In the event of a vehicle collision, the airbag is triggered by the magnitude of the collision, the type of collision, the angle of the collision, the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the time of the vehicle collision. So even if the vehicle is badly damaged, the airbag may not be triggered.**



### Airbag working conditions

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the instrument cluster airbag indicator light must be in a normal state (normal state: the indicator light will turn on for a few seconds and then turn off, and it will be in an off state during normal use).

There is no flooding in the passenger compartment of the vehicle (if flooding occurs inside the airbag, it may cause the airbag controller to short circuit, causing the SRS to fail).

### Airbag indicator light

The airbag indicator light located on the instrument cluster will alert the driver of a malfunction in the SRS. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the indicator light will turn on for a few seconds and then turn off during self-test.

If the following phenomena occur, it indicates that the SRS is faulty. In this case, the airbag and seat belt pretensioner may not work normally in case of collision. Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection in time:

- When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the airbag indicator light does not light up during the instrument cluster system self-check.
- The airbag indicator light stays on when the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode.
- The airbag indicator light is on when the vehicle is running.

### Repair of airbag and scrapping

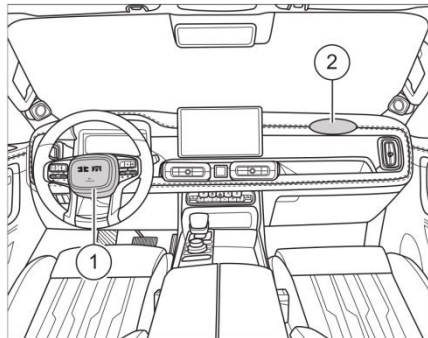
The parts of the SRS are installed in different parts of the vehicle. Any work on the SRS or the disassembly and assembly of the SRS parts must be carried out by professional technicians. Otherwise, the SRS may be damaged and the SRS may be triggered abnormally or not at all in case of an accident.

If the vehicle is scrapped, the undeployed airbag is potentially dangerous, so when scrapping the vehicle, the airbag must be detonated safely by professionals.

### Warning

- **Do not use solvent-containing cleaning agents when cleaning turning wheel or dashboard. Otherwise, the driver and passengers may be seriously injured by the broken plastic once the airbag is triggered.**
- **Never attempt to repair, remove or install the SRS components by yourself. If the maintenance of SRS is carried out by non-professionals, the potential risk of casualties will be increased. Improper maintenance of the SRS may result in the airbag not being deployed or deployed when it should not have been deployed in the event of an accident.**
- **Do not attempt to retrofitting the front bumper or body by yourself.**
- **The airbag can only be triggered once, after which the whole SRS components and parts must be replaced.**

## Front frontal airbag



The driver frontal airbag ① is located in the middle of the turning wheel.

Front passenger frontal airbag ② is located in the dashboard above the glove box.

The frontal airbag may inflate and expand when the vehicle is hit hard from the front, or it may inflate and expand due to similar impacts (such as hitting a ditch on the road). In some front collisions, it may not inflate or expand (such as when the front of the vehicle collides with slender cylindrical objects such as tree trunks and power poles). Damage to the vehicle is not a sufficient condition for frontal airbag to inflate and expand.



Note

- **The expansion and contraction of the frontal airbag take place in a very short period of time. It only works once and does not provide protection against a possible second collision.**

Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible in the following cases:

- The frontal airbag has been deployed.
- A collision accident occurred at the front of the vehicle, but the frontal airbag did not deploy.
- The upper part of the driver frontal airbag or the upper part of the front passenger frontal airbag is broken or otherwise damaged.

The airbag is provided with air releasing holes. when an accident occurs, the airbag will inflate and expand instantly, and after the airbag is fully deployed, it immediately begins to release air, which can reduce impact injuries to the head, chest, and other parts of the body of driver and passengers, while enabling the driver to maintain a forward view and perform turning or other operations.

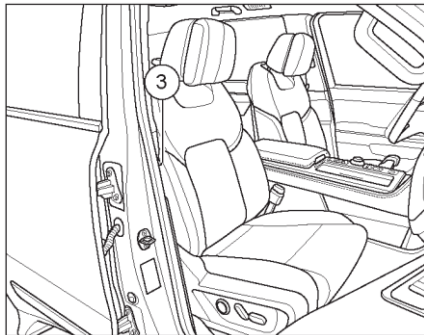
When airbag is deployed, there will be a loud noise followed by a small amount of soot, which is normal.



Note

- **To ensure the best protection under severe impact, please keep the correct sitting posture.**

## Front side airbags



Front side airbags ③ is located outside the front seats backrest.

### Warning

- It is forbidden to place objects between the driver, front passenger and door. Otherwise, the it may affect the deployment of the side airbags and its protective effect.
- It is forbidden to use seat covers to block the side airbags of the seat, as this may hinder the deployment of the side airbags.

### Warning

- It is forbidden for driver and front passenger to lean their head or body against the door, or to put their arms on the door or out of the window, as this may cause injury when the side airbags is unfolded.

In a lateral collision, the side airbags determine whether to deploy based on the strength, angle, speed, and impact point of the lateral collision. In some lateral collision, the side airbags may not deploy. Damage to the vehicle is not a sufficient condition for side airbags to inflate and expand.

In some collision, the side airbags does not deploy and may result in injury if the seat belt is not worn. Only when combined with correctly worn seat belts can the SRS provide optimal protection, so driver and passengers must always wear seat belts correctly.

### Note

- The side airbags may not inflate and expand in case of strong side collision to the cabin and trunk of the vehicle.

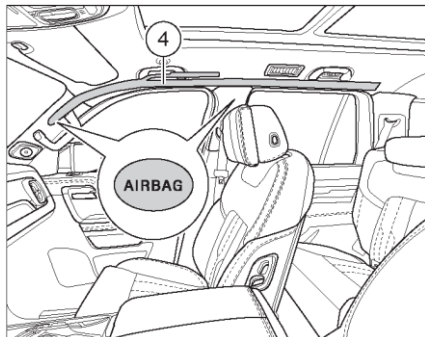
Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible in the event of:

- Either side airbag has been deployed.
- A collision accident occurred at the door, but the side airbag did not deploy.
- The backrest with side airbags is scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.

### Note

- To provide the best protection in a severe side impact, please keep the correct sitting posture (refer to "The correct sitting posture of driver and passengers").

## Side curtain airbags



Side curtain airbags ④ are located along the roof edge between A, B and C pillars on both sides of the roof, and its identification cover is marked with "AIRBAG".

In the event of a vehicle side collision, the side curtain airbags on the side of the vehicle may be triggered.

Once triggered, the gas produced by the gas generator may quickly fill the side curtain airbags. The side curtain airbags expands and deploys rapidly, covering the side sills and door jambs and protecting the head.

To provide the ideal additional protection in the event of an accident, side curtain airbags will expand rapidly in an instant. A small amount of smoke may be released when the curtain airbag expands, which is normal.

In the event of a severe side collision on the vehicle, the gas-filled side curtain airbags can effectively reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body of the driver and passengers.

When the vehicle experiences a certain degree of side collision, whether the side curtain airbag deploys depends on factors such as the strength of the collision, impact angle, speed, and impact point. The side curtain airbags does not deploy in all side collision. It does not deploy in frontal collision, rear-end collisions or most rollovers.

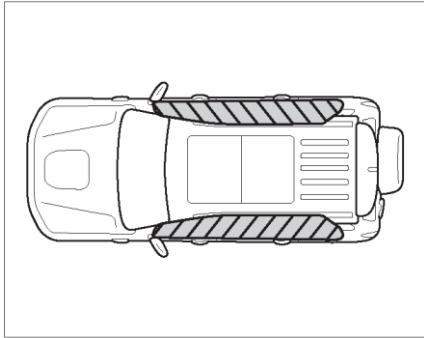
In case of certain collisions of the vehicle, the frontal airbag, the side curtain airbags and the front seats side airbags may deploy at the same time.

### Warning

- **The side curtain airbags provide additional protection only in the event of a serious side collision. It is not a substitute for seat belt.**
- **It is forbidden for driver and passengers to lean their head or body against the door, or to put their arms on the door or out of the window. Otherwise, injury may occur when the side curtain airbags is deployed.**

### Note

- **The expansion and contraction of side curtain airbags are completed in a short period of time and can only work once, and do not provide protection against potential second side collision that may occur afterwards.**
- **Do not place any objects on or near the turning wheel or airbag cover.**



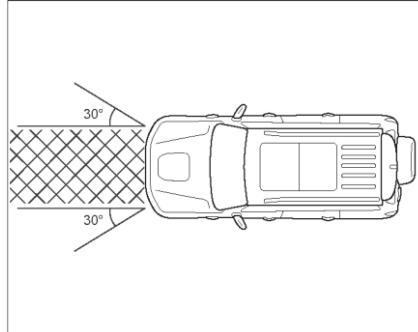
In the following cases, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible:

- Either side curtain airbag has been deployed.
- A collision accident occurred on the side of the vehicle, but did not deploy the side curtain airbag.
- The exterior trim of the side curtain airbags is cracked or otherwise damaged.

 Note

- **To provide the best protection function under severe impact, please keep the correct sitting posture.**

## Situations that the airbag may deploy



The frontal airbag may deploy if the vehicle is impacted within approximately 30° to the left and right of the front and exceeds the set threshold.

If other protective devices are installed in front of the vehicle, the sensor will not be able to sense the impact properly and will prevent the frontal airbag from working properly.

If the vehicle is hit in the side direction and the degree exceeds the set critical level, the side airbag may deploy.

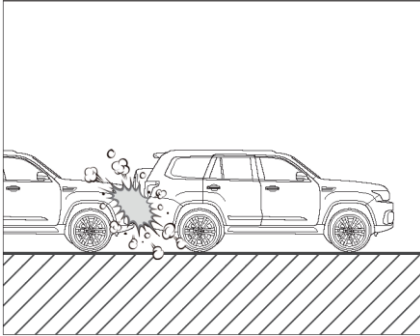
 Note

- **Be sure to wear the seat belt properly. Otherwise, the airbag may unfold in an accident and impact the passengers, resulting in severe injuries and even deaths to them.**

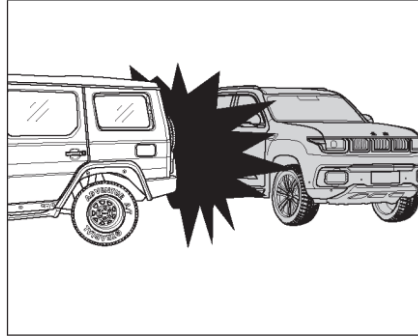
## Situations that the airbag may not deploy

In a collision accident, the airbag will determine whether to deploy based on the strength, angle, speed, and impact point of the collision.

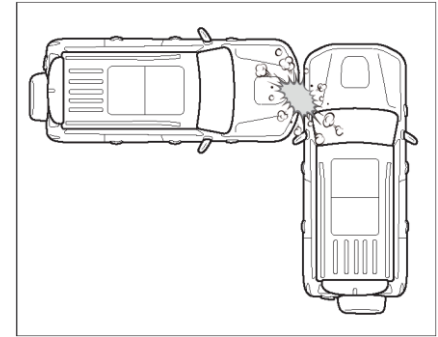
In many types of collision accident, such as rear-end collision, side collision, oblique collision, rollover, frontal collision with thin column, the airbag may not deploy.

**Rear-end collision or collision**

In the event of a rear-end collision or collision, the driver and passengers moves towards the backrest under the inertial force, and the airbags deployed from the front will not protect the driver and passengers. At this time, the frontal airbag may not deploy, and the side airbags and side curtain airbags will not work.

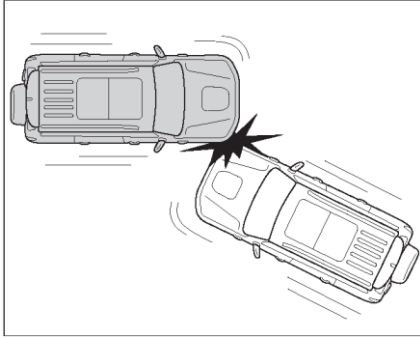
**Side collision**

In case of side collision, the driver and passengers will be moved to side, so the airbag deployed from the front cannot protect the driver and passengers. At this time, the frontal airbag may not deploy, but the side airbags and side curtain airbags may deploy.



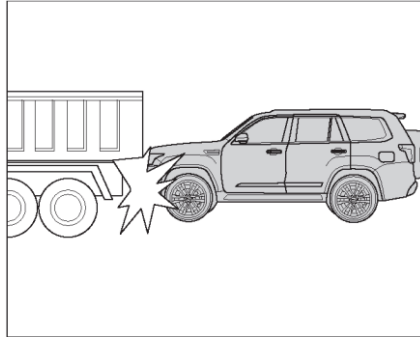
When the side outside the passenger compartment is impacted, the body suffers a weak impact, and the frontal airbag, side airbags and side curtain airbags will not work.

### Oblique collision (angular collision)



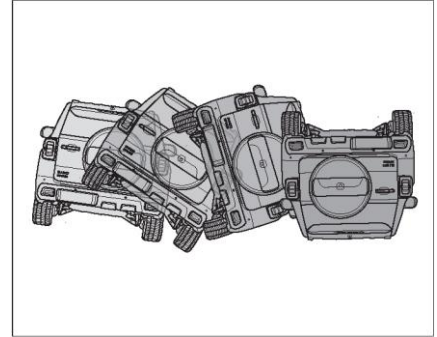
In case of oblique collision, the impact energy received by the SRS may not be enough to trigger the deployment of the frontal airbag. At this time, the frontal airbag may not deploy and the side airbags and side curtain airbags will not work.

### Rear-end collision



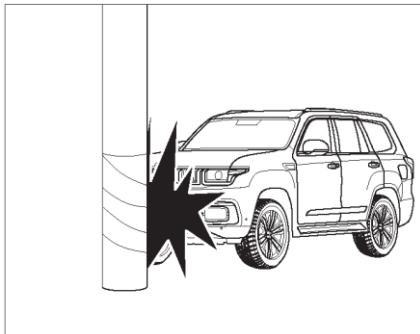
When a rear end collision accident occurs with a large truck, the driver instinctively performs emergency brake. At this time, the front of the vehicle body sinks. Due to the high ground clearance of large trucks, the front of the vehicle will undercut the bottom of the truck, and the crushing deformation of the front part of the vehicle will absorb the collision force. When the impact deceleration does not reach the airbag deployment condition, the airbag may not deploy.

### Rollover accident



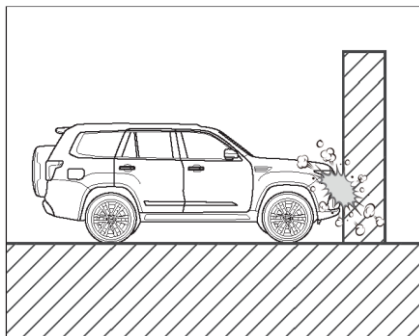
In a rollover accident, the forward airbag may not deploy, and at this time, the frontal airbag deployment cannot provide appropriate protection for driver and passengers. However, if the vehicle is equipped with side airbags and side curtain airbags, they may deploy when the vehicle is overturned due to a side collision.

## Special collision



If the vehicle collides with some smaller objects such as poles or trees, in which the collision points are concentrated in one place and the impact energy is quickly absorbed through severe deformation of the vehicle, without transmitting all the collision force to the airbag sensor, the airbag may not deploy at this time.

When the vehicle body has suffered a slight collision but the collision intensity has not reached the conditions for airbag deployment, and the airbag will not deploy.

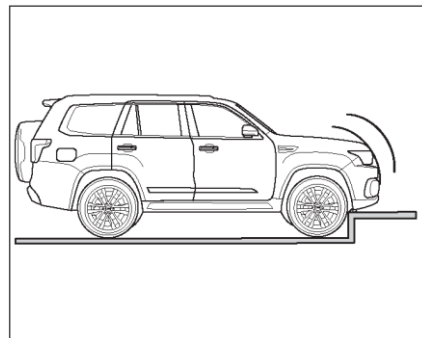


When the vehicle collided head-on with a wall causing a slight impact on the body, but the collision strength did not meet the conditions for airbag deployment, the frontal airbag will not deploy, and the side airbag and side curtain airbag will not work.

## Collision at the bottom of the vehicle

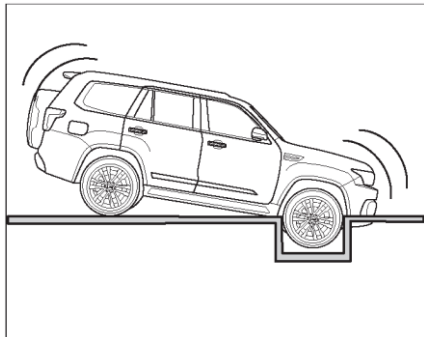
If the vehicle is subjected to severe impacts such as falling or jumping steps, hitting road shoulders or hard objects, crossing deep pits, etc., even if the deformation of the vehicle is slight, due to the influence of rigid vehicle components, the airbag can still be deployed when the detected deceleration reaches the airbag deployment condition.

### Hit the shoulder or hard object

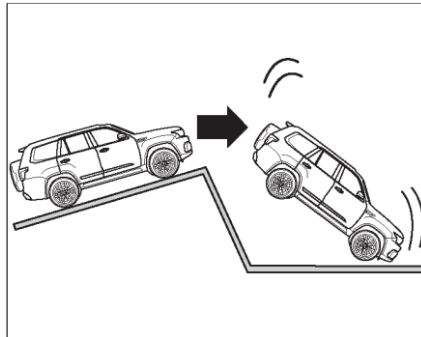




The vehicle crosses the pit



Vehicle falling or leaping steps



## Car Safety for Children

### General Instructions

Accident statistics verify that it is safer for children to sit in the rear rather than the front seats of a car.

It is recommended that children younger than 12 or no taller than 1.5m be seat in the rear seats. Based on the child's age, body height and weight, use a child seat or the seat belt to ensure the safety of children in the rear seats. For safety reasons, a child seat should be mounted on the rear seat behind the front passenger seat.

Child seats should be mounted and used in accordance with the relevant regulations and the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

We suggest that you put the child seat instructions and this Manual together and keep them in your car.

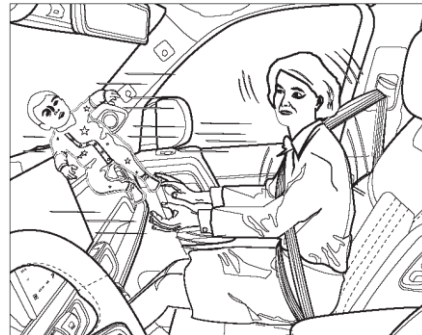
### When multiple child occupants must be carried

There are three rear seats in your car and you can use them to properly place child passengers.

When you need to carry more than three child passengers in your car:

- If the child is old enough to wear the seat belt, the oldest child can be placed on the front seats (please ride safely according to the relevant traffic laws of the country).
- Move the vehicle seat back as far as possible.
- Make the child sit up straight against the seat back.
- Check whether they are properly worn and fastened seat belt.

### Safety instructions for child safety seat




When driving, **NEVER** hold a baby to your chest. The baby will be at serious risk of injury or death if you ignore this instruction.

Using a child seat correctly can significantly reduce the risk of injury! As the driver, you should be responsible for the children in your car:

- Select the proper child safety seat and use it correctly.
- Pay attention to the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions to ensure that the seat belt is properly worn.

- Do not distract your attention from children while driving.
- Take a rest after long-term driving, at least once every two hours.

 **Warning**

- **Only by wearing a seat belt correctly can the protective effect of the seat belt be fully utilized.**
- **Do not hold children or infants while the vehicle is in motion, as this may cause injury or death to children in the event of an accident.**
- **Appropriate child safety seat can effectively protect children.**
- **Do not leave children alone in the vehicle. Due to significant regional weather variations, the internal temperature may become extremely high or low. If children are left inside the car alone, fatal injuries may result.**
- **Pay attention to the relevant laws and regulations when installing and using the child safety seat. The relevant national laws and regulations shall prevail.**

 **Warning**

- **If there is no child protective system, children under 1.5m in height are not allowed to use conventional seat belt in the vehicle. Otherwise, the child's abdomen and neck may be injured in case of emergency brake or accident.**
- **The child safety seat is for one child only.**
- **Be sure to carefully read and follow the instructions and precautions of the child safety seat manufacturer.**



Do NOT mount a child protection device facing backwards in the front seat of the car. If you do this, when the airbag is deployed and expands, it will impact the back of the child protection device with a tremendous force, causing serious injury and even death to the child within it.

## 1

**Child safety seat**

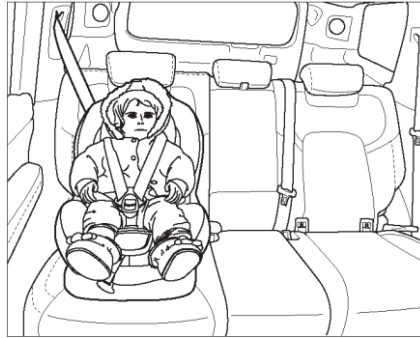
**Child Seat Grade Classification (for reference use only):**

Class 0/0+ child seats



Babies who are under nine months old and have a body weight of under 10Kg, and babies who are under 18 months old and have a body weight of under 13Kg should use a child seat which can be adjusted into a lying down position.

Class 1 child safety seat



Babies or infants who are under four years old and have a body weight of 9-18Kg should use a child seat with a safety belt.

Class 2 child safety seat



Children who are under seven years old and have a body weight of 15-25Kg should use a three-point seat belt along with a Class 2 child seat.

**⚠ Warning**

- The upper part of the seat belt must pass through the middle of the shoulder, not through the neck in any case, and should be firmly attached to the body.
- The lower part of the seat belt must pass through the hip, not the abdomen, and always fit securely. Adjust the seat belt if necessary.

Class 3 child safety seat



For children aged 7 and above who weigh between 22-36 kilograms and are under 1.50 meters tall, it is best to use a three-point seat belt in conjunction with a class 3 child safety seat.

**⚠ Warning**

- The upper part of the seat belt must pass through the middle of the shoulder, not through the neck in any case, and should be firmly attached to the body.
- The lower part of the seat belt must pass through the hip, not the abdomen, and always fit firmly. Adjust the seat belt if necessary.

**i Hint**

**Children taller than 1.50 m can use the vehicle's existing seat belt without using child safety seat.**

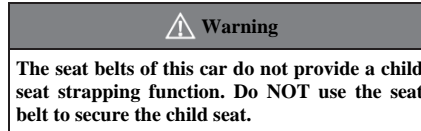
## 1

## Install the child safety seat correctly

Before installing the child safety seat on the rear seat, the front seats must be adjusted to a proper position according to the size of the child safety seat and the body shape of the child, so that the child sitting on the rear seat may not be hurt by bumping into the hard objects in case of collision or emergency brake. Besides, the child will not be hurt by the inflation of the airbag when riding on the rear seat. Absolutely do NOT carry babies on your knees.



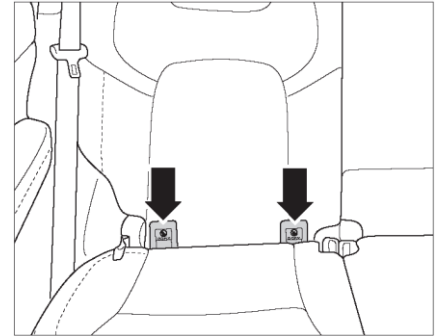
There is a warning label pasted onto the vehicle visor on the front passenger side, reminding you and the front passenger of the dangers posed by the front airbag. Be absolutely sure to read and follow the instructions on this label.



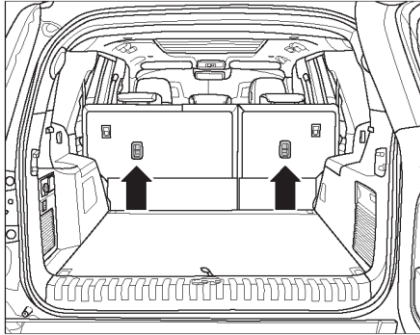
## Install child safety seat with ISOFIX system and top tether

Be absolutely sure to mount and dismantle the child seat in strict accordance with the use instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

The rear seats on both sides of the vehicle are equipped with one set of ISOFIX child safety seat fixing devices, each set of devices includes two lower fixing anchor supports and one upper fixing anchor support.



- The lower fixing anchor supports are located in the gap between the backrest and the seat cushion below the "ISOFIX" logo.



- The upper fixing anchor supports are located at the rear of the rear backrest.

#### Installation

1. Slightly push up the headrest behind the child seat.
2. Thread the top tether through the headrest, or place the top tether on either side of the headrest depending on the child safety seat, and then pull the top tether back to the back of the rear seat.
3. Press the ISOFIX child safety seat onto the fixing ring in front of the seat until you hear the engagement sound of the child safety seat.
4. Pull both sides of the child safety seat to check if it is securely installed.
5. Snap the top tether ISOFIX fixing ring and top tether hook on the back of the rear seat.
6. Tighten the top tether so that the child seat is close to the rear seat backrest.

#### Warning

- **The ISOFIX fixing ring on the back of the rear seat can only be used with ISOFIX system.**
- **Do not attach fastening straps, non ISOFIX child safety seats, or any other items to the fixing ring.**
- **Only one top tether can be connected to the rear fixing ring on the back of the rear seat, and any other rope (such as the tether for securing luggage) must not occupy the fixing ring.**
- **The lower fixing point of the child safety seat for the second row seats of the 7-seater model requires the decorative cover to be rotated backwards to the rearmost position before use.**

## Fixed position corresponding to the child safety seat

Mass group	Size category	Fixing module	Fixed position		
			Front passenger seat	Rear side seats	Rear middle seat
Portable bed	F	ISO/L1	X	IL ★★	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	IL ★★	X
Group 0: < 10kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL ★	X
Group 0+: < 13kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL ★	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL ★	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL ★	X
Group I: 9-18kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL ★	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL ★	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	X
Group II: 15-25kg			X		X
Group III: 22-36kg			X		X

Note: The meanings of the letters in the table are as follows:

IUF - Suitable for General ISOFIX child safety seat which is "facing forward" and fixed with the top tether strap for this mass group.

IL - Suitable for a semi-universal ISOFIX child safety seat installed in one of the following ways:

- Fix with top tether straps or supporting legs "facing back";
- Fix with support legs "facing forward";
- Infant seat secured with a top tether or legs.

X - Not suitable for installing child safety seats or baby seats with indicated child weight.

★: Children's seats with supporting legs should be carefully installed, please refer to the installation instructions of the child safety seat provided by the manufacturer.

★★: The baby seat is secured by two low fixing ring of ISOFIX, occupying two rear seat.



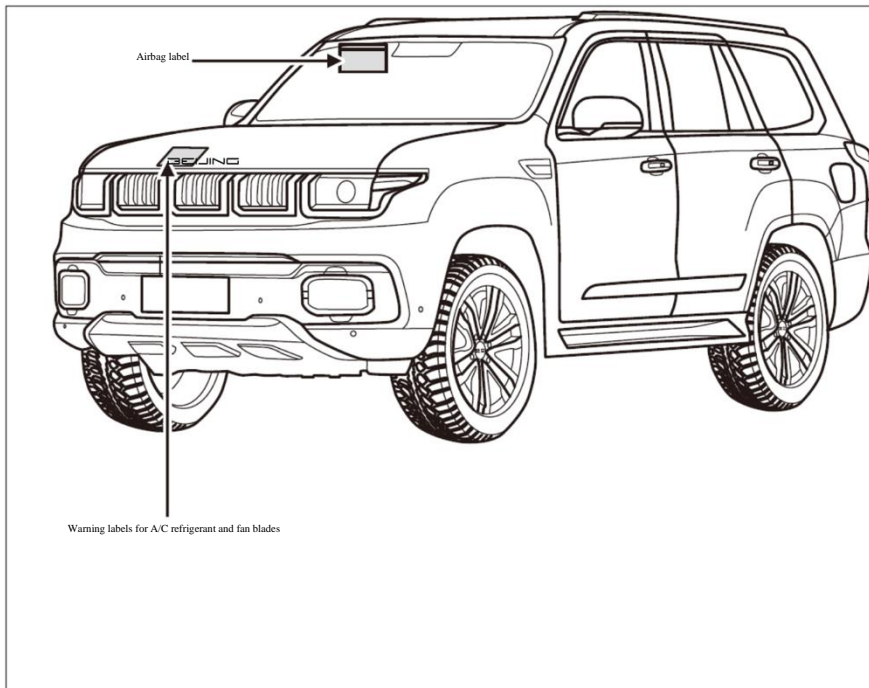
**Applicability of mounting location of child safety seat**

Table of applicability of airbag status to child safety seat

Applicable group	Front seat		Rear side seat		Rear middle seat
	Airbag on	Airbag off	Forward mounting	Backward installation	
Group 0: < 10kg	X		X	U	X
Group 0+: < 13kg	X		X	U	X
Group I: 9-18kg	X		U	U	X
Group II: 15-25kg	X		U		X
Group III: 22-36kg	X		U		X
<b>U - Suitable for generic child safety seat approved by this quality group</b> <b>X - This seat position does not apply to child safety seat in this mass group</b>					

## 1

## Safety label



The position of the safety label is as shown in the figure. The airbag label is attached to the outside of the sun visor on the front passenger side when it is closed. The warning labels of A/C refrigerant, fan blade and radiator cap must be opened before they can be seen.

These safety labels are used to draw your attention to potential hazards that may cause serious injury. Please read these labels carefully. If the label falls off or is illegible, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for replacement.

---

## 2 Operation system and equipment

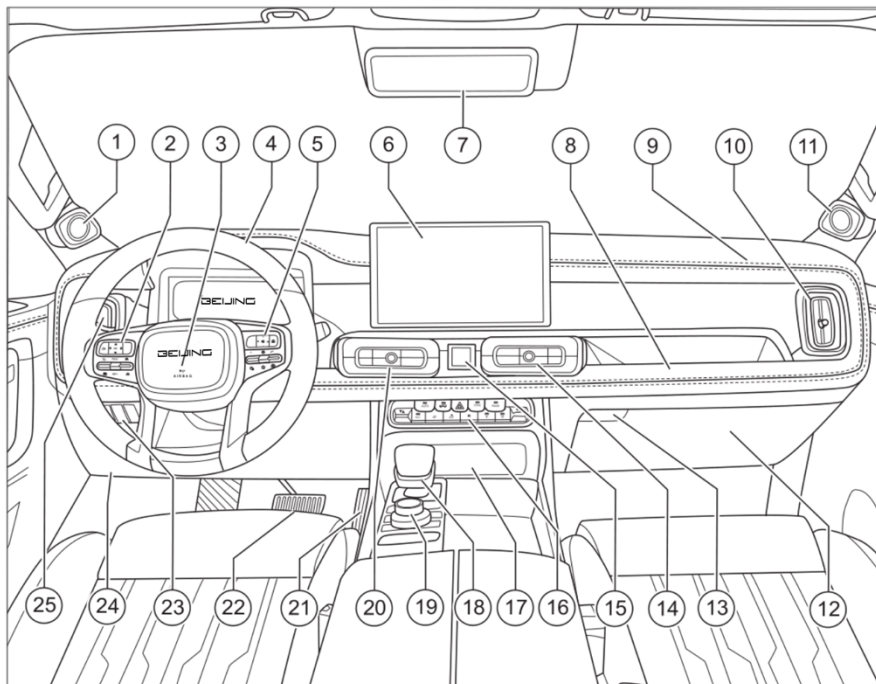
Cab .....	42
Turn on and turn off vehicle .....	65
AVM sunroof* .....	83
Electric side step * .....	86
A/C system .....	88
Vehicle Lights and Vision .....	98
Seats and Storage Facilities .....	114
Dashcam* .....	143
Accessories and Refitting .....	147

*\*Note: Numbers in all pictures of this chapter are for illustrative purpose only and do not necessarily reflect the real situation of the car.*

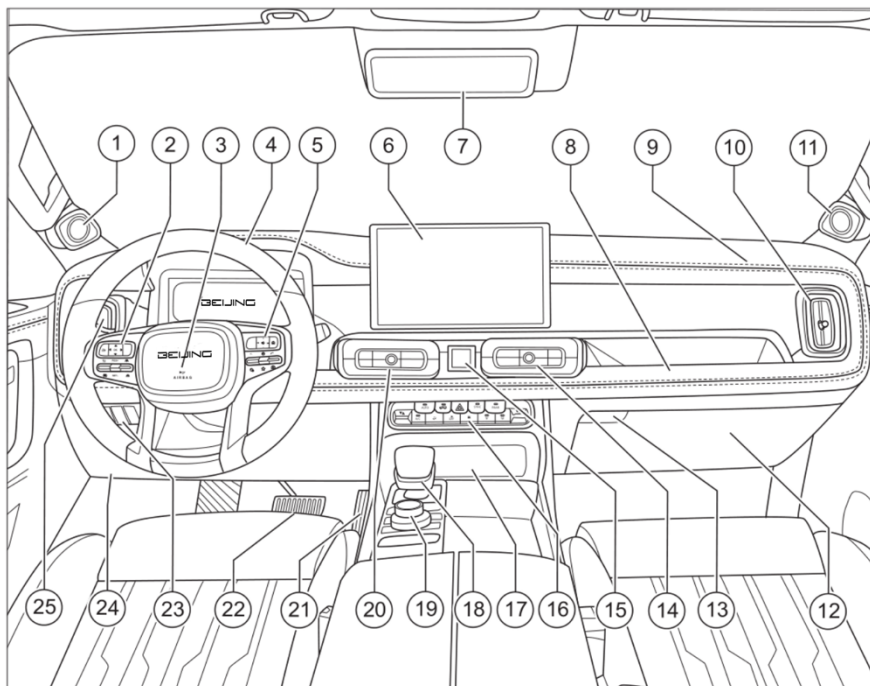
## Cab

### General Layout of Instruments and Operating Mechanisms

2



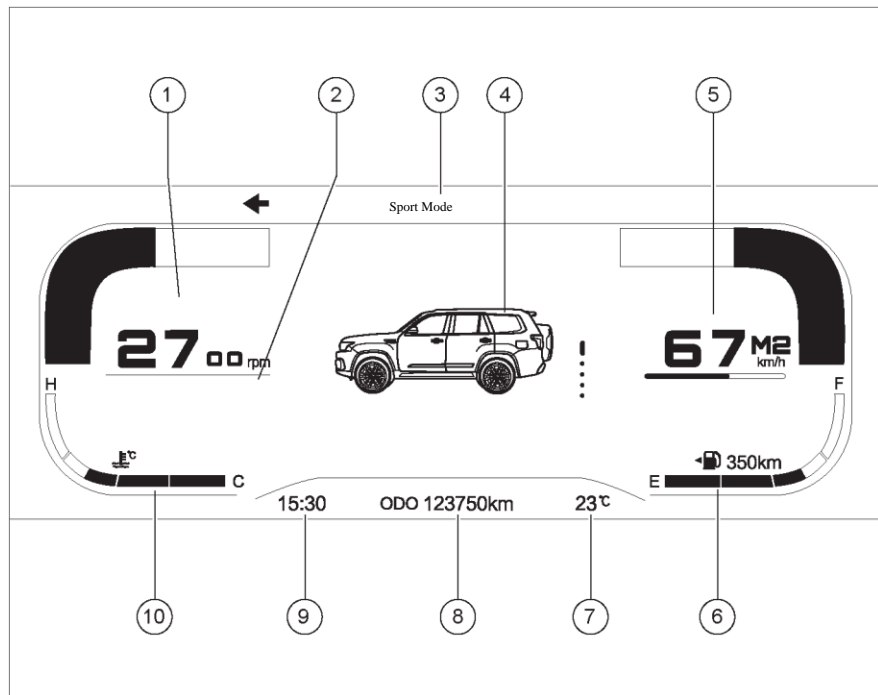
1. Left loudspeaker
2. Left button set of turning wheel
3. Horn
4. Turning wheel
5. Right button set of turning wheel
6. Infotainment screen
7. Side mirror
8. Front passenger handrail
9. Front passenger frontal airbag
10. Right A/C vent
11. Right loudspeaker
12. Glove box



13. Glove box switch
14. Right A/C central vent
15. Start/Stop button screen
16. A/C control panel
17. Wireless phone charger \*
18. Gearshift handle
19. Multifunction button
20. Left A/C central vent
21. Accelerator pedal
22. Brake pedal
23. Multifunction switch unit
24. Engine lid opening handle
25. Left A/C vent

## Instrument cluster

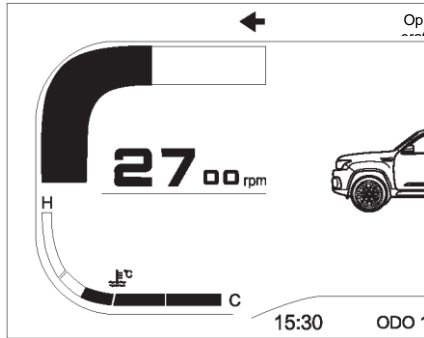
2



1. Engine tachometer
2. Gear position display area
3. Current drive mode
4. Information display area
5. Speedometer
6. Fuel meter and range display area
7. Outdoor temperature display
8. Distance display
9. Time display
10. Water temperature gauge

## Engine Tachometer

The engine RPM meter shows the revolutions per minute (rpm) of the engine.

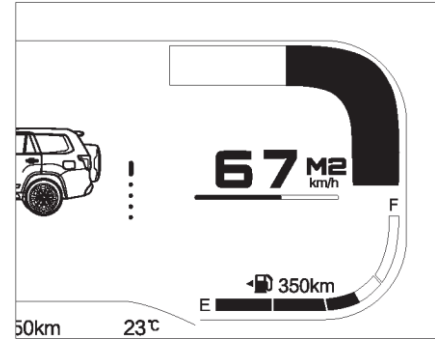


The starting point of the red area on the dial indicates the maximum allowable speed of the engine. The engine must undergo normal running-in and reach normal operating temperature before it can run at this maximum speed for a short time.

👁 Note

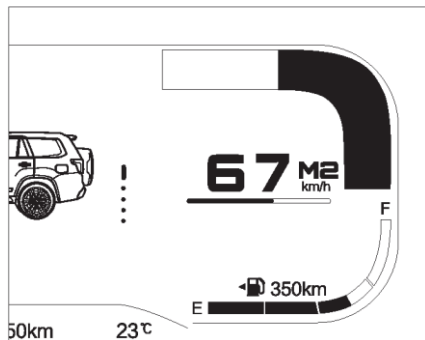
**The engine tachometer must NOT be continuously in the red area. Otherwise, it could cause extreme damage to the engine.**

## Speedometer



The speedometer shows the real-time speed of the car in km/h.

## Fuel meter

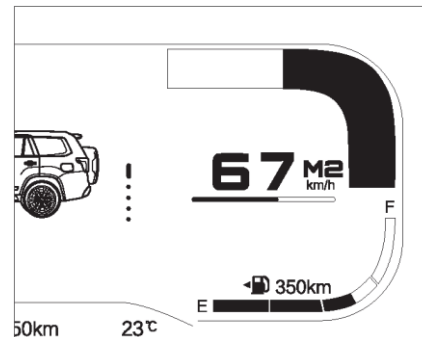


The fuel meter is located at the lower part of the speedometer. The fuel meter is divided into four sections on average. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the fuel meter displays the remaining fuel in the fuel tank. From "E" to "F", the fuel tank is empty to full. When the Start/Stop button is in the "OFF" mode, the pointer returns to the E position and the remaining fuel amount cannot be displayed.

When braking, accelerating, turning or driving on a slope, the fuel in the fuel tank may sway, which may affect the accuracy of the fuel meter display. Check the fuel amount by placing the vehicle on a flat road.

The fuel gauge can only show the actual fuel volume after the fuel level has stabilized for a certain length of time following refuelling.

## Low fuel indicator light



The low fuel indicator light is located in the speedometer. When the residual fuel in the fuel tank is too low, this light will be on. In addition, the LCD display displays the message "Please add fuel" and an audible alarm sounds.

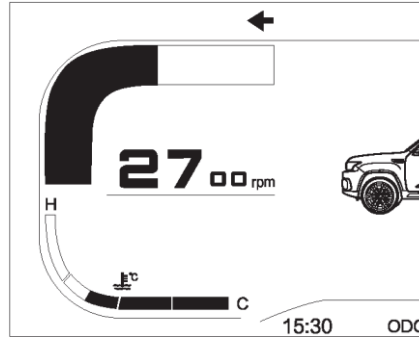


**i Hint**

**While driving uphill/downhill or on rough roads, the fuel level will become unstable, which will trigger the fuel warning light. Subject to the fuel level display in stable state.**

If any of the following conditions occurs, please take the vehicle to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection immediately:

- The fuel indicator light flashes continuously.
- When the vehicle is full of fuel, the fuel meter shows that the fuel level is low, and the fuel indicator light goes on and flashes.

**Engine coolant thermometer**

The thermometer is located under the engine RPM meter. When the Start/Stop button is at the "RUN" mode, the engine coolant thermometer will show the coolant temperature.

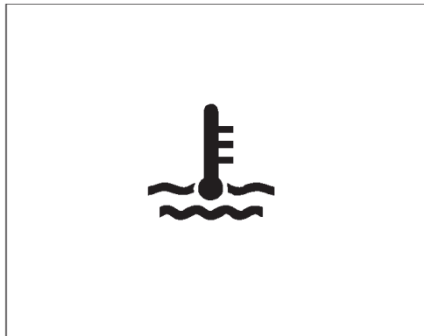
When the vehicle is running normally, the pointer of the gauge is usually near the middle position. If the pointer leans toward the red area, that is, "H" high temperature, it means that the coolant temperature is too high, which may cause serious damage to the engine. Please stop for inspection or seek help immediately without affecting driving safety.

If the pointer deviates or stays in the red zone for a long time and the coolant indicator light on the tachometer lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and turn off the engine. Check the coolant level and coolant lines for leaks.

**⚠ Warning**

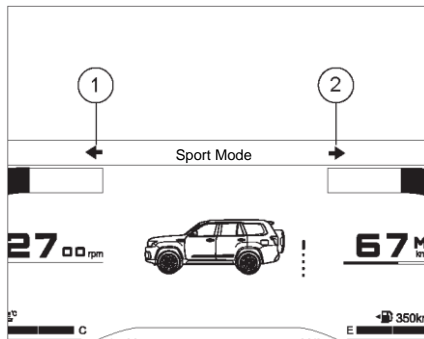
**When the engine is running, opening the cover of the coolant expansion tank is strictly prohibited. This is because hot coolant and steam under high pressure will spurt out and may cause scalding. Be sure to let the engine cool down completely before opening the coolant expansion tank cap with a large and thick cloth during operation to prevent scalding the operator. Do not spill the fluid on the engine parts or exhaust system when filling fluid and coolant, because fire may occur. The glycol in the engine coolant may also ignite under certain conditions.**

## Engine Coolant Warning Light



The high engine water temperature indicator is located in the engine tachometer. When the engine coolant temperature is too high, this indicator light will go on. In addition, the LCD display will show prompt information, which is synchronized with the high engine water temperature indicator, and there will be an audible alarm at the same time. Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine as soon as possible, and check the coolant level and coolant lines for leaks.

## Left and right turning indicator lights



When turning on the turn signal through the light control handle, the indicator lights ① or ② on the corresponding side of the instrument panel will flash and emit a rhythmic prompt sound.

### **i** Hint

**If the indicator light flashes faster than normal or remains lit up but does not flash, please check whether the bulb or circuit of the turn signal is faulty.**

## Information display area

The information display area equipped with this vehicle defaults to displaying the vehicle image, and the corresponding vehicle is displayed in the menu

Information, interface includes:

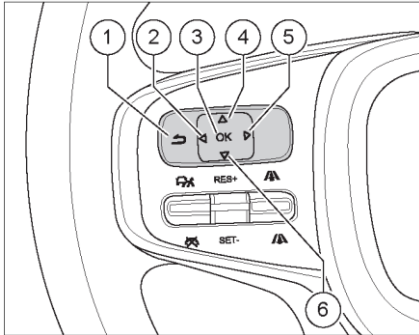
- Multimedia
- Trip computer
- Setting
- Alarm inquiry
- Navigation
- Environmental information
- Vehicle information

The interface can be switched and set through the "OK" and "Back" button on the left of the turning wheel; The prompt and alarm information screen will be automatically called up according to the state of the vehicle.

### **i** Hint

- **When the instrument cluster display is at low temperature, it may experience screen delay or whitening, which is normal.**

### Function button of the instrument



1. Back button
2. Left button (slide to left in the groove area)
3. Ok button
4. Up button (slide up in the groove area)
5. Right button (slide to right in the groove area)
6. Down button (slide down in the groove area)

### Constantly displayed information in the information display area

When the gear is in P position, the screen will display the picture of the vehicle, and when exiting from the P position, it will display corresponding content according to the ADAS signal (it will display the vehicle and lane line when not turned on)

### Trip computer interface

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the door, the instrument panel wakes up and prompts the door open status. After closing the door, Start/Stop the button in the "RUN" mode, press the "OK" button on the turning wheel, select "Trip computer" from the menu, and press the "OK" button. The trip computer interface includes:

- Short-term memory
- Long-term memory
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Battery voltage

The interface can be switched by "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

From top to bottom, the short-term memory and long-term memory are trip distance, trip time, average speed and average fuel consumption. The short-term memory automatically resets to zero after the vehicle has been shut down for more than 2 hours.

Trip time accumulates from the moment the vehicle is powered on after the most recent short-term/long-term memory reset.

The average speed is calculated since the last short-term/long-term memory reset.

Subtotal distance accumulated since the last short-term/long-term memory reset;

Both short-term memory and long-term memory can be reset manually by pressing and holding the "OK" key.

Vehicle voltage: Display the vehicle voltage from 0 to 20V (for reference only).

Instantaneous fuel consumption:

Display range of instantaneous fuel consumption during driving: 0~30.0L/100km.

Average fuel consumption:

Display the average fuel consumption of the vehicle when it travels, the range is: 0~30.0L/100km.

**Vehicle information interface**

Select "vehicle" from the menu. The vehicle information interface includes:

- Chassis information
- Tire pressure monitoring

The interface can be switched by "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**Environmental information interface**

Select 'Environment Information' from the menu and press the 'OK' button. The environmental information interface includes:

- Compass
- Gradient information, left and right:  $\pm 60^\circ$
- Gradient information, front and rear:  $\pm 40^\circ$
- Atmospheric pressure information
- Relative height information

The interface can be switched by "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**Multimedia interface**

Select "Multimedia" from the menu and press the "OK" button. The multimedia interface includes:

- Radio
- Music

Depending on the IHU side playback, the interface can be switched by the "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**Navigation interface**

Select "Navigation" from the menu and press the OK button. The interface can be switched by the "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**Setting interface**

Select "Settings" from the menu and press the OK button. Setting interface include:

- HUD setting
- Overspeed alarm
- Alarm volume

- Maintenance
- Compass calibration
- Fuel economy prompt

The interface can be switched by "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**Alarm query interface**

Select "Alarm Query" from the menu and press the OK button. The alarm query interface includes:

- If there is a fault, the specific fault information will be displayed
- if there is no fault, "No fault" will be displayed

The interface can be switched by "OK" and "Back" button on the left side of the turning wheel.

**The prompts and alarm information interface provides prompts for the following:**

- Please press the digital button to remember
- Seat position 1/2/3 memory success
- Failure of seat memory
- Failure of water depth detection system
- Drive safely and do not exceed the maximum wading depth
- Door state display
- Backlight brightness adjustment prompt
- Please turn off the position lamp
- Failure of One-button Start system
- Please press the brake to start
- Please switch to P/N gear to start
- No smart key found
- Please step on the brake when engaging the gear
- Step on the brake pedal to release the EPB.
- Failure of gear shifting
- Please move the gearshift handle back to the left
- Please stop and shift to P gear again
- The key is left in the vehicle
- Key leaving from vehicle
- Low power of key
- Failure of engine anti-theft authentication
- High carbon load of GPF
- Excessive carbon accumulation in GPF
- The electronic turning pillar is not unlocked
- Turning failure, please stop
- Failure of electronic turning column lock, please stop
- Abnormal power train signal
- Please check the stop monitoring video
- Seat belt state
- Please maintain it immediately
- The speed has exceeded xxxkm/h
- Switching to 4H/4L gear
- Failure of the differential lock system
- Please reduce the speed if the differential lock is in use
- It is recommended to turn on the differential lock to improve the vehicle passing performance
- Failure to meet the differential lock locking conditions and refusal to lock
- Please fasten front passenger belt
- Please fasten driver's seat belt
- Please release the handbrake
- Low engine oil pressure
- Low brake fluid
- The water temperature of engine is too hot, please stop.
- Please add washing liquid
- Please fill in fuel
- Rapid leakage of tire
- High tire temperature
- High tire voltage
- Low tire pressure
- Tire pressure sensor failure
- The tire pressure sensor is low

- Tire pressure sensor can not be found
- Failure of tire pressure system
- Please turn the turning wheel
- Distance to next maintenance (500/200/100 km)
- Ejection start reminder
- Failure of electric side step
- EPS system failure
- Failure of rear combination lamp module
- ESC system failure
- Failure of integrated brake-by-wire module
- Failure of automatic parking system
- Low-speed creep function failure
- Transmission failure
- Airbag failure
- Headlamp height adjustment failure
- PAS failure
- Failure of hill descent control system
- The blind spot assist system is turned on
- Blind spot assist system is turned off
- Blind spot assist system is abnormal
- Dashcam failure
- The dashcam SD card is not inserted. Please insert the SD card
- Failure of fuel sensor
- Rear fog lamp failure
- Turn signal failure
- Position lamp failure
- Low beam failure
- Backup lamp failure
- Brake lamp failure
- Engine failure
- ABS system failure

### Hint

**It is recommended to go to the nearest authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair immediately after the failure prompt appears.**

### **Audible alarm prompts**

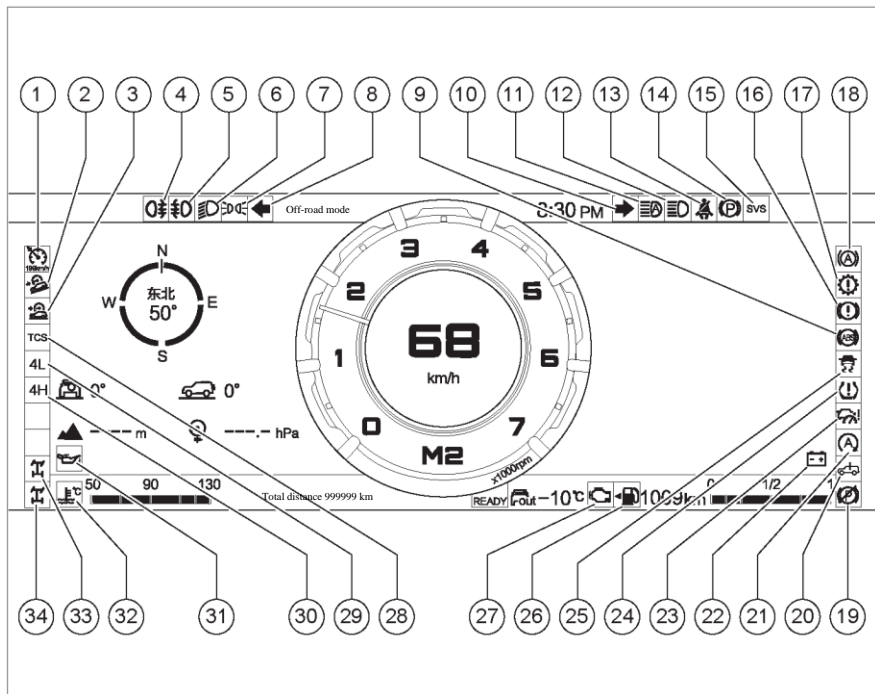
In addition to text alert, the instrument will also provide audible prompts when certain features are turned on or when the system fails. Information that can be prompted for audible alarm includes:

- Turning/danger alarm sound
- Reverse gear prompt sound
- Driving hood and door open
- Front and rear seat belt not fastened
- Please fill in fuel
- Distance to next maintenance (500/200/100 km)
- Please maintain it immediately
- Please turn off the position lamp
- The speed has exceeded xxxkm/h
- The speed has exceeded 120km/h
- Airbag failure
- Low brake fluid
- The engine oil pressure is low, please stop the vehicle and check it immediately. Telephone: 4008108177!

- The engine temperature is high, please stop driving. Telephone: 4008108177!
- Limp in transmission D gear!
- Limp in transmission P gear!
- Move the gearshift handle back to the left!
- Abnormal ABS system, avoid to drive on wet and slippery road, operate carefully, repair immediately, telephone: 4008108177!
- Abnormal ESC system, avoid to drive on wet and slippery road, careful operation, timely maintenance, consultation telephone: 4008108177!
- Abnormal EPB system. Please go to the store for repair in time. Telephone: 4008108177.
- Failure of steep descent system!
- automatic parking system failure!
- Serious failure of integrated brake-by-wire module!
- Failure of integrated brake-by-wire module!
- Failure of tire pressure monitoring system
- Failure of One-button Start system
- No smart key found
- The key is left in the vehicle

## Warning Indicator Light

2



1. Cruise control indicator light\*
2. Downhill assist on/ failure indicator light\*
3. Low-speed creep indicator light\*
4. Rear fog lamp indicator light
5. Front fog indicator lamp
6. Low beam indicator light
7. Position lamp indicator light
8. Left turning indicator light
9. ABS system failure/BSD indicator light
10. Right turning indicator light
11. IHBC indicator light\*
12. High beam indicator light
13. Seat belt not fastened indicator light
14. EPB parking brake indicator light
15. Engine electronic indicator light
16. Brake system failure/low brake fluid level indicator light
17. Transmission failure/airbag failure indicator light
18. Autohold system indicator light\*



- 19. EPB system failure indicator light
- 20. 48V system indicator light\*/GPF indicator light
- 21. Start/Stop system indicator light\*
- 22. Battery charging indicator lamp
- 23. ACC system failure\*/EPS system failure indicator light
- 24. Tire pressure alarm indicator light\*
- 25. ESC on / ESC off indicator light
- 26. Low fuel indicator light
- 27. Engine emission indicator light
- 28. TCS off indicator light
- 29. 4L (four-wheel drive low gear)
- 30. 4H (four-wheel drive high gear)
- 31. Low engine oil pressure indicator light
- 32. High water temperature indicator light
- 33. Front axle differential lock indicator light\*
- 34. Rear axle differential lock indicator light\*

1. Cruise control indicator light (green)\*

When this indicator light is on, it means that the vehicle is in cruise control state.

2. Downhill assist on /indicator light (green)\*


When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this light will go on for a few seconds and then go out; When the HDC switch is pressed down, the HDC lamp stays on; When the HDC indicator light flashes, it indicates that the vehicle HDC is in the operating state; When the HDC switch is pressed, the HDC light does not light up, indicating a malfunction in the system. Please go to a nearby BAIC authorized repair shop for maintenance as soon as possible.

3. Low speed creep indicator light (green)

This light stays on after the low-speed creep is turned on.

4. Rear fog lamp state indicator light (yellow)

After the rear fog light is turned on, this indicator light will be lit.

5. Front fog light state indicator light  (green)


After the front fog light is turned on, this indicator light will be lit.

6. Low beam indicator light (green)


When the low beam headlamp is turned on, the light will go on.

7. Position lamp indicator light (green)

When the light knob is rotated to the clearance lamp, the light will be on.

8. Left turn signal indicator lamp  (green)

When the left turn signal is switched on via the light control operating lever, the indicator light on the corresponding side of the combination instrument will flash and produce a rhythmic prompting sound.


9. ABS warning light  (yellow)

When the ABS system is faulty, this light will go on; When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the "RUN" position will carry out self-test. This light will go on for several seconds and then go out.


Be sure that this light has gone off before driving your car.


 **Warning**


- **If this indicator light comes on during driving, it can be driven to the destination while ensuring safety, but the vehicle should be sent to authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection as soon as possible.**
- **If the brake indicator light goes on at the same time, stop the vehicle immediately and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if it is safe to do so.**


10. Right turning indicator light  (green)


When the right turn signal is switched on via the light control operating lever, the indicator light -Arrow - on the corresponding side of the combination instrument will flash and produce a rhythmic prompting sound.

11.  IHBC indicator light (Yellow)\*

When the IHBC is faulty, the IHBC fault indicator light  (yellow) will be on. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair.

When the IHBC is in standby state, the IHBC standby indicator light  (white) will be on.

When the IHBC is in working state, the IHBC indicator light  (green) will be on.

12. High beam state indicator light  (blue)


After the headlight high beam is switched on, this indicator light will be lit.

13. Seat belt not fastened indicator light  (red)

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position, if the driver and front passenger didn't wear a seat belt, this indicator light will be on, and an audible alarm will be triggered after the vehicle has been driven for a while. The indicator light will turn off when the driver and front passenger wear their seat belt, i.e., the seat belt latch is buckled into the seat belt buckle.

 **Hint**

**If the driver is wearing the seat belt correctly, but the indicator light comes on while driving, contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if it is safe to do so.**

14. EPB parking brake indicator light  (red)

When the EPB button is pressed, this indicator will go on.


If the indicator is still on after pressing the EPB button, it may be a brake system failure and you must go to a nearby authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## 15. Engine electronic failure indicator light SVS (yellow)

When the engine is started or when the light is on and does not go out after several seconds, it indicates that the system is faulty, but the vehicle can still run normally. Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and troubleshooting as soon as possible.

 Warning

- **In case of engine-related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**
- **Serious driving performance problems will occur if no measures are taken.**

16. Low brake fluid level indicator light  (red)

When the brake fluid level is below the specified level, this light will go on. Release the parking brake completely before driving and ensure that the brake system and fault indicator light are extinguished.

If this light is lit while driving, it implies a weakened braking effect. Park the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.


 Hint

**If the braking system state & fault warning light is lit while driving, please follow the steps below and park the vehicle in a safe place:**


- **If the braking effect is not obvious when stepping on the brake pedal, continue with more force.**
- **If the braking effect is still not obvious, shift down the transmission gear, release the parking brake, and depress the brake pedal at the same time.**

## 16. Brake system failure indicator light EBD (red)

If both ABS and EBD lights come on at the same time, the ABS and EBD system in the vehicle are faulty. At this point, the vehicle can still be braked using conventional braking methods, but the ABS and EBD systems do not work. Please contact the authorized service store of BAIC Off-road for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

17. Automatic transmission failure indicator light  (yellow) \*

When the automatic transmission failure indicator light goes on, it indicates that the automatic transmission system is faulty. Please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealership in Beijing.

17. Airbag failure indicator light  (red)


When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this indicator light flashes for a few seconds and then goes out. If it keeps flashing or does not go out after a few seconds, it indicates that the SRS is faulty. In this case, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection as soon as possible.

 Warning


- **If the fault indicator light goes on, it cannot guarantee that the SRS is in normal state.**
- **It should be sent to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV immediately for inspection and repair.**

 Warning

- **If the indicator light goes on during driving, stop immediately and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if it is safe to do so.**
- **If no relative measures are taken, it can lead to serious driving performance problems and even the risk of accidents.**

18. Autohold system indicator light() (green)\*

When the automatic parking function is turned on, and when the driver steps on the brake to stop the vehicle (such as waiting for the green light), AUTOHOLD will automatically brake the car. When restarting, the brake status will be automatically released by lightly tapping the accelerator.


19. EPB system failure indicator light() (yellow)

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, this light will go on for about 3 seconds for self-test, and then go out.

This indicator light indicates the status of the EPB system. When the EPB system fails, this light will be on. The alarm pop-up window displays "EPB system failure" along with five beeps. If this indicator light comes on during driving, please contact your dealer for inspection and repair.

 Warning

- **If the indicator light comes on during driving, please stop immediately and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for safety.**
- **Serious driving performance problems will occur if no measures are taken.**

20. GPF indicator light() (Yellow) \*


In some special cases, alarm information may be triggered due to inadequate or frequent interruptions of GPF regeneration. When the GPF indicator light flashes and prompts to go to the 4S store for parking regeneration (sometimes accompanied by the engine control system indicator light and the engine failure indicator light are always on or flashing), it means that the GPF needs to perform manual regeneration program immediately.


Manual regeneration program are as follows:

- ① Drive the vehicle to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV and ensure that the fuel level is not lower than 20L;
- ② Hand over the vehicle to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV service personnel, who will use professional equipment to regenerate the parking or drive it directly on the highway for active regeneration.


 Note

**Keep the entire vehicle parked and the engine running; Do not depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal during parking regeneration. The gasoline engine is equipped with GPF models. When the GPF indicator lamp flashes, please go to the nearest authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible for the relevant inspection and operation of GPF regeneration.**


21. Idle Start/Stop system indicator light  (green)

This light indicates the Start/Stop system state. When the vehicle enters the idle stop mode, the idle start-stop system indicator light  (green) goes on.


When the idle stop/start is turned off or the idle start-stop system fails to work, the idle start-stop off/indicator light (yellow) goes on.


22. Battery charging indicator light  (red)


When the battery system is faulty and the starter/stop button is in the "RUN" position (engine not started), the battery charging indicator light will go on, and should go out after the engine is started. If the indicator light does not go out, go to a nearby authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

23. ACC standby indicator light  (White)\*

When the ACC is in standby state, the ACC standby indicator light (white) goes on.

When the ACC is turned on, the ACC indicator light  (green) goes on.


When the ACC fails, the ACC indicator light  (yellow) goes on.

23. EPS indicator light  (yellow or red)


- Yellow light: some functions are affected or the assist is gradually reduced.
- Red light: cut off the assist.

When the startup / stop button is in "RUN" mode, this light will go on for self-test and then go out after self-test.

If it does not go out after the self-inspection or comes on in the process of running, it indicates that the EPS is faulty. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair.


24. Tire pressure warning indicator light  (yellow)\*

When the tire pressure alarm indicator light is on, there is fault to tire pressure system of the vehicle. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this light will go on for a few seconds and then go out. If the indicator light does not go out or goes on when the vehicle is running, please park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

25. ESC OFF indicator light  (yellow)\*

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this indicator light will come on for a few seconds and then go off.

When transfer case 2H: When the ESC function is turned off, this indicator goes on; Transfer case 4H/4L: The indicator light automatically become on;

25. ESC indicator light  (yellow)\*

If the ESC indicator light flashes quickly, it means the vehicle ESC system is working. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this light will go on for a few seconds and then go out. When the ESC indicator light stays on, it indicates that the system is faulty and you must go to a nearby authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### 26. Low fuel level indicator light (yellow)

When the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode (the engine is not started), the vehicle will carry out self-check, this indicator light will go on for several seconds and then goes out. When the fuel tank level is too low, the indicator light will go on and a sound will be heard to remind the driver to refuel. If the indicator light stays on when the fuel tank is oil amount or does not go out after the vehicle self-test, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### 27. Engine emission indicator light (yellow)

When the engine emission control system is unstable and the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), this light will go on. After the engine has been started, this light should go off. If the warning light is on after the engine is started, or it is on or flashes during driving, related parts in the engine control system fails. At this time, the vehicle can still run, but must be as soon as possible sent to a nearby authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair.

### Warning

- **In case of engine-related problems, please stop as soon as possible and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**
- **Serious driving performance problems will occur if no measures are taken.**

### 28. TCS off indicator light

When the TCS function is turned off, this light will go on.

### 29. 4L (four-wheel drive low gear) indicator light

When the four-wheel drive low gear state indicator light 4L is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive low gear state.

### 30. 4H (four-wheel drive high gear) indicator light

When the four-wheel drive high gear state indicator light 4H is on, it indicates that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive high gear state.

### 31. Low engine oil pressure indicator light (red)


When this light is on, it indicates that the engine oil is insufficient. In this case, stop to a safe place as soon as possible and turn off the engine, otherwise, the engine will be seriously damaged. Check the engine oil level after a few minutes' rest, adding engine oil as necessary. If the oil level is normal and the light is still on, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

### Note

**If the engine RPM is > 1500rpm after the engine is started or when the vehicle is running and this indicator light is on, please park the engine at a safe place immediately and turn off the engine. Do not start the engine until the engine oil pressure has been restored.**


**Warning**

- **If the indicator light goes on during driving, stop immediately and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if it is safe to do so.**
- **Serious driving performance problems will occur if no measures are taken.**


32. High indicator light  (red)

When the startup / stop button is in "RUN" mode, this light will go on for self-test and then go out after self-test.

If the indicator light does not go out after self-test or is on during driving, it indicates that the current engine coolant temperature is high. The instrument cluster prompts "High engine temperature", accompanied by a sound. In this case, the engine RPM should be reduced and the vehicle should be stopped immediately while ensuring safety.

33. Front axle differential lock indicator light  (White)\*

When the front axle differential lock is locked, this indicator light goes on. This indicator light will flash (2Hz) when the front axle differential lock does not meet the locking conditions or is abnormal.

34. Rear axle differential lock indicator light  (White)\*

When the rear axle differential lock is locked, this indicator light goes on. This indicator light will flash (2Hz) when the rear axle differential lock does not meet the locking conditions or is abnormal.

## Turning wheel

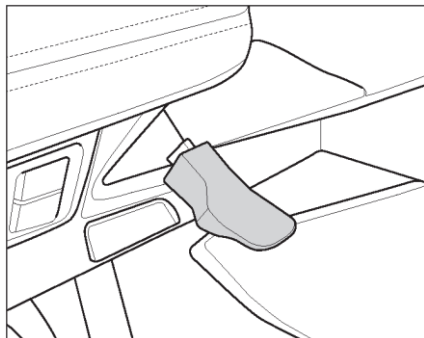
### Adjust The Steering Wheel Position



The driver can adjust the height of the steering wheel according to his or her body type.

**Warning**

**Do NOT make the steering wheel face directly towards your face. Otherwise, the airbag in front of the driver will not be able to provide effective protection in the events of an accident. After adjustment, the steering wheel should right face the chest of the driver.**

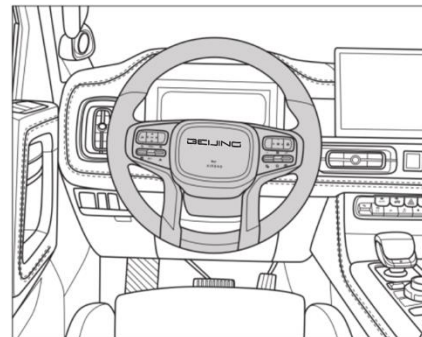


1. Adjust the driver's seat to the correct position, then push down the locking handle to unlock the turning wheel.
2. Adjust the turning wheel up and down so that the turning wheel is facing the driver's chest. Make sure that the driver can see all the instruments and indicator light on the dashboard.
3. Then push up the locking handle to lock it.
4. Move the turning wheel up, down, forward and backward to confirm that the turning wheel is securely locked.

### ⚠ Warning

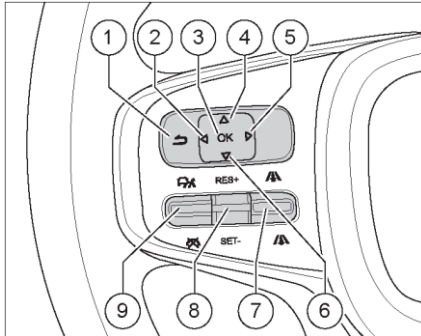
- Failure to use the turning wheel position adjuster and incorrect sitting posture may result in serious injuries.
- To avoid dangerous driving conditions and accidents, adjust the turning wheel only when the vehicle is stopped!
- When adjusting the driver's seat or turning wheel, it shall be noted that the distance between the turning wheel and the chest shall not be less than 25 cm. If it is less than 25 cm, the SRS will not provide protection.
- The locking handle must be pressed firmly to prevent the position of the turning pillar from changing when the vehicle is running.

### Multifunction turning wheel



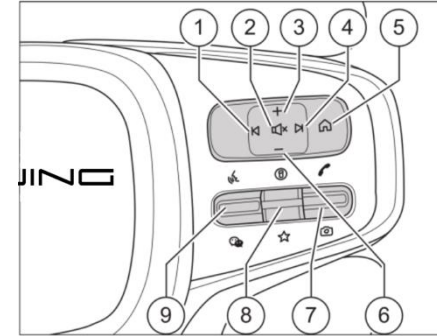
This vehicle is equipped with multi-function turning wheel which is equipped with buttons for operation, switch and adjustment. The details are as follows:



**Left button Group \***

1. Back button
2. Left (slide to left in the groove area)
3. Ok button
4. Up (slide up in the groove area)
5. Right (slide to right in the groove area)
6. Down (slide down in the groove area)
7. Following distance adjustment key
- After the cruise control is turned on, move it up to shorten the following distance.

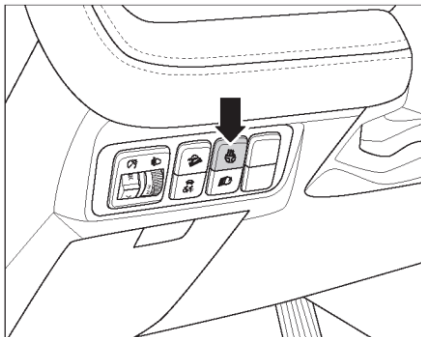
- After the cruise control is turned on, move it downward to increase the following distance.
8. Cruise control RES+/SET- button
  - In cruise control cancel state, move the button up to restore the current recorded speed; After the cruise control is turned on, move the button upward once to increase the set speed once.
  - After entering the cruise control, move it down to set the cruise speed to the current vehicle speed; Move the button down once to decrease the speed once.
9. ACC switch
  - When the speed is greater than the set speed, move it up, the cruise control will be turned on, and the instrument cruise control indicator light goes on; Move it upward again, the cruise control is turned off, and the instrument cruise control indicator light is off.
  - After entering the cruise control, move it downward to exit the cruise control state and enter the standby state.

**Right button Set \***

1. Last radio/music (slide to left in the groove area)
2. Mute button
3. Volume + (slide up in the groove area)
4. Next radio/music (slide up in groove area)
5. Home button
6. Volume - (slide down in groove area)
7. Bluetooth phone / Photo button
- Move up to enter the Bluetooth phone interface; When the Bluetooth calls, move up to answer the call; Move up a little far to hang up the incoming call. During a call, move up to end the call.

- Move down the button once to turn on the photo function, and move down for a long time to turn on the video recording.
8. Intelligent driving menu/custom button
- Move up, the infotainment screen will display the intelligent driving setting menu, such as lane departure, lane keeping and other settings.
  - Move down to achieve custom functions. For example, if the custom button is set to navigation, you can directly activate the custom button to start the navigation.
9. Voice / WeChat button
- Move up to turn on the voice function.
  - Move down to enter the WeChat function.

#### Turning wheel heating switch \*



After the vehicle starts, press the turning wheel heating switch, the turning wheel heating indicator light turns on, and the turning wheel starts heating. Press it again to turn it off.

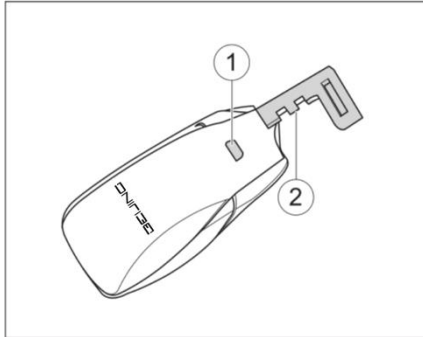
#### **i** Hint

- **After the vehicle engine is started, the turning wheel heating can be started through infotainment screen, voice control and Yueyequan APP.**

## Turn on and turn off vehicle

### Key

This vehicle is equipped with 2 smart keys, each of which contains a mechanical key that can be used in emergency situations. If the smart key does not work, you can use the mechanical key to open the vehicle door.



1. Press the release button ①.
2. Pull out the mechanical key ②.

Smart key: Wireless remote control can be used to lock or unlock all doors, open the trunk, and activate the car search function.

Mechanical key: The mechanical key can lock and unlock all doors when the vehicle is normally powered.

When carrying the smart key on an airplane, be sure not to press any button on the smart key while in the cabin. Pressing the button may cause the smart key to emit radio waves, which may interfere with the flight of the plane.

#### Note

- When using a smart key with a transceiver chip, please follow the instructions:
- Do not attach any objects (e.g. metallic seals) to the smart key that would cut off the electromagnetic waves.
- Do not hit other objects hard with the smart key.

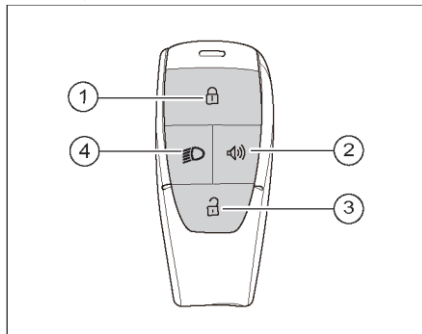
#### Note

- Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures for extended periods, such as on the dashboard or engine compartment hood under direct sunlight.
- Do not immerse the smart key in water or wash it in an ultrasonic washer.
- Do not put smart key together with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as mobile phones.

#### Hint

Be sure to put the mechanical key back after using it.

## Smart key



The smart key has four button, which are:

1. Lock button: locking the door latch
2. Car search button: Press this button in the Alert state, the vehicle will emit light and sound reminders.
3. Unlock button: unlock the doors
4. Light button: Turn on the position lamp and low beam (long press)
5. For the key remote start function, press the lock button for a short time and the car search & remote start button for a long time (more than 2s) to turn on/off the key remote start function.

The effective range of the smart key is about 25 meters, but it can be reduced in special situations, such as nearby electromagnetic interference or being in blind spots. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for details. If the key is unable to operate the door or is unable to operate within normal distances:

- Check whether there are radio transmitters nearby that interfere with the normal operation of the key and the surroundings, such as radio stations or airports.
- The battery may have run out of electricity. Check the battery inside the key. To replace the battery, please refer to “Replace Battery”.

If the key is lost, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible to avoid the vehicle being stolen.

## Note

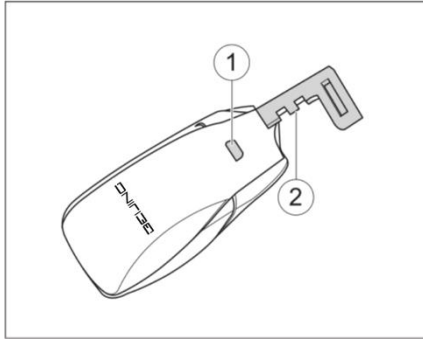
- **When the unlock/lock button is pressed continuously, the door lock protection will be triggered and the unlocking function will be temporarily disabled.**

## Note

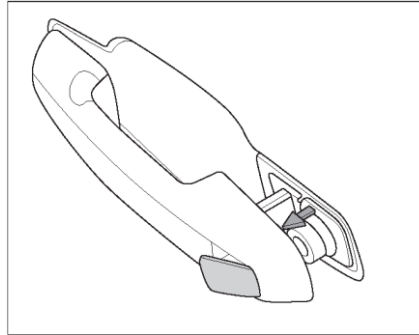
- **When you operate the smart key, although you do not need to point the smart key at the vehicle, the key must be within a certain range to function when pressing the button.**
- **Please note that the operating range of the smart key is affected by the battery level in the key, and sometimes by physical and geographic factors. For safety reasons, please operate it when you are near the door.**

### Emergency unlock

The smart key contains a mechanical key which is used in emergency situations. If the smart key runs out of battery or fails due to other faults, remove the mechanical key and open the door as follows.



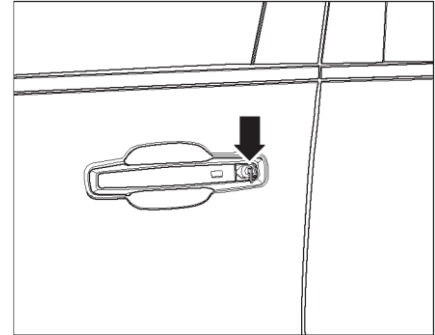
1. Press the release button ①.
2. Pull out the mechanical key ②.



3. Pull up the driver's side door handle and push the cover with your fingers from inside the handle to remove it;

#### **i** Hint

- **Be sure to put the mechanical key back after using it.**



4. Rotate the door latch cylinder counterclockwise to unlock and clockwise to lock.

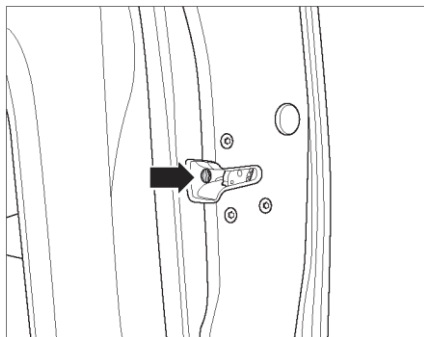
#### **i** Hint

- **After locking the door with the smart key, unlock and open the door with a mechanical key, the vehicle will enter the alarm state. At this point, place the smart key in the center console armrest storage box with emergency start identification and press the Start/Stop button to deactivate the alarm.**

### Locking door with mechanical key emergency lock

When the vehicle is powered off, the left front door lock is locked by the mechanical key, and the other three doors and the liftgate are locked by the door lock with their own emergency locks.

2



1. Remove the mechanical key;
2. Open the door, insert the mechanical key into the emergency locking switch, rotate the left rear door lock counterclockwise, and rotate the liftgate, right rear and right front door lock clockwise to lock the door lock;
3. Close the door.

### Replace the battery

When the smart key power is low, the trip computer will display "low power of smart key" to remind the replacement of the battery.

When replacing the battery, open the battery cover on the key, as improper operation can easily damage the key. Therefore, it is recommended that the replacement be entrusted to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

#### Warning

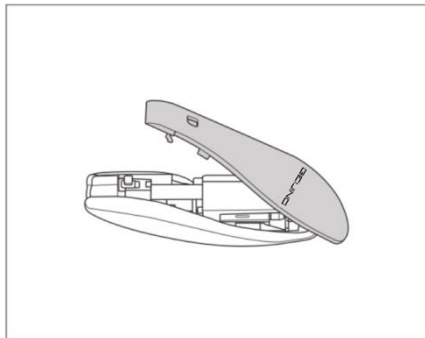
- **Be careful not to touch the circuit, otherwise static electricity may be generated, which may damage the smart key.**
- **When replacing the battery of the key, be careful not to lose any components.**
- **Only use the same or equivalent battery recommended by BAIC ORV.**
- **Dispose of used batteries in accordance with local laws.**

#### Note

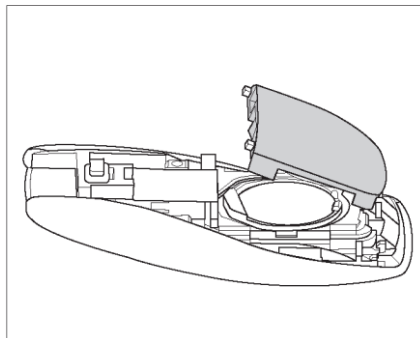
- **Ensure that the positive and negative terminals of the smart key cell are installed correctly.**
- **Do not replace the battery of the smart key with wet hands, as water can cause the battery to rust.**
- **Do not touch or move any components of the smart key, as it will affect the functionality of the smart key.**
- **Be careful not to bend the electrodes when inserting the smart key cell, and do not allow dust or oil stains to stick to the battery box.**

Please follow the following steps to replace the key battery:

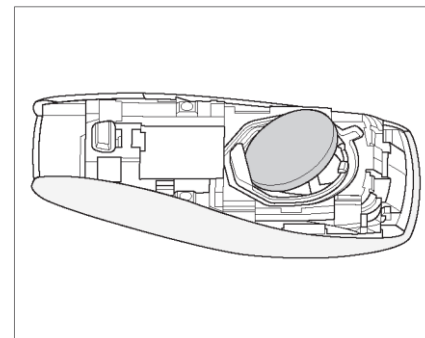
1. Press the backside mechanical key switch to remove the mechanical key;



2. Open the rear cover of the key along the mechanical key slot.

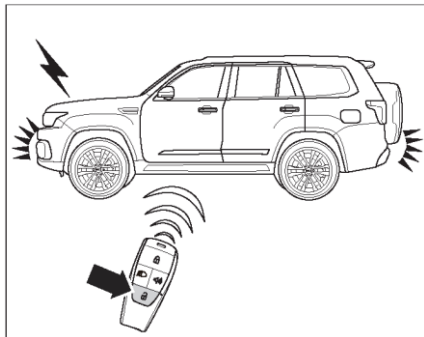


3. Open the battery cover with a sharp tool;



4. Remove the battery to avoid contacting the circuit board and battery clamps;
5. Avoid touching the battery surface when installing the battery and wipe the battery clean before installation;
6. Ensure that the battery cover is fully engaged during installation to avoid dust and moisture from entering;
7. After the battery is replaced, it is necessary to test whether the function of the smart key is normal. If the smart key still does not work properly, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

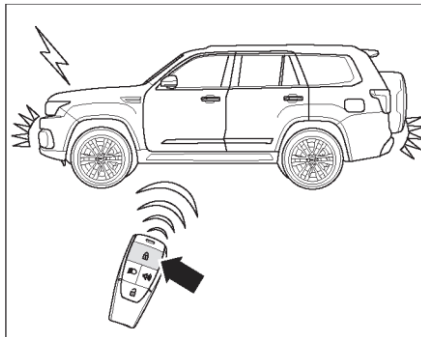
### Unlock the doors



After the Unlock button is pressed, all doors are unlocked at the same time. The turn signal lamp flashes twice.

After using the remote control unlock function, please open any door within approximately 30 seconds, otherwise all doors will lock again automatically.

### Locking door



When the smart key is located outside the vehicle, the Star/Stop button is in "OFF" mode, the engine compartment hood, four doors and liftgate are closed, press the Lock button to lock the doors.

### Smart key matching

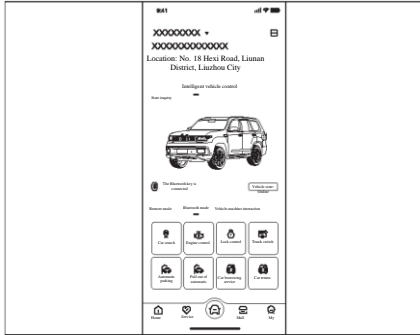
If the smart key needs to be re-matched due to the loss of the key, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV in time, and the related operations will be carried out by professionals in the dealership.

#### Note

- After the smart key is rematched, the smart key that previously matched the vehicle will no longer be used. Therefore, all keys that need to be used must be matched again during the new key is made.
- Up to 2 smart keys can be matched for each vehicle at the same time.



## Mobile phone Bluetooth key unlocking



The mobile phone Bluetooth key can replace the smart key. Touching the corresponding button on the Bluetooth key can realize the functions such as lifting the window, unlocking the trunk, searching for the car and starting the Bluetooth key. Carry the mobile phone into the vehicle and manually trigger the Bluetooth key. Within 3 minutes after the function is triggered, press the brake pedal and press the start switch to start the vehicle. After the function is triggered for 3 minutes, the Bluetooth key start function needs to be re-triggered before the vehicle can be started.

The mobile phone Bluetooth key can be used when the mobile phone has been certified as follows:

1. Use the mobile phone to download and install the Yueyequan APP.
2. Complete the vehicle owner certification according to the mobile phone APP prompt.
3. Open the mobile phone Bluetooth and carry the mobile phone close to the vehicle.
4. Keep the Yueyequan APP in started and switch to the "Love Car" module until the "Bluetooth key" mark in the interface changes to "Activated".

### Hint

- **Due to differences in different mobile phones, environmental interference, and other factors, if the system cannot determine whether the mobile phone is in the vehicle, it will not be able to start the engine. Adjust the phone position or angle and try again.**
- **Re-authentication is required when the user logs out of the current account and logs in again.**
- **When using Bluetooth key function for the first time, you need to verify the Bluetooth key through the network. If there is no network, the Bluetooth control function cannot be used.**

### Note

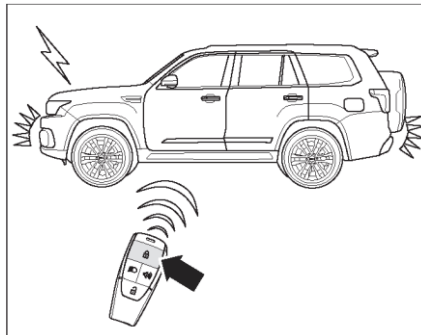
- **The vehicle cannot be started if the Bluetooth key start function times out (greater than 3 minutes).**

## Anti-theft alarm system

Your vehicle is equipped with an anti-theft alarm system. To ensure maximum safety and operating convenience, we strongly recommend that you carefully read the contents of this section so as to fully understand the features of the system and how to operate it.



## Smart key setting anti-theft



Press the Lock button. If each door and liftgate are closed, the turn signal flashes once, and the door and liftgate are locked at the same time. The anti-theft state indicator light begins to flash, indicating that the system has entered the anti-theft alert state. In this state, the anti-theft system monitors the door, liftgate, START/STOP button and state of the Start/Stop button in the "RUN" position. If at this time the locking button is pressed down again, the turn signal will flash once and the system will execute a locking action once again.

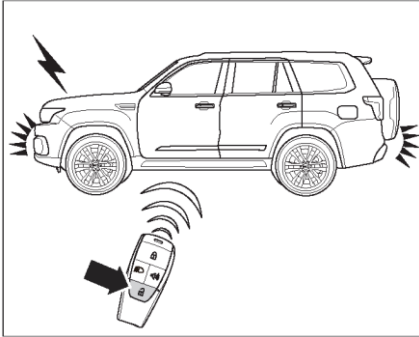
If the vehicle does not meet the locking conditions, i.e. one of the door and liftgate is not closed or the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position, pressing the Lock button will not respond to the vehicle, and the vehicle cannot be locked and armed. Conditions for locking of car:

- When all door latches and liftgate are normal, all doors and liftgate are closed normally;
- The START/STOP button is off and the Start/Stop button is in the "OFF" position.

### Note

**After setting the anti-theft state, the engine also enters the anti-theft state. At this time, if the mechanical key matched with the vehicle is used to enter the vehicle and the engine is started within 15 seconds, the anti-theft can be disarmed.**

### Smart key anti-theft disarmed



When the anti-theft mode is on but no alarm is triggered, pressing the unlocking button will simultaneously unlock all the car doors. The turn signal lamp flashes twice.

With remote unlock function in operation, if no door is opened, all doors will be automatically locked again after some time, and they are anti-theft mode again.

### Trigger alarm

When the anti-theft system is triggered, the turn signal will flash and the horn will give an alarm sound at the same time. No matter whether the trigger signal is removed or not, the alarm will stop after a cycle of system alarm, and the alarm will sound again when a new trigger occurs.

If the alarm is triggered, anti-theft mode indicator light in information center will flash at certain time interval.

#### Note

**This system only monitors the state signals of each door, liftgate, and ignition switch. It will issue an alarm when any of the signals above is triggered by unauthorized people.**

### Smart key turn on the lights



Press and hold the light button to turn on the position lamp and low beam, which will turn off automatically after a while.

## Second-Time Anti-Theft Alarm Setup

When the system is in an anti-theft alert mode, after the unlocking button is pressed down, the anti-theft alert mode will be cancelled. If there no change to the state of the key or car doors within certain times, the system will automatically enter anti-theft alert mode again. If the unlock key is pressed again within the designated time, timing is started again.

### Note

**This vehicle has two types of smart keys, the specific equipment is subject to the actual vehicle.**

2

## Central locking system

### Explanatory Notes on Operational Control of the Central Door Lock System

The central door lock system can be used to clock and open all vehicle doors:

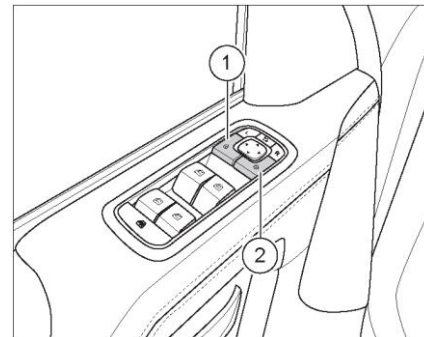
1. Operate central locking system with the smart key;
2. Operate the central locking system with the mechanical key;
3. Operate the central locking system with the central door lock switch on the driver's side door.

### Using the smart key to operate the central door lock

Press the smart key Lock button. If the vehicle meets the lock requirements, the central locking system will lock, which means the doors and liftgate will be locked.

Press the smart key Unlock button to unlock the central locking system, i.e. all the door are unlocked at the same time.

### Central door lock button



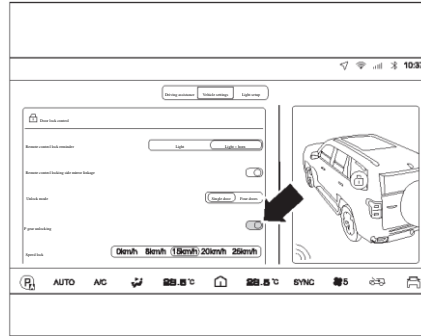
The central door lock button is located on the driver door as shown in the figure. Press button ① to unlock the central locking system, and press button ② to lock.

### Warning

**Do NOT leave children or the disabled inside the car alone! Because once the locking component is operated, the door will be immediately locked, making it difficult for children or disabled people to leave the vehicle on their own in case of an emergency. The locked doors in the event of an accident will also increase the difficulty of rescue for them.**

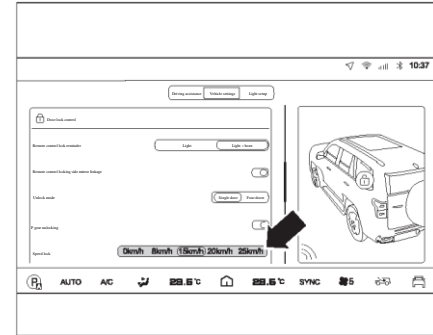
## The Automatic Unlocking Function

1. When the vehicle is running, if a collision occurs and the airbag has been detonated, the whole door latch will unlock automatically.
2. When the entire vehicle is locked, the central locking system will unlock automatically when the vehicle transitions from driving to stopping, shut down the engine and the Start/Stop button is placed in the "OFF"/"ACC" gear position.



3. Through the Infotainment screen > Vehicle settings > Door lock control > P unlocking switch, the P unlocking function can be turned on/off. After the function is turned on, the central locking system will unlock automatically when the vehicle lock from the driving state to the stop state, and when the vehicle shifts from other gear positions to the P gear.

## Function of automatic lock



Through the Infotainment screen > Vehicle settings > Door lock control > Vehicle speed locking, it can be set to close or set to trigger the vehicle speed. When the speed exceeds the set value, all door and liftgate will be automatically locked.

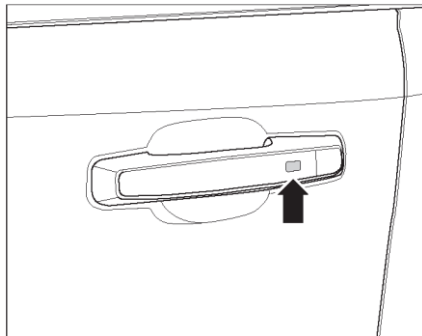
## The Door Lock Motor Hot Protection Function

The door locking motors have a heat protection function. If the door lock is opened and closed several times within a short period of time, it may trigger the heat protection function of the door lock motor, thus disabling the door lock function over a short period of time.

## Door

### Locking and unlocking of intelligent access system \*

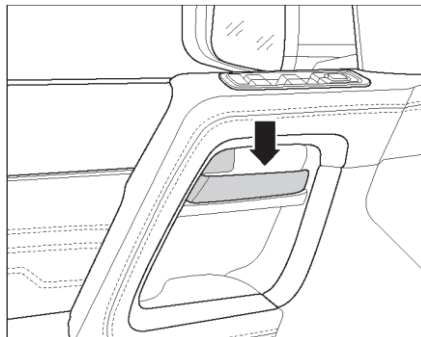
2



When carrying the smart key with you, you can use the smart entry system to lock and unlock the doors.

- Unlocking operation: Press the door handle lock and unlock button to unlock all doors and liftgate.
- Locking operation: Press the door handle lock and unlock button to lock all doors and liftgate.

### Unlocking with the inside handle



- In the door unlock, pull the unlock the doors inside the door to open the door.
- In the locked state of the door latch, pull the inner buckle unlock the doors of the door and pull it again to open the door.

#### Note

- To prevent children from opening the rear doors with the inside handle of the door, the child restraint system should be turned on.
- After the child safety lock is turned on, the interior handle cannot be used to open the rear doors. At this time, the rear door should be opened from outside the vehicle.

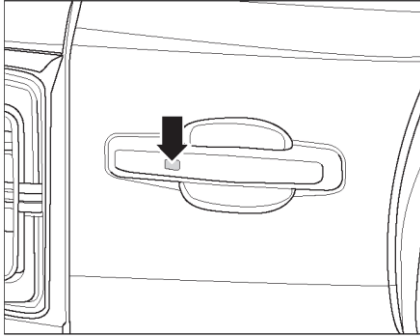
#### Hint

- When the vehicle is out of power, personnel can open the door from inside, pull the interior handle of the door twice to unlock and open the door.
- When the interior central control door lock is in the lock state, pull the interior door handle twice continuously to unlock and open the door.

## Tail Door

### Open the liftgate

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the liftgate release handle to open the liftgate.

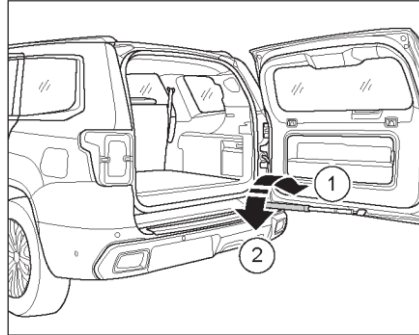


- When the liftgate is in the locked state of the vehicle, carry the smart key close to the liftgate and press the outside switch \* to unlock the liftgate. Pull the liftgate handle to open the liftgate.

### Warning

**Do not allow children to open or close the liftgate; otherwise, the child's hand, head or neck may be pinched by the closing liftgate.**

### Keep the liftgate in the open state



- Unlock the liftgate opening limiter
- Lock the liftgate opening limiter

The liftgate opening limiter can only be operated when the liftgate is fully open.

### Warning

- The high pressure is stored inside. Do not open it, do not get close to the heat source, and operate and recycle it according to regulations.
- Strong winds, high slopes, and large external forces may overcome the limiting force of the stepless limiter and cause the opening and closing move of the liftgate. Therefore, avoid being bumped by the liftgate.

### Close the liftgate

- Check and confirm that the liftgate opening limiter is in unlock.
- Push and press the liftgate from the outside the vehicle to close it completely.

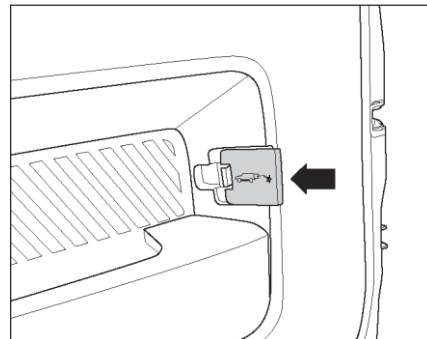
 **Warning**

- To close the liftgate manually, be sure to push and press the liftgate outside the vehicle to close it completely. If the auxiliary handle is used to directly close the liftgate, it is easy to pinch the hand and cause serious personal injury.
- It is prohibited to drive the vehicle in the liftgate open state.
- When there are other people near the liftgate, it should be ensured that no harm is caused to other people when opening or closing the liftgate.
- Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in windy conditions, as the liftgate may move suddenly under the action of strong winds.
- If the liftgate opening limiter is not locked, the liftgate may close. It takes more effort to open or close the liftgate on a slope than on level ground, so be careful when the liftgate accidentally opens or closes on its own.

 **Note**

- If the liftgate is frozen or covered by ice or snow, do not forcibly open the liftgate. Heat the A/C first and then open the liftgate. If you have to open the liftgate in an emergency, pour warm water to melt the liftgate. Try to open the liftgate after the icy position loosens.
- Do not install or paste any accessories on the liftgate opening limiter.
- Do not lean on, climb or place luggage on the opening limiter; Do not apply external force to it in the horizontal direction.

**Unlocking in emergency conditions**



1. Get inside the vehicle and pry off the emergency cover on the inside of the liftgate.
2. In the liftgate locking state, pull the cable twice to open the liftgate.

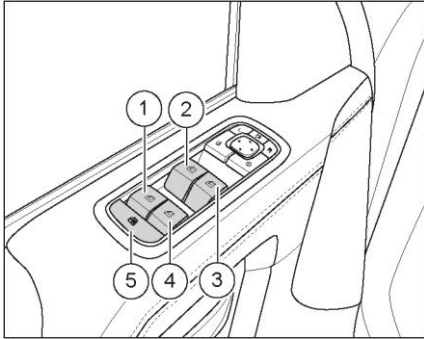


## Window

### Power window

This vehicle is equipped with power window on the left and right door, which can be controlled by the power window button in the driver door switch block.

### Power window switch

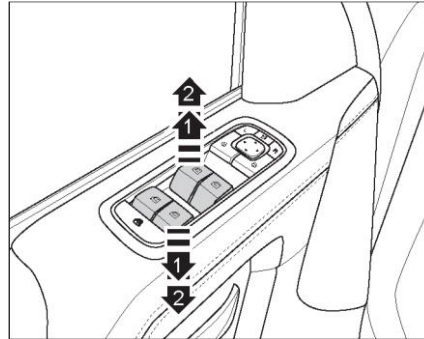


1. Control the lifting of the left rear doors window
2. Control the lifting of the driver's side door window
3. Control the lifting of the front passenger seat door window

4. Control the lifting of the right rear doors window
5. Passenger-side window locking switch

All the power window can be operated from inside through the control panel on the driver side door. Passengers can operate the corresponding door with the switch on their own side.

### Window opening/closing



Driver's side window control switch

Press the switch to lower the corresponding window. The window switch has two gear position:

Manual up/down (gently pull up/press down to the 1st gear position)

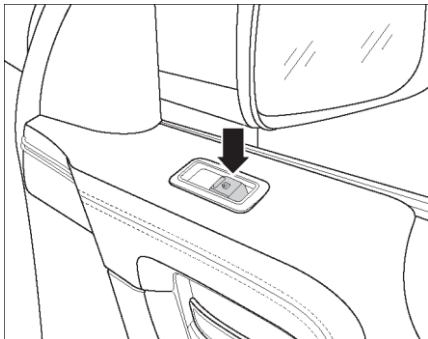
- Gently pull up/press down any control switch and hold, the power window will keep lifting.

Automatic up/down (pull up/press to 2nd gear position)

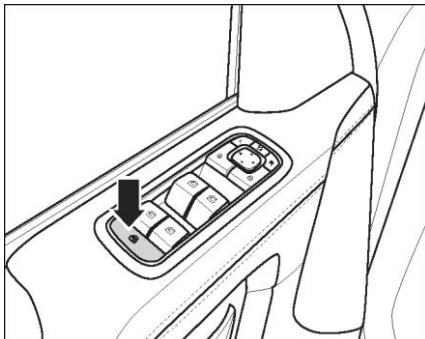
- Pull up/press any control switch to its limit position and then release. The window will lift automatically to its limited position.

### Note

To avoid the motor of damaging the power window, after several consecutive switch window, the protective device will be activated and the power window will be inoperable. After waiting for a period of time, the power window can resume its normal operation.

**Front passenger seat and rear window**

The power window switch on the passenger-side is located on each door interior trim panel. Pull up the switch or press down the switch to control the lifting of the window. The operation method is the same as that of the driver's side window.

**Passenger-side window locking switch**

Pressing the locking switch on the passenger-side window will lock the lifting functions of the passenger-side and rear windows.

**⚠ Warning**

Take care when operating the electric windows, and improper operation may cause accident or injury.

- Make sure that no one is within the lifting range of the door and window when opening or closing the door and window.
- Do not leave children or disabled persons alone in the lock vehicle, because it is impossible to open the doors and windows in case of emergency.
- Always take the vehicle key with you when leaving the vehicle, because it will not be possible to lift the door or window after the START/STOP button is closed.
- Children sitting in the rear seats while driving must use the safety lock switch to turn off the rear window lifting function, so that it cannot be opened or closed.

### Window anti-pinch

For the window equipped with one-touch lift function, the glass will move reversely in case of obstacle, and the window will be opened downward.

If the anti-pinch reversal of the window is triggered twice in a row, the one-touch window-lifting function will be inhibited and can be restored by initialization of the window position.

### Window position anti-pinch learning and initialization

After the vehicle of the equipment four-door one-touch power window is disordered (through OTA upgrade or other upgrade) or the vehicle is powered off, the anti-pinch learning of the window is required. The specific methods are as follows:

1. Switch the Keyless Start/Stop button to "RUN" mode and the engine is not started;
2. Operate the window to the top and stop for 2 seconds;
3. Operate the window for 2 seconds after it drops to the bottom and stops;
4. Operate the window again to rise to the top and stop for 2 seconds. The learning of this window function is completed.

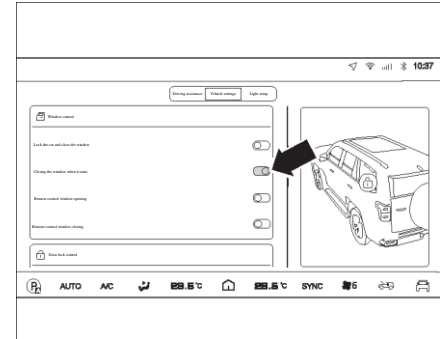
After the windows of the four doors manual learning process is completed, check whether the automatic up function is restored, if it is restored, the learning is successful.


After the anti-pinch learning, if two consecutive anti-pinch events occur, the one-button lifting function will be inhibited, and the initialization operation is required, that is, the manual gear position of the switch is lifted to the top continuously, and the function will resume to normal.

#### Hint

- **Be sure to use the manual gear of the window switch. The lifting and lowering of the window need to be completed continuously. If the window stops, it needs to be relearned.**

### Closing window on rainy days \*

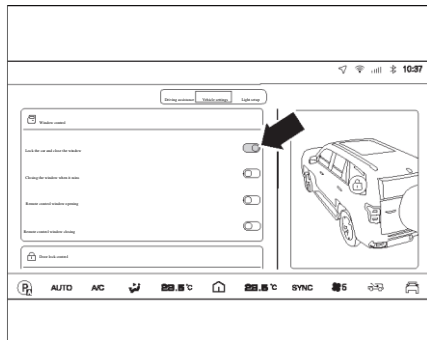


To equip the four-door one-touch power window vehicle, you can select whether to enable it through the Infotainment screen>Vehicle settings >  > Window control > Rain closing windows. This function is enabled by default. When the function is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and the windows of the four doors and sunroof are automatically turned off if it rains. Windows of the four doors and sunroof will also be closed automatically if it does not rain for 6 hours.

### **i** Hint

- The window closing function on rainy days is activated only once when the Keyless Start/Stop mode is not switched.
- The window and sunroof may not be closed automatically if the rain is too light. Make sure that the window and sunroof are closed completely before leaving.

#### Lock window control



For vehicle equipped with four-door one-touch power window, select whether to enable this function through the Infotainment screen> Vehicle settings>



> Window control > Lock and close windows.

This function is disabled by default. When the function is turned on, the windows of the four doors, sunroof and sunshade are automatically turned off when the vehicle is locked.

### **i** Hint

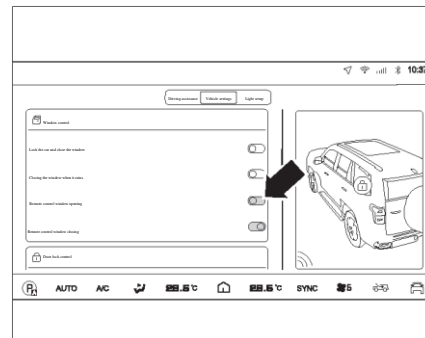
- For vehicle models with lock and window functions, please press and hold the key button 30 seconds later.


#### Window anti-pinch

For the window equipped with one-touch lift function, the glass will move reversely in case of obstacle, and the window will be opened downward.

If the anti-pinch reversal of the window is triggered twice in a row, the one-touch window-lifting function will be inhibited and can be restored by initialization the window position.

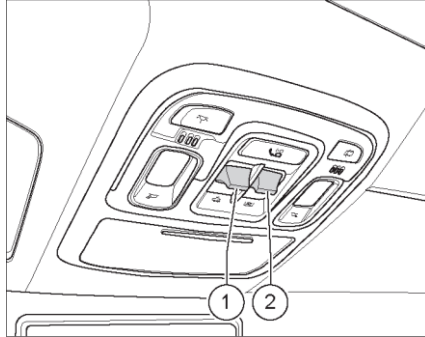
#### Remote control function of window \*



For vehicle equipped with four-door one-touch power window, you can select whether to enable this function through the Infotainment screen> Vehicle settings >  > Window control > Remote control/Remote control. After the function is turned on, the key remotely closes/opens the windows of the four doors. Short press the Unlock button, and then press and hold the Unlock button for 2 seconds to turn on the window. Press and hold the Lock button for 2 seconds, and the window starts to close. If you let go, the window stops move.

## AVM sunroof\*

### AVM sunroof switch



① sunroof switch

② sunshade switch

When the Keyless Start/Stop button is on the "RUN" mode, the sunroof can be opened, closed and tilted by operating the Sunroof switch ①, and the sunshade can be opened and closed by operating the Sunshade switch ②.

#### ⚠ Warning

- In order to ensure safe driving, driver are prohibited from sunroof switch during vehicle driving.

#### i Hint

- One-button automatic can be turned on/off if the button is toggled for no more than 0.25 seconds, and manually turned on/off if it is pressed and held for more than 0.25 seconds.

#### Tilting ventilation on/off

The Start/Stop button is on the "RUN" mode. When the sunroof is in the closed state, move the Sunroof switch ① backward to raise the rear part of the sunroof, tilts it to the open position and stop automatically.

When the sunroof is in the tilted ventilation state, press and hold the Sunroof switch ① forward to close the sunroof automatically.

#### Sunroof open

Keyless Start/Stop button is located at During "RUN" mode:

- When the Sunroof switch ① is moved backward, the sunroof will start to move from the closed position to the tilted position. When the Sunroof switch ① is moved backward again, the sunroof will first move to the middle comfortable position. At this time, move it backward again, and the sunroof will be opened to the fully open position.

During the operation of the sunroof, if the Sunroof switch ① is moved forward, the sunroof will stop sliding.

- Press and hold the Sunroof switch ① backward, the sunroof will start to move from the closed position to the tilted position, then slide back to open it, and release to stop.

#### 👁 Note

- When both the sunroof and the sunshade are turned off, pressing the Sunroof switch ① backward will turn on the sunshade first.

### Sunroof closed

When Keyless Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode:

- Move the Sunroof switch ① forward and the sunroof starts to slide forward from the slide to open position to close.
- Press and hold the Sunroof switch ① forward, and the sunroof starts to slide forward from the slide to open position to close. During operation, move the sunroof switch backward again, and the sunroof stops sliding.

#### Note

- **When both the sunroof and the sunshade are turned on, press the Sunshade switch ② forward to turn off the sunroof first.**

#### Hint

- **Repeated opening and closing of the sunroof may cause the sunroof thermal protection to stop working. Do not operate the sunroof repeatedly.**

### Electric sunshade

The sunshade can be opened together with the sunroof.

The Start/Stop button is on the "RUN" mode. When the sunroof is in the off state, move the Sunshade switch ② backward, the sunshade will open automatically. During the opening of the sunshade, move the Sunshade switch ② forward and the sunshade will stop at the current position.

The Start/Stop button is on the "RUN" mode. When the sunroof is off, move the Sunshade switch ② forward, the sunshade will be off automatically. During the closing of the sunshade, move the Sunshade switch ② backward and the sunshade will stop at the current position.

#### Note

- **Do not forcibly close the sunshade when the sunroof is open.**

### Self-learning of sunroof initialization

Before the sunroof initialization, ensure that the sunroof is in the following state to ensure that the initialization can be completed properly.

1. The sunroof is in the closed state.
2. Close the sunshade to the front end and visually check that the gap between the front end of the sunshade and the sunroof frame is even (about 2mm). An abnormal sunshade shutdown may be caused by an abnormal initial position, which can be done as follows.
  - If the sunshade stops in the middle of the closing process, press and hold the sunshade switch forward and long until it is turned off.
  - If the sunshade suddenly rebounds at the front end, pull the sunshade switch forward for a long time while bouncing until it closes.
3. The vehicle voltage is stable.

Operation of initialization:

1. Push the sunroof switch forward for a long time until the sunroof motor and sunshade motor shake a little, and then release it for 1~2 seconds.

2. Long push the sunroof switch forward again until the following actions are completed:

- The sunshade is fully open.
- Sunroof open→close.
- The sunshade is turned off, the sunroof function is restored, and the initialization is completed.

#### Anti-pinch function of sunroof

The anti-pinch function prevents large items from being clamped when the sunroof is closed. If the sunroof move is blocked when closing the sunroof, the sunroof will stop closing and then open slightly.

When the sunroof is closed, if the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sunroof will move a certain distance to open and then stop move.

#### Note

- **The sunroof anti-pinch function does not prevent finger pinching.**

#### Note

- **The sunroof shall be regular service in accordance with the Maintenance Information Form.**

#### Warning

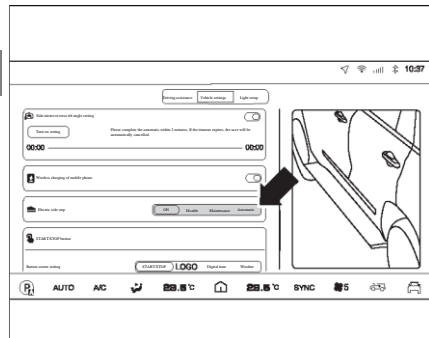
- **Do not operate the sunroof at extremely low temperatures (below -20°C). Too low temperatures may fail to activate the sunroof anti-pinch function, resulting in accidents. At the same time, low temperatures may cause certain damage to the motor.**
- **After rain, snow and dust, there will be sand and dust in the sunroof slide and crevice. Clean the slide and wipe the sealing strip to prolong the service life of the sunroof sealing strip and prevent abnormal noise.**
- **The driver must turn off the sunroof when leaving the vehicle.**
- **Be careful when turning off the sunroof. Make sure that no one is within the opening and closing range of the sunroof to avoid pinching people.**

#### Warning

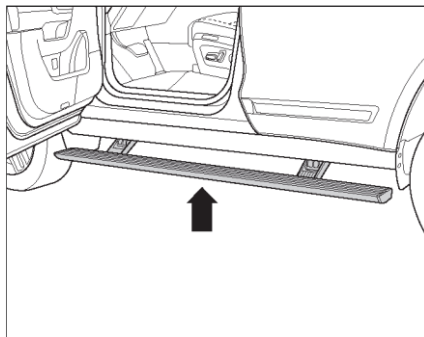
- **In order to ensure safe driving, driver are prohibited from sunroof switch during vehicle driving.**
- **The sunroof may stop monitoring the obstacle in a position where it is about to be completely shut down. There is no anti-pinch function at this time.**
- **Do not try to activate the anti-pinch function with your hands or any part of your body. Otherwise, it is very likely to cause serious harm to the body.**

## Electric side step \*

2



Select whether to enable this function by Infotainment screen > Vehicle settings > Electric Side Step.



After the function is turned on, the front and rear doors on one side of the vehicle will automatically extend the pedals when any door is opened; When the front rear doors on one side closes at the same time, the pedals will automatically retract.



### Note

- When the vehicle is used on sandy, snowy, muddy, rocky or crossing ground, manually turn off the extension function of the electric side step automatically through the Infotainment screen.

## Powered pedal initialization (learning start and end positions)

When the powered pedal system is disconnected and reconnected, the left and right powered pedal need to be initialized. The initialization is as follows:

To open and close any door on the left/right side of the vehicle, the pedal will automatically deploy and retract once. The pedal is finally retracted, and the left/right side pedal initialization successfully.

Before initialization is completed, the anti-pinch function will be restricted.

### Powered pedal anti-pinch function

When either side of the boarding pedal is extending and retracting, if encountering obstacle, the boarding pedal will be move in the opposite direction.



**Powered pedal fault alarm**

When the powered pedal encounters obstacle or is stuck, if the pedal stops in the wrong position, the buzzer will sound in the combination instrument cluster. And at the LCD display of the instrument prompt "Please check the position of the pedals."

 **Warning**

- **Do not deliberately attempt to anti-pinch function with any part of your body.**
- **It is forbidden to step on the pedal when the electric side pedal stops in the middle position.**
- **In case of special road conditions such as sandy, icy, muddy road or rutted road, rocky crawling, etc., the electric function of the boarding side pedal needs to be turned off.**

 **Note**

**Keep the powered pedal clean and care for its proper working condition.**

## A/C system

### General Instructions

2

The A/C regulates the interior temperature and humidity.

The air conditioner is only available when the engine is running. At this time, all the vehicle windows should be closed.

The operation of the A/C system puts extra load on the engine. Under extremely hot conditions or when the engine needs to run at full load (such as when climbing a long mountainous road or driving amidst congested traffic), this will result in high engine temperature. If the pointer approaches the red area of the thermometer, you should switch off the air conditioner until the engine temperature returns to normal.

To cool the engine, the radiator cooling fan may continue to run after the engine is turned off. During this period, if the A/C and volume adjusting knob are ON, the A/C switch indicator light will continue to work, if the A/C and air volume adjusting knob are OFF, the A/C switch indicator light will go out.

If the humidity is high, the window may fog slightly when the A/C system is turned on. This is normal and not a fault on most vehicles equipped with electric A/C systems. The fog will disappear after the A/C system runs for about a few seconds.

**Note**

**When the air volume adjustment knob is off, or when the temperature approaches zero degrees, the air conditioner will not cool the air.**

The air conditioning filter can remove pollen and dust which the hot and cold air system brings in from outside.

The air conditioning filter must be replaced at the time of regular maintenance.

If you often drive in areas of poor air quality, you should shorten the air filter replacement cycle. If it is found that the air flow emitting from the air vent is not as smooth as usual, you should replace the air conditioning air filter as soon as possible. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position, the A/C controller circuit is powered on, and the A/C controller will automatically call up the controller's working state stored after the previous power outage, and use this state to automatically perform the initial setting of the A/C system.

**Warning**

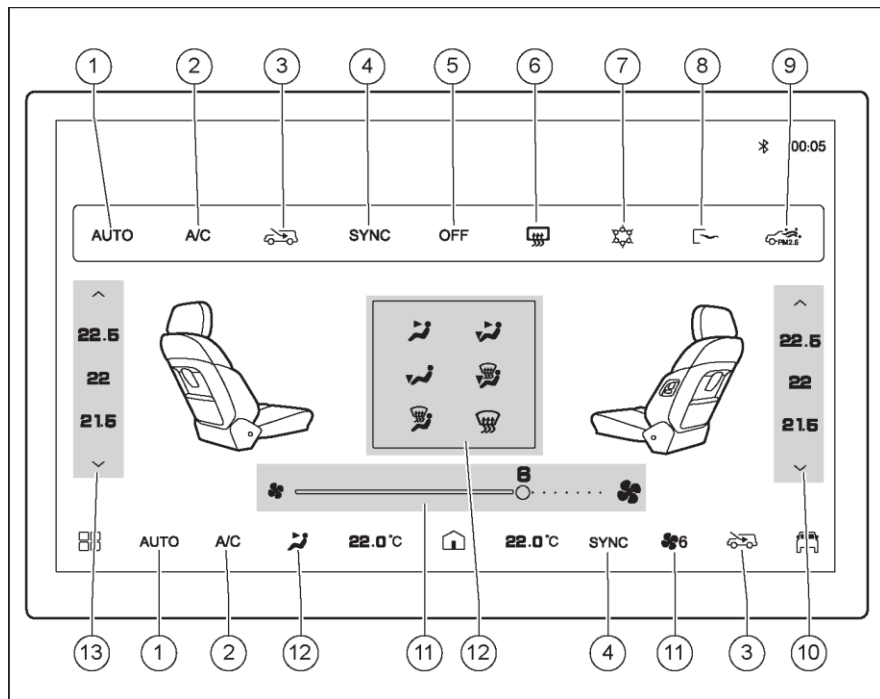
- **Blurred windows can easily increase the risk of accidents and injuries. For the sake of safety, all vehicle windows must be free from ice, snow and fog, so as to ensure clear vision.**
- **If the driver is cloudy, it is easy to lead to driver fatigue, lethargy, and distraction, which can easily lead to accidents and casualties.**
- **The diagnosis and repair of the A/C system must have professional knowledge and use specialized tools. Therefore, when the A/C system breaks down, be sure to go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair.**

**i Hint**

- When the outside temperature and humidity are very high, the moisture will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system and form water droplets. This is a normal situation and there is no need to panic.
- Keep the front air inlet of the windshield unobstructed and free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure normal heating and cooling and prevent condensation on the windshield.
- The A/C system works best when the window is turned off. However, if the interior is very hot under the scorching sun, turn on the window briefly to let the heat escape. This will speed up the interior cooling.
- When the outside temperature and humidity are very high, do not use the full refrigeration mode to blow the cool air to the windshield for a long time. This may cause condensation on the outside of the windshield

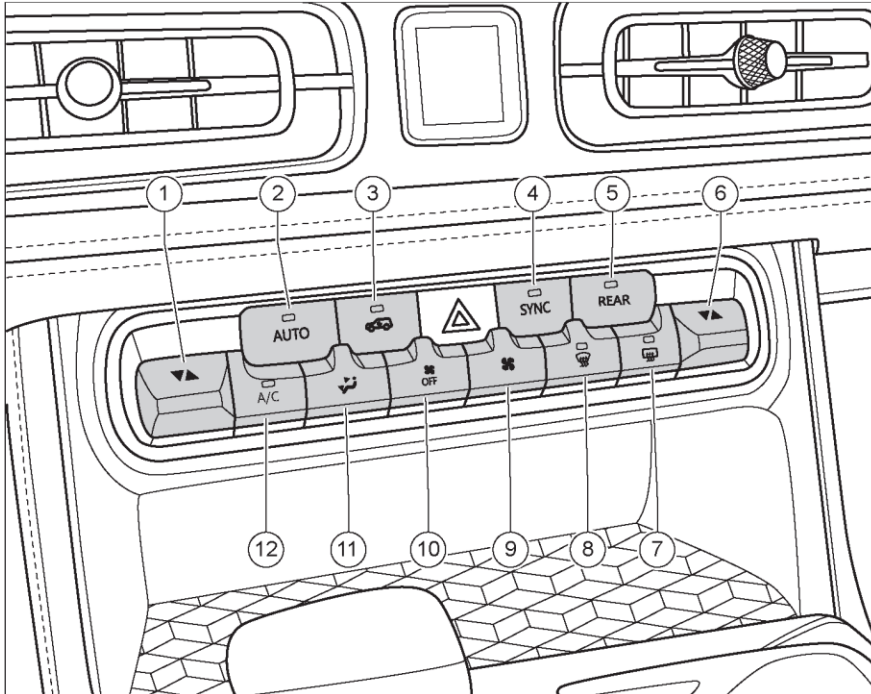
## Infotainment screen A/C control interface

2



1. AUTO mode switch
2. A/C switch
3. Internal and external circulation switch
4. Zoning switch
5. System shutdown switch
6. Rear defroster switch
7. Negative ion switch
8. Unlock the fresh air switch
9. PM2.5 switch
10. Right temperature control area
11. Air volume regulating area
12. A/C vent mode switch
13. Left temperature control area

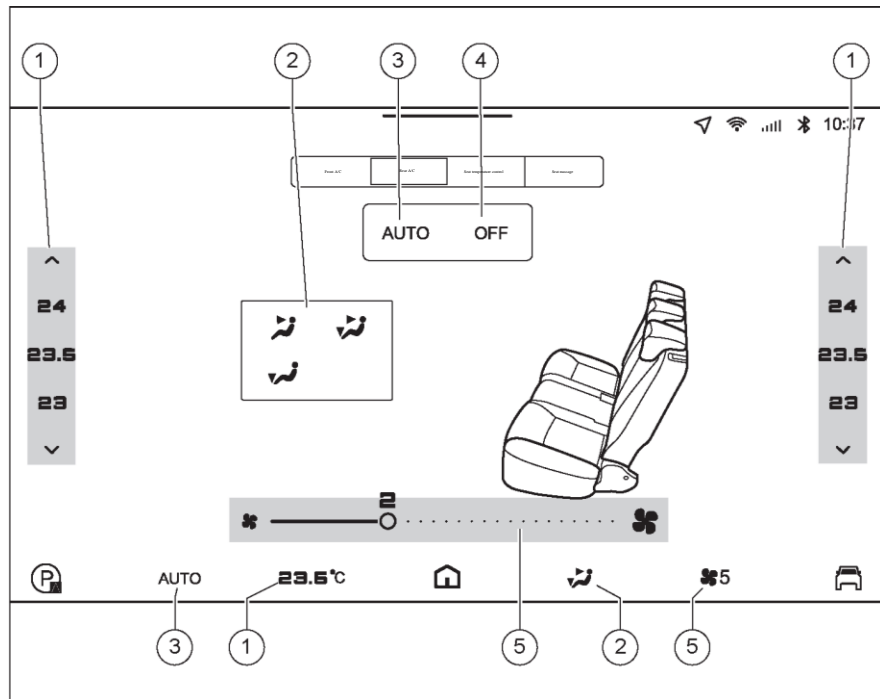
## A/C control panel



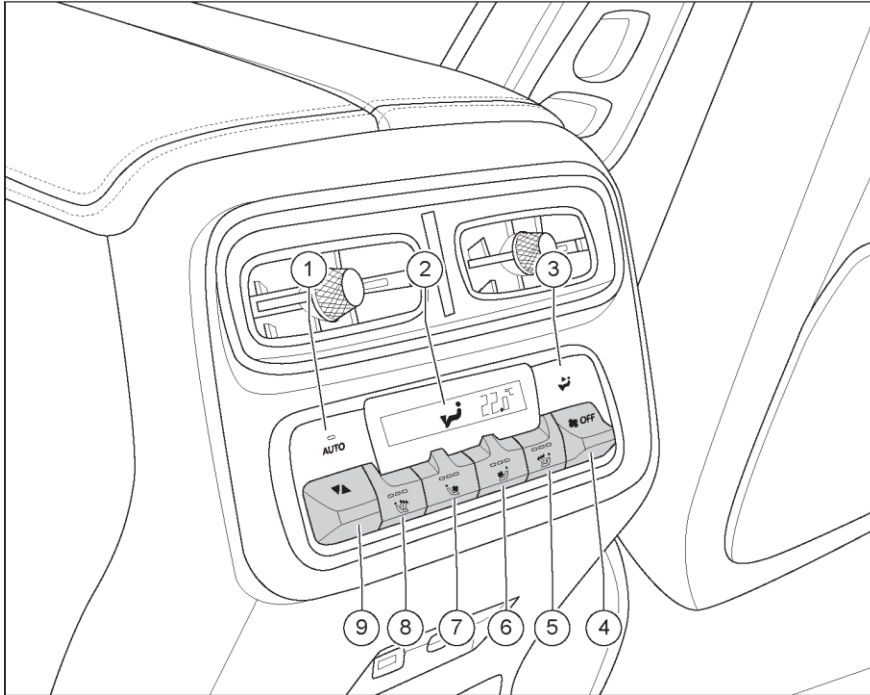
1. Left temperature control switch
2. AUTO mode switch
3. Internal and external circulation switch
4. Zoning switch
5. Rear A/C switch
6. Right adjustable temperature switch
7. Rear defrosting mode switch
8. Front defrost mode switch
9. Air volume increase switch
10. Air volume reduction and shutdown switch
11. A/C vent mode switch
12. A/C switch

## Infotainment screen rear A/C control interface

2



1. Second row temperature control switch
2. Rear A/C vent mode switch
3. AUTO mode switch
4. A/C off switch
5. Air volume adjustment switch

**Rear A/C Panel \***

1. AUTO mode switch
2. Rear A/C panel display screen
3. Rear A/C vent mode switch
4. Air volume adjustment/shutdown switch
5. Second row right seat heating switch
6. Second row right seat ventilation switch
7. Second row left seat ventilation switch
8. Second row left seat heating switch
9. Second-row temperature control switch

## Interior Heating

1. Adjust the temperature on the left and right sides above 24°C.
2. Set the air vent mode, and it is recommended to use the foot blowing mode.
3. Set the air outlet air volume.

## Interior Refrigeration

1. Adjust the temperature on the left and right sides below 24°C.
2. Set the air vent mode, and it is recommended to use the face blowing mode.
3. Press the A/C switch to activate the cooling function, and the indicator light on the switch lights up.
4. Set the air volume of air outlet.

## Rapid refrigeration

For maximum cooling, close all windows, press the "A/C" switch, turn the mode knob to face mode, turn the left and right thermostat adjusting knob to LO state, and turn the air volume control knob to 8th position.



Note

**If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high when the engine is started, it may take some time for the air conditioner to fully take effect. Before turning on the air conditioner, set the fan to maximum speed and open the vehicle windows. Circulate air inside the vehicle for a short period of time so as to quickly lower the temperature inside the car.**

## Maintenance of A/C

The A/C system is hermetically sealed and major maintenance should be performed only by qualified technicians. To enable the system remains in its best state, the vehicle owner should make sure to operate the system for a short period of time each week (even in winter). When the engine is at normal operating temperature, start the air conditioner and keep it on for at least 10 minutes while driving the vehicle at a stable speed.

The excess moisture generated during the dehumidification process is drained by the system through a drain at the bottom of the vehicle. This may cause the vehicle to form on the road when it is at rest. There is no need to worry.

## Air Conditioning Filter

The air conditioning filter (as a standard configuration for vehicles equipped with an air conditioner) is located inside the air conditioner box case at the left front side of the glove box. It helps to keep the air inside the vehicle fresh and prevent pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. To keep it working properly, it is necessary to check whether the filter is dirty every time the vehicle is inspected. If necessary, it should be replaced.



 Note

- **Keep the vehicle in a cool place if possible. Parking in the hot sun can heat up the air inside the car, thus increasing the time taken to cool the vehicle. If you have to park your car in direct sunlight, please open the car windows to let out the hot air inside for the first few minutes after the air conditioning system is turned on.**
- **Please turn off the window when using the A/C. The ingress of outside air will reduce the A/C efficiency.**
- **When the A/C system is running, make sure that the air inlet in front of the windshield is clear and free of obstructions such as leaves. The accumulation of blocking objects at the air inlet will affect the flow of air.**
- **When the A/C system is turned off, the internal and external circulation state records the state before the A/C is turned off. When the internal/external air circulation state is in external circulation, fresh air will enter the cab when the vehicle is in driving state. If you do not want fresh air to enter, please manually set the state to internal circulation.**

## A/C vent

### Front A/C vent

The front A/C system has four types of vents:

1. Side vent

There are 2 side air vents, one each on the left and right side of the instrument panel.

2. Central air vent

There are 2 central air vents, which are located in the middle of the instrument panel.

3. Foot air vent

Four, respectively located in the driver, front passenger and second row foot space.

4. Rear vent

There are 2 rear air vents, which are located on the back of the front center armrest.

### Rear A/C vent

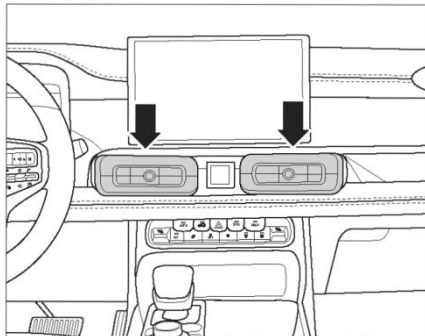
There are 6 vents in the rear A/C system:

1. Head blowing air vent

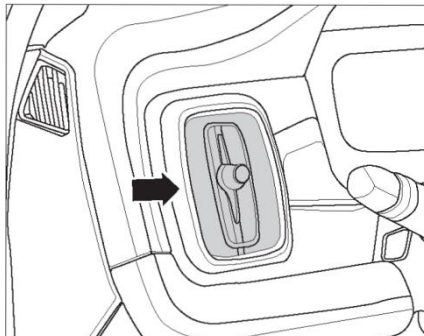
Four, located on the roof, near the second and third-row seat.

2. Foot blowing air vent

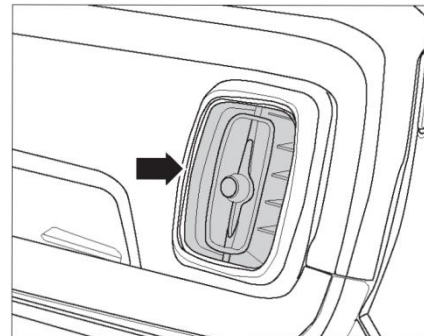
Two, located on the right side panel of the vehicle.

**Central vent**

To adjust the flow direction of each vent, simply push/toggle the knob in the middle of the vent in the desired direction.

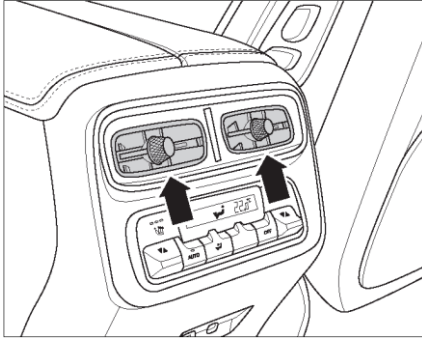
**Driver-side vent**

The driver-side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

**Front passenger seat vent**

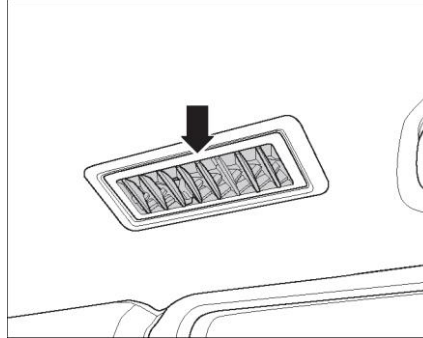
The driver-side air outlet is adjusted in the same way as the central air outlet.

### Rear vent



To adjust the vent flow, simply push/toggle the knob in the middle of the vent in the desired direction.

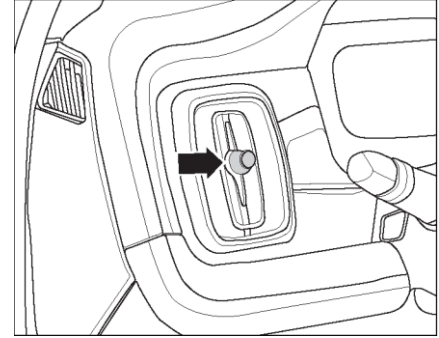
### 2nd and 3rd row \* Head blowing vent



The picture above shows the rear A/C head blowing vent.

To adjust the vent flow, just push/toggle the tab in the middle of the vent in the desired direction.

### Vent outlet switch



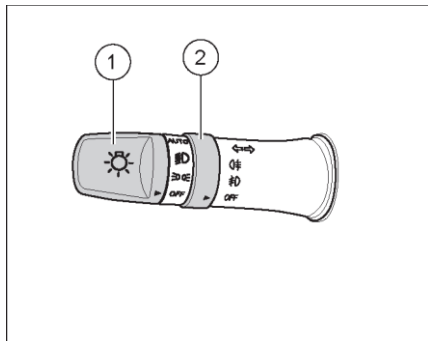
Turn the vent air outlet switch clockwise to the limit position to open, and turn it counterclockwise to the limit position to close.

## Vehicle Lights and Vision

### Exterior Vehicle Lights

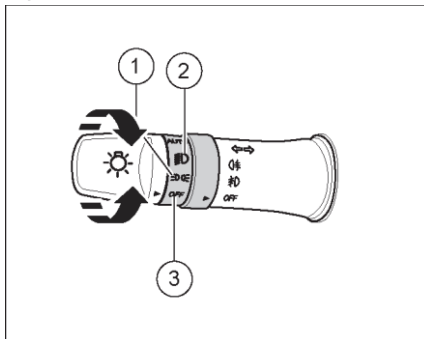
2

The vehicle light control part is located on the rear left multi-functional operating lever of the steering wheel.



1. Vehicle light switch knob
2. fog lamp control knob

### Light switch



As shown in the figure, when the lamp control knob points to the position ③ "OFF", it means that the lamps are off and all lamps are off (except the hazard warning light).

When the knob is turned to position ①, i.e. position lamp, the parking lamps, tail lamps, front and rear outline marker lamps, license plate lamps and instrument backlight will be brightened. Meanwhile, the information center display screen backlight in the instrument will be reduced to 40% of the daytime brightness to prevent glare.

When the knob is turned to position ②, i.e. low beam position, the headlamp low beam is also turned on.

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, turn the knob to the "AUTO" position. At this time, if the vehicle is in dim light (such as at night or driving through a tunnel), the low beam headlights will automatically go on.

### Note

- When the engine is off, do not leave the headlamp and other lights on for a long time. This will reduce the electricity of the battery.
- When it rains or wash the vehicle, the inside of the lens of the headlamp may fog up. This is not a fault, just like the fogging on the window in wet weather. After the lights are turned on, the heat produced will evaporate any mistiness. But if there is condensation in the headlamp, go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to inspection and repair.

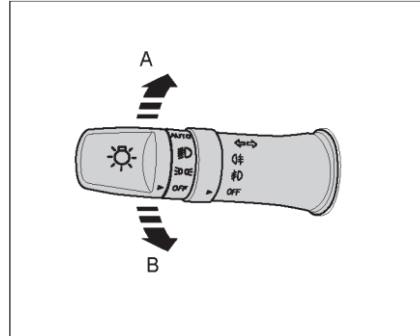
## Low/High Beam Light Switchover

When the headlamp low beam is turned on, push the left multifunctional control handle in the opposite direction to the turning wheel, and the headlamp will change from low beam to high beam, and the blue indicator light on the instrument cluster will light up. Then reset the left control handle, and the headlamp will change from high beam to low beam.

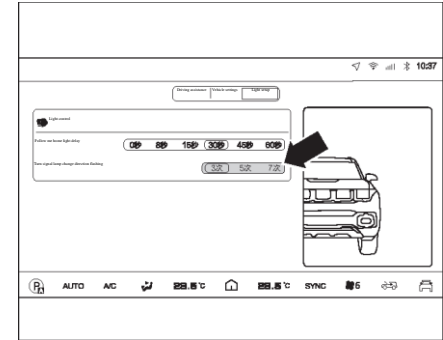
## Overtaking Flashing Signal

No matter what position the vehicle light switch knob is in, pull the left multi-functional operating lever in the direction of the steering wheel, and the high beam light of the headlight will be lit. Upon release, the operating lever will automatically be restored to its original state.

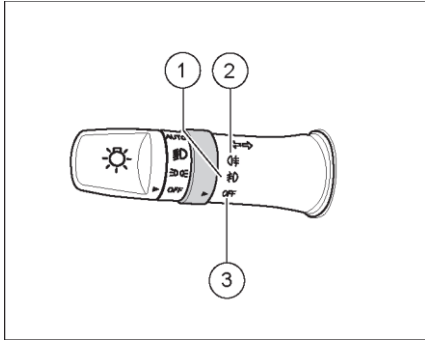
## Turn signal



Move the left multifunction control handle-arrow A-upward to open the right turn signal lamp, and the green indicator light in the instrument cluster will flash at the same time; Move the left multifunction control handle-arrow B-down to open the left turn signal lamp and the green indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes. After completing the turning action and aligning the turning wheel, the light handle will return to its original position automatically, and the turning indicator light in the external turn signal lamp and instrument cluster will go out. Gently pull the control handle half-gear up or down to change lanes. Release the control handle and the turn signal lamp is turned off.



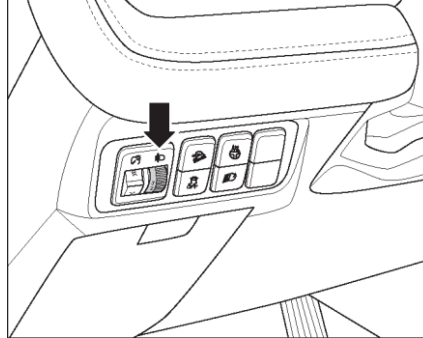
Set the number of flashes by Infotainment screen > > Light setting > Light control > Turn signal lamp change direction flashing.



### Fog Light Control Switch

When the lamp switch is in the position lamp position or the low beam position, turn the fog lamp knob to position ①, the front fog lamp is turned on; Turn the fog lamp control knob to position ②, the front and rear fog lamp turns on; Turn the control knob to position ③ again, and the rear fog lamp turns off.

### Headlight height adjustment manual



The angle of the low beam lights is affected by the distribution of passenger and luggage weight inside the car. Adjust the headlight height to ensure the correct adjustment so there is sufficient lighting to the front of the vehicle, without dazzling other road users. The headlamp height manual adjustment roller is located in the instrument switch group as shown by the arrow.

Adjust the light height of the headlamp by turning the knob up and down using the following road conditions as reference:

- Position "0"

Only use this to adjust the headlights when the driver, or only the driver and front passenger are in the car (when there is no luggage).

- Position "1"

All seats are filled.

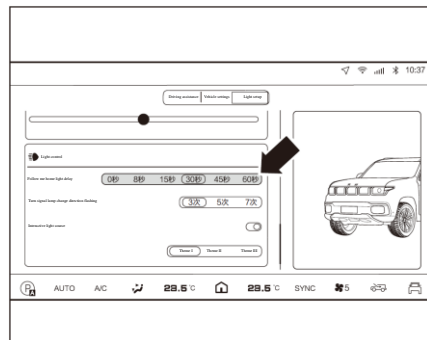
- Position "2"

All seats are filled and the trunk load is evenly distributed (reach the permissible axle load of the rear axle and do not exceed the maximum permissible laden mass).

- Position "3"

Only the driver, and the trunk load is evenly distributed (reach the permissible axle load of the rear axle and do not exceed the maximum permissible laden mass).

## Follow me home.



The delay time can be set by Infotainment screen> > Light setting > Light control > Follow me home light delay setting. After the function is turned on, the light switch is in the AUTO position and the low beam headlights are in the on state. When the Start/Stop button is in the OFF position and the driver's door is opened, the low beam headlights will automatically delay for a period of time. After the smart key locks the vehicle, the low beam headlights will continue to light up or relight up for a period of time.

## Reminder of light open

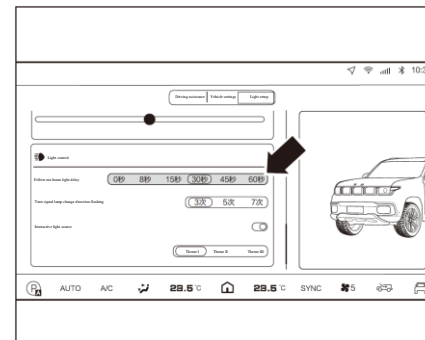
After the START/STOP button is turned off, if the lights are not turned off, a buzzer will sound when the driver door is turned on.

## Welcome light

This function is enabled by default, and the vehicle is unlocked using the smart key with the lights on.

When the interactive light source function is turned on, it is turned off.

## Interactive light source \*

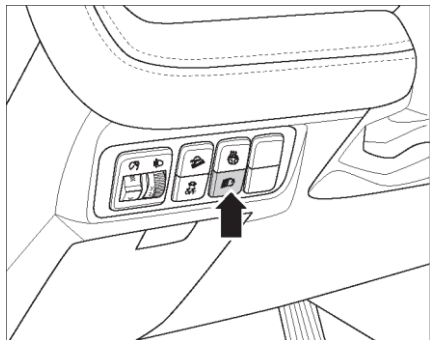


Interactive lighting can be turned on/off and the theme mode can be selected through the Infotainment screen> > Light setting > Light control > Interactive lighting.


## IHBC\*

The IHBC judges the current driving situation through the camera and automatically switches between low beam and high beam when the vehicle lighting is turned on. The system can identify whether there are other vehicles in the opposite direction or in the same direction ahead and switch between low beam and high beam modes according to the situation.


### Turn on / off the smart high beam function




The smart high beam function can be turned on/off through the smart high beam switch.

After the function is started, when the light handle is turned to AUTO gear and the Low beam light is on, the vehicle speed is more than 40km/h. The headlamp can automatically switch between the Low beam light and the high beam light in combination with the environmental conditions. The IHBC indicator light lights  up (when the vehicle speed is lower than 20 km/h, the low beam switches over automatically). When this function is enabled, the driver can also switch high beam and low beam manually.

### Automatic start and release of high beam

When the camera detects that there is no vehicle ahead and there is no street light, the function automatic start high beam, and the instrument cluster high beam indicator light  turns on.

When the camera detects a vehicle in front or the ambient illumination becomes bright, this function will automatically release the high beam, and the high beam indicator light  on instrument cluster will go out.

When the camera detects the disappearance of the vehicle ahead, the high beams are restored.

### Note

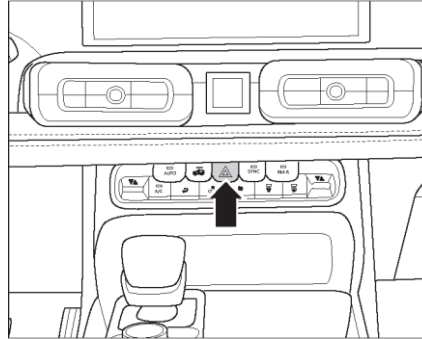
- The IHBC is an auxiliary function and cannot be guaranteed to be suitable for all driving conditions. The driver must keep control of the vehicle. Please drive carefully.
- The HMA will be unavailable or degraded if the camera is soiled, obscured or malfunctioned.
- The light shift is suppressed when the vehicle is in a highly dynamic state (e.g. ABS or ESC activation state).
- The light change will be inhibited when the driver turns on the fog lamp, turn signal or makes an emergency turn.
- Using non-original windshield window off-road BAIC ORV will adversely affect the IHBC.



 Note

- There are limitations to IHBC's ability to identify road conditions through camera. In the following situations, drivers should manually adjust the vehicle's lighting based on current lighting, visibility, and traffic conditions:
- Driving in foggy or heavy rain weather.
- Driving on windy, snowy or muddy roads.
- Driving in freezing and rainy weather; Driving on dimly lit streets.
- There are pedestrians on the driving road or adjacent road.
- There are reflective objects such as signboards near the road.
- The headlights of the oncoming vehicles are blocked by hedges, shrubs, isolation zones, etc.
- Drive on top of the mountain or over potholes on the road.
- If the oncoming light is blocked (e.g. isolation zone) during sharp turning.

## Hazard warning light



As shown in the figure, the hazard warning light switch is located in the A/C panel.

In case of emergency, the use of hazard warning light can attract the attention of other road users and avoid causing traffic accidents. In the event of the following situations, the hazard warning light should be turned on:

1. Vehicle breaks down due to technical fault.
2. The vehicle is at the end of the traffic jam.

3. In case of emergency.
4. When towing another vehicle or being towed.

After the hazard warning light is switched on, all the turn signal lights will flash at the same time. The two turn signal indicator lights on the instrument cluster and the indicator light on the hazard warning light switch will also flash and issue a rhythmic prompting sound. When the START/STOP button is switched off, the hazard warning light still work.

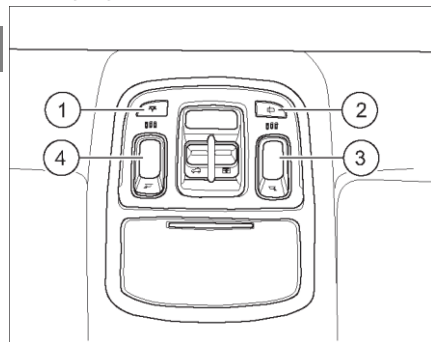
 Note

- Long-term use of hazard warning light consumes battery power, even when the START/STOP button is turned off.
- Be sure to strictly abide by relevant regulations when using the hazard warning light.
- If the hazard warning light is not working, other methods must be used to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle. The methods used must comply with relevant traffic regulations.

## Interior Lights

### Reading Light

2



#### ① General switch of interior lights

Press this switch, all interior lights (front and rear) will be turned on, press this switch again, all interior lights will be turned off.

#### ② DOOR

When this switch is pressed, the dome lamp will automatic on after the door is opened, stay on for about 30 seconds and then fade out after the door is closed. The interior lighting has a power saving mode and will turn off automatically after about 10 minutes.

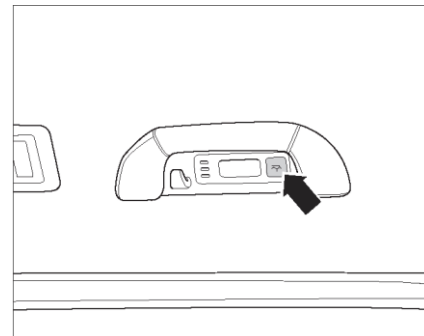
#### ③ front passenger seat side dome lamp switch

Touch this switch, the front passenger seat dome lamp will light up; Touch this switch again and the dome lamp turns off.

#### ④ dome lamp switch on the driver's side

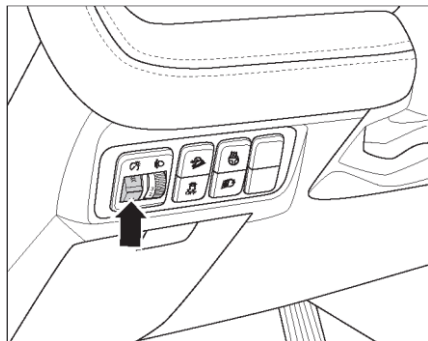
Touch this switch, the driver-side dome lamp will light up; Touch this switch again and the dome lamp turns off.

## Rear light



Press the rear light switch to turn on the rear light. Press the rear lamp switch again, and the rear lamp will turn off.

## Backlight Brightness Adjustment

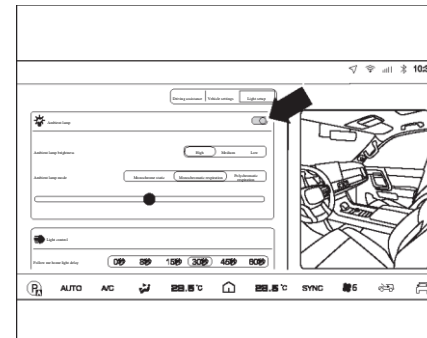



The backlight brightness adjustment roller is located in the instrument panel switch group on the driver-side. When the light control knob is at the position lamp position or the low beam position, the backlights of the keys, the backlight of all buttons, the instrument backlight and the radio backlight of the vehicle will be on. Rotate the adjustment roller upward to enhance the backlight, and rotate downward to reduce the backlight.

### Hint

If the Start/ Stop button is at "OFF" position, the anti-leakage function will be turned on: the fog lamp, headlamps and dome lamp will be turned off after about 8 minutes, if any one or more of the fog lamp, headlamps or dome lamp switch are turned on again within 8 minutes, the timing will be turned on again, if the remote locking is carried out within 8 minutes, the corresponding lights will be turned off.

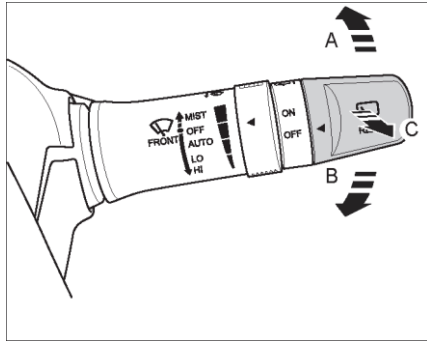
### Ambient lamp \*



Through the Infotainment screen >  > Light setting > Light control > Ambient lamp, you can turn on/off ambient lamp, select ambient lamp mode, color, and adjust ambient lamp brightness. You can also choose smart mode to choose different scene ambient lamp effect. At the same time, in other settings, you can turn on/off the door opening reminder, vehicle reminder after door opening, drive mode switch reminder, switch with theme, etc.

## Windshield wiper

The control part of the front windshield wipers is a function contained in the rear right multi-functional operating lever on the steering wheel.



### Point Wiping

Push the right multi-function control handle in the "OFF" position along the direction shown in the figure-arrow A- to realize the front wiper inching, which the wiper will be wiped once after one control handle is operated. After the upward push action is completed, the operating lever will automatically reset.

### AUTO position (intermittent wiping) and continuous wiping

Press the right multi-function control handle down to 1 gear in the "OFF" position along the direction of arrow B as shown in the figure, set the windshield wiper to AUTO gear, and adjust the wiping speed automatically according to the rainfall (intermittent wiping is performed for some models without AUTO gear); Press down gear 2 to start low-speed continuous wiping; Press down gear 3 means high-speed continuous wiping.

### LO

When the control handle is shifted to "LO" gear, the front wiper wipes slowly.

### HI

When the control handle is shifted to "HI" gear, the front wiper wipes quickly.

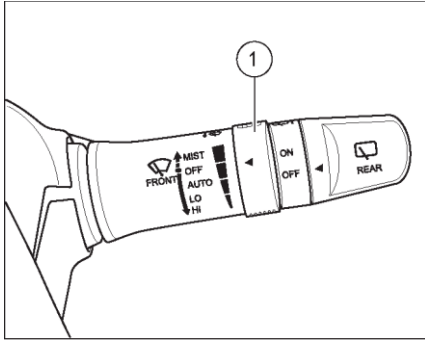
### Windshield cleaning

Toggle the right multi-function control handle along the direction of -arrow C (towards the driver's arms) as shown in the figure, and the front windshield washer nozzle sprays windshield cleaning agent, then the wiper will wipe for several times automatically.

If the START/STOP button is turned off during the cleaning of the windshield cleaner, the wiper will continue to run until it returns to its original position.

In washing and wiping mode, if the position of the wiper control lever on the right side changes, then the corresponding function will be executed. The exceptions include: If the intermittent mode is selected, the wiper will only start to enter the intermittent mode after completing the corresponding washing and wiping mode.

When the washing and wiping cycle ends, if the wiper control lever is in any position other than "OFF", then the wipers will continue to execute the corresponding mode after completing the washing and wiping cycle.



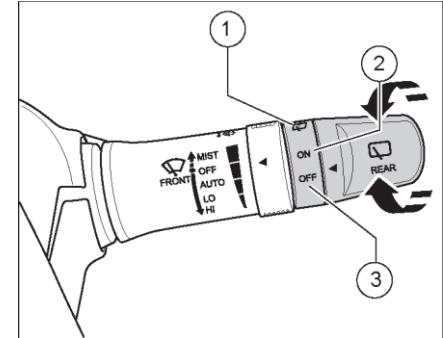
### Intermittent Wiping Frequency

Turn the right control handle end position ① as shown in the figure to control the intermittent wiping frequency of the front windshield wiper. Turn it upward (clockwise) to decrease the frequency, and turn it downward (counterclockwise) to increase the intermittent wiping frequency.

### Note

- It is prohibited to use the wiper when the windshield is dry.
- In cold or hot conditions, ensure that the wiper blade is not frozen/bonded or fixed to the windshield before operation.
- In winter, remove snow and frost from wiper arm and wiper blade, including areas involved in wiper blade operations.

### Back windshield wiper



The figure shows the control unit of the rear windshield wiper. It is located on the right multifunctional operating lever. This unit includes the following switch positions:

#### 1. Rear windshield washing

When the control handle is rotated to position ①, the windshield cleaning agent will be sprayed to the back window by the back window cleaning nozzle, and then the back window wiper will automatically cycle and sweep for several times. When released, the control ring will automatically reset.

## 2. ON

In this position, the back window wiper opens and performs a continuous low-speed wiping action.

## 3. OFF

In this position, the rear windshield wiper will be switched off.

2

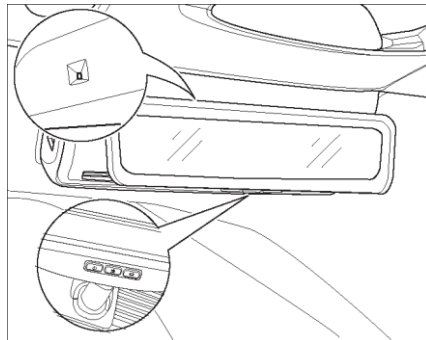
## Side mirror

This vehicle is equipped with an interior side mirror with automatic anti-glare, and automatic anti-glare and streaming video functions.

Be sure to keep the surface of the interior rearview mirror clean and adjust it to the best visual angle. Before starting driving, be sure to properly adjust the rearview mirror.

### Streaming Media Side Mirror System \*

This vehicle is equipped with a side mirror with automatic anti-dazzling and streaming media video.



The automatic anti-glare side mirror can automatically adjust the color depth of the interior side mirror surface according to the light intensity of the front and rear, so as to reduce the dazzling effect caused to eyes by the vehicle behind.

### Warning

- **To ensure the normal function of the anti-glare sensor on both sides of the side mirror, it is prohibited to touch or cover the sensor with fingers or objects.**
- **The streaming side mirror system does not show children, pedestrians, cyclists, oncoming vehicles, animals, or other objects out of the camera's field of view, under bumper, or under vehicle. The perceived distance may differ from the actual distance. Do not rely solely on streaming camera screens for turning. Lack of attention before turning can result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Always check the area behind and around the vehicle before turning or braking.**

**Warning**

- To ensure the normal function of the streaming media system camera, it is prohibited to cover the camera lens area with objects. For clear camera images, please clean the lens and back window when they are dirty.

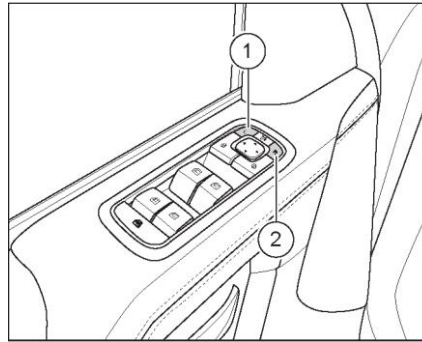
The side mirror can display images of side mirror camera. The selection of side mirror screen brightness can be set on the radio navigation entertainment system.

Users can switch to a physical specular side mirror by turning off the display of camera video through a switch button on the rear-view mirror.

### Side mirror

This vehicle is equipped with electric side mirrors, and the side mirrors have the function of side mirror electric adjustment and electric folding.

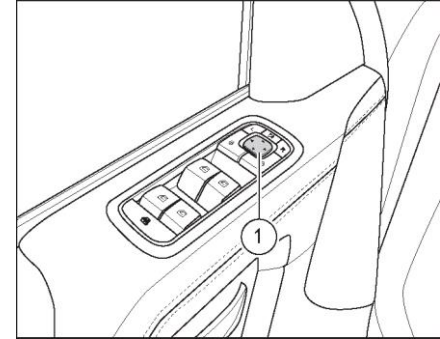
#### Electric Adjustment of Exterior Rearview Mirror



Use the side mirror adjustment button on the driver door trim to adjust the side mirror.

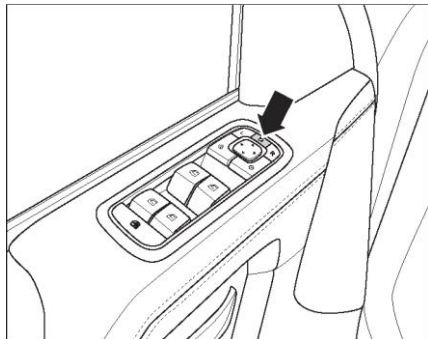
- Left button ①: Press the corresponding switch to adjust the left side mirror.

- Right button ②: Press the corresponding switch to adjust the right side mirror.



After pressing the corresponding side mirror adjustment button, press the direction switch ① to adjust the angle of the side mirror.

## Side Mirror Electric Folding \*

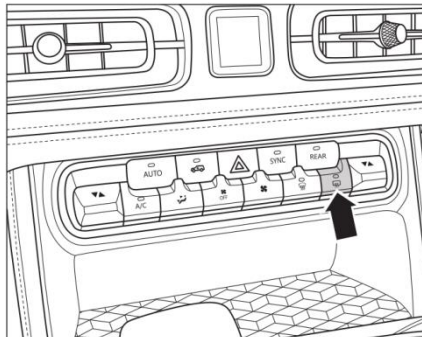


- Folding side mirror: the side mirror can be folded when parking/driving in a narrow space. Press the button and the side mirrors will automatically rest in the fully folding position.
- Open the side mirror: press the button and the side mirror will automatically stop in the fully unfolded position.

## Note

- The view displayed in the side mirror may affect the driver's ability to master the exact position of the vehicle behind. Please pay extra attention!
- When the vehicle is driving on sands, snowfield, muddy ground and rocks, or crossing fields, you can manually turn off the automatic folding function of the side mirror through the infotainment screen.

## Side mirror heating



## Note

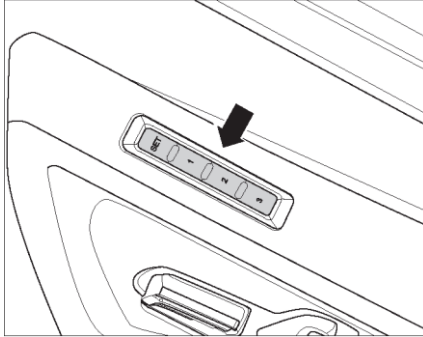
- The side mirror and back window heating functions can only work when the vehicle power mode is set to "RUN" position.
- Do not turn on the side mirror heating function unless it is particularly necessary to avoid overheating of side mirrors and back window and waste of battery power.

When the vehicle power mode is set to "RUN" position, press the back window defrosting/defogging button on the A/C panel, the indicator light on the button goes on and the side mirrors and back window will be heated for defrosting and defogging.

If the heating function needs to be turned off during the heating period, press the Defrost/Defog button on the back window again.



### The memorial function of angular position for the side mirror lens \*



#### Set the side mirror position:

1. Adjust the driver's seat and side mirror to the desired position.
2. Press the SET key, and then press any of the memory position buttons 1, 2 or 3 within about 5 seconds for about 1 second. The position is memorized successfully and a prompt interface appears on the instrument.

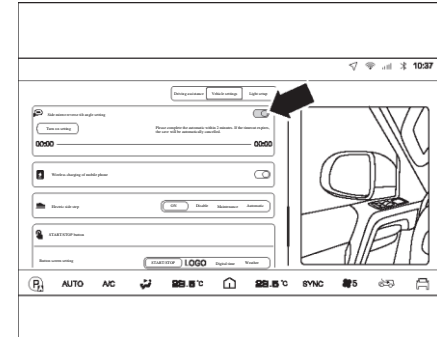
If the above operation is carried out again, when any button ("1", "2", or "3") is pressed, the previously recorded position of any button will be overwritten with the current position.

#### Call the memory location:

The seat and side mirror will move to the memory position if the corresponding memory position button (1, 2, 3) is pressed.

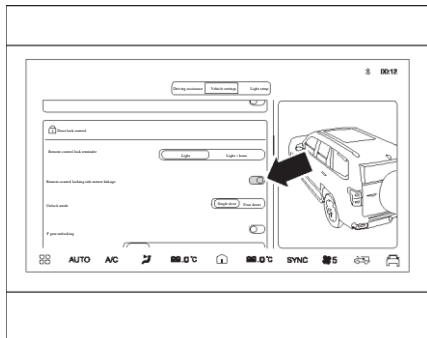
#### The right side mirror reverse automatically rolls down \*


When the Start/Stop button is switched to the "RUN" mode position and the gearshift handle is in R gear and the speed is lower than 20 km/h, the right side mirror will follow to the memory position. When the START/STOP button is switched to non-RUN mode or the gearshift handle is in non-R gear or the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h, the right side mirror is adjusted to the required angle for normal driving.

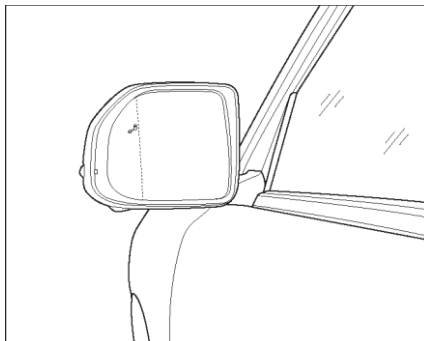


This function can be turned on/off by infotainment screen > > vehicle settings > side mirror reverse tilt setting, and the side mirror reverse tilt position can be set.

## Automatic Folding/Open Side Mirror



This function can be turned on/off through infotainment screen >  > vehicle settings > door lock control > remote locking side mirror linkage. After activating it, when the vehicle is locked, the side mirrors will automatically fold; When unlocking the vehicle or driving, the side mirror will automatically open.

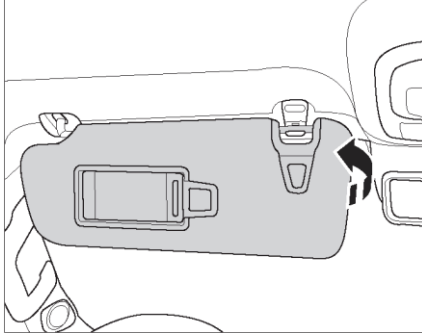

 Note

**It is prohibited to drive the vehicle when any exterior rearview mirror is folded backwards. Otherwise, it will reduce visual perception and may cause accidents!**

 Hint

- If the electric adjustment function of the side mirror fails, it can be adjusted by pushing the outer edge of the mirror gently by hand.
- If the side mirror frame is displaced due to an external force, the side mirror must be completely folded by electric means. Do not adjust the side mirror frame manually, otherwise it may affect the adjustment of the side mirror.

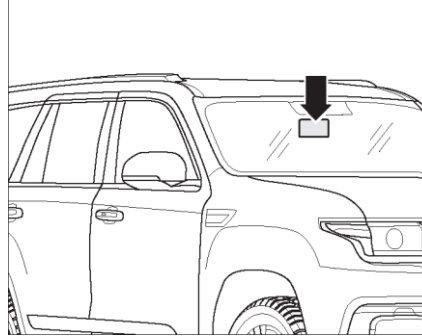
## The sun visor is equipped with a vanity mirror



The sun visor protects the occupants from impact of the dazzling sunlight in driving of the vehicle, which can be used by opening it.

If sunlight shines through the side window, the sun visor can be rotated to the side to block the sunlight coming in through the door windows. Adjust the position of the sun visor by pulling it back and forth according to the site of sunlight exposure.

## Vehicle Electronic Identification Microwave Window



The microwave window is used to install the electronic identification of the vehicle, the position of which does not permit the pasted film, heated wire or antenna, and must not affect the driver's view, so as to ensure effective reading of the data. The microwave window is allowed to be expressed in the form of pitting. Black areas and pitting have no effect on the reception of the electronic identification signals.

## Seats and Storage Facilities

### Importance of Correctly Adjusting Seats

2

Correctly adjusting seats can ensure that the seat belts and the airbags fully play their protective role.

The driver's and front passenger's seats may be adjusted according to the passenger's body characteristics.

Before driving the vehicle, be sure to adjust the front seats correctly according to the following requirements:

- It can be able to operate all control mechanisms on the dashboard accurately, effectively and safely.
- The sitting posture is relaxed, and it is not easy to get tired.
- Give full play to the protective role of seat belt and airbag.

#### Warning

**An incorrect sitting posture may cause serious harm to the driver and passengers.**

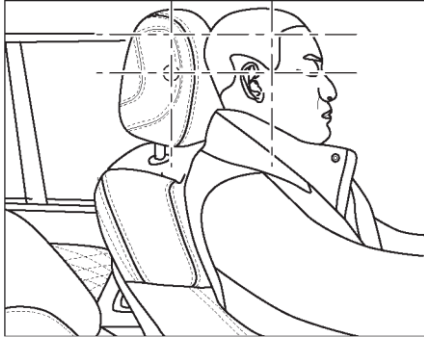
- **All the driver and passengers must sit on their own seat.**
- **All driver and passengers must properly wear the seat belt on their seat.**
- **Appropriate child restraint system must be used for protection of children.**
- **All headrest must be properly adjusted for the driver and passengers' height and seat belt must be worn at all times to ensure the best protection for the driver and passengers.**
- **Always place your feet in the foot space during vehicle driving. Do not place them on the dashboard, out of the window or on the seat. When the airbag is triggered, any incorrect sitting posture may cause serious injuries.**

#### Warning

- **The seat can only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary. If the seat is adjusted while the vehicle is running, it can easily lead to an accident.**
- **For driver and front passenger, the torso shall always be at a distance of no less than 25 cm from the turning wheel or dashboard. If the distance is less than 25 cm, the SRS will not be able to function fully - danger of injury!**

## Headrest

Correctly adjusting the headrest is vitally important for protecting passengers and reducing accidental injury rates.



The headrest will provide maximum protection when the headrest is adjusted to be level with the upper part of the passenger's ears.

If the center of your head and the center of the headrest are not in the correct positions as shown in the diagram, then you could be extremely vulnerable to injury during an accident.

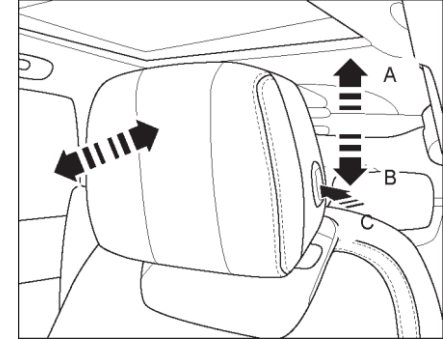
### Warning

- It is prohibited to adjust the headrest when the vehicle is running.
- It is prohibited to ride under the state of removing the headrest. In case of collision, the passenger's neck will be greatly impacted, causing serious injury and even death.

### Hint

- The lowest position of the headrest is not its use position. Be sure to adjust the headrest to the locking position during use.
- After adjusting the headrest height, press the headrest to confirm that it is locked securely.

## Adjust the headrest of the front seats (4 directions) \*



To ensure safety and comfort, please adjust your headrest before setting off.

1. Lift the headrest to the desired position by grasping both sides of the headrest and lifting the headrest in the direction of -arrow A-.
2. Grasp both sides of the headrest, press the adjusting button along the direction of arrow C, and then press down the headrest along the direction of arrow B, so that it shall be pressed down to the desired position.

3. Forward adjustment of headrest: grasp both sides of the headrest and pull forward the headrest to adjust it to the proper position;
4. Backward adjustment of headrest: grasp both sides of the headrest, press the adjustment button in the direction of -arrow C-, and then push the headrest backward to adjust it to the desired position.

**i Hint**

- **Some model front seats headrest do not have longitudinal adjustment.**

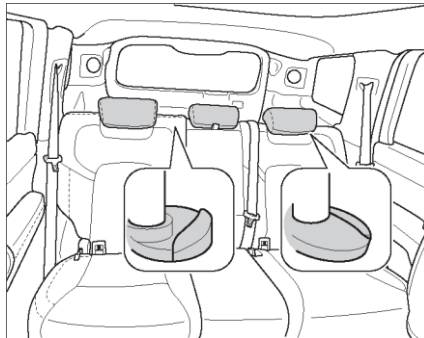
**Adjust front seats headrest (2-way) \***

To ensure safety and comfort, please adjust your headrest before setting off.

- When the headrest needs to be raised, the headrest can be lifted directly to the desired position.
- To lower the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjustment button and press the headrest down to the desired position.
- When the headrest needs to be removed, a long pressing shall be conducted on the headrest adjustment button while pulling out the headrest completely.

**The second row headrest adjustment/third row headrest adjustment**

Adjustment of the headrest height



To ensure safety and comfort, please adjust your headrest before setting off.

- When the headrest needs to be raised, the headrest can be lifted directly to the desired position.
- To lower the headrest, press and hold the headrest adjustment button and press the headrest down to the desired position.
- When the headrest needs to be removed, a long pressing shall be conducted on the headrest adjustment button while pulling out the headrest completely.

Fold the headrest (suitable for the outboard headrest of the 7-seat model)

1. Press the folding button on the side of the headrest, so that it will fold forward by 65°.
2. When riding the vehicle, press the folding state headrest backward to the locking position by hand.

**⚠ Warning**

**Do NOT drive with the headrests removed. In the event of an accident, this will cause serious personal injury:**

- **After installing the headrest, the headrest must be properly adjusted according to the body shape for best protection.**
- **Please read and observe the relevant warnings carefully.**

## Seat

### Front seats

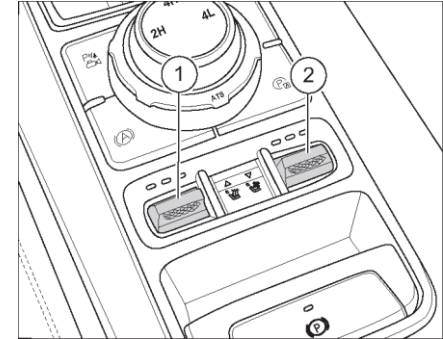
#### Warning

- Extreme pressure may occur when the seat airbag is inflated, especially when the driver is very close to the airbag, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Because the danger area of the seat airbag is 50-75 mm in front of the driver when it is inflated, it can provide you with sufficient safety space at a distance of 25 cm from the driver airbag. This distance is the distance from the center of the steering wheel to your chest bone.

If you are sitting at a distance of less than 25 cm, you can adjust the driver's seat position in the following ways:

- Move the seat backwards as much as possible, while still comfortably pressing the pedal and tilting the backrest slightly backwards. Although vehicle designs vary, for most drivers, even if the driver's seat is moved to its full forward position, a distance of up to 25 cm can be achieved by tilting the backrest slightly backward. If after tilting his/her seat backrest, the driver has difficulty seeing the road ahead clearly, then he/she may use a hard anti-skid seat cushion to elevate, or raise the seat (if your vehicle has this function).
- If the turning wheel is adjustable, tilt it down, so that the airbag precisely faces your chest, rather than your head or neck.

### Front seats heating\*



1. Driver's Seat "Ventilation/Heating" Button
2. Front passenger seat "Ventilation/Heating" button

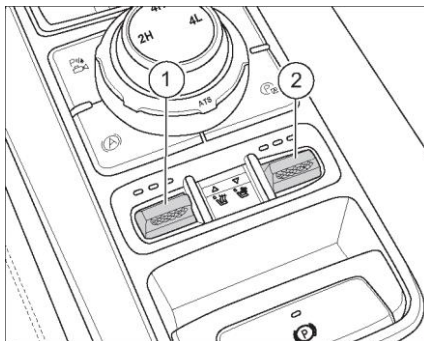
The seat heating is divided into four gear position: high, medium, low and off. When the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode and the engine is started, push the "Ventilation/Heating" button forward, three indicator light of the button will go on, the seat temperature is at the highest gear, push the button forward again, the indicator will go out from top to bottom, the seat temperature will decrease by one gear, and so on, the switch button will be operated in a cycle.

### **i** Hint

- The front seat heating function can be set by the switch; This function can also be set through the radio navigation entertainment system display screen, please refer to the radio navigation entertainment system instruction for the specific setting method; This function can also be set through the remote interface of the mobile phone, please refer to the operation manual of the remote control for details.

2

### Front seats ventilation \*



1. Driver's Seat "Ventilation/Heating" Button
2. Front passenger seat "Ventilation/Heating" button

The seat ventilation is divided into four gear positions: high, medium, low and off. When the START/STOP button is in "RUN" mode, push the "Ventilation/Heating" button backward, and the three indicator lights of the button go on successively. At the same time, the seat air volume is at the highest gear. Push the button backward again, and the indicator lights go out successively from top to bottom. The seat air volume decreases by one gear. Similarly, the switch button operates in a cycle.

### **i** Hint

- The front seats ventilation function can be set by the switch. This function can also be set through the radio navigation entertainment system display screen, please refer to the radio navigation entertainment system instruction for the specific setting method; This function can also be set through the remote interface of the mobile phone, please refer to the operation manual of the remote control for details.



**Front seats massage \***

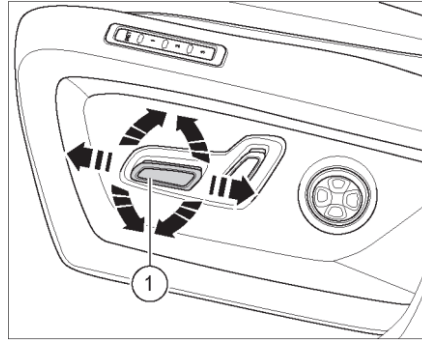
Both the driver's seat and the front passenger seat have the backrest massage function, which can be done on adjustment interface of the infotainment screen seat. The left and right seat can be started, stopped and adjusted in 8 modes and 3 speeds respectively, and can be controlled by infotainment screen and voice.

 **Warning**

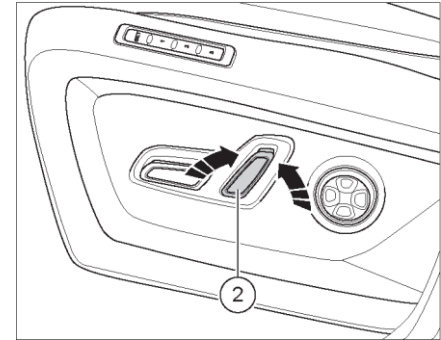
- **The use of seat heating, ventilation and massage is prohibited for persons with limited sensation of pain or temperature.**
- **Do not place heat-insulated items on the seat for heating. This may overheat the seat heating and cause occupant burns.**

**Front seats electric adjustment \***

The driver's seat of this vehicle has an adjustable electric function in 8 directions, and that for the front passenger seat is in 6 directions.

**Adjustment of the driver's seat:**

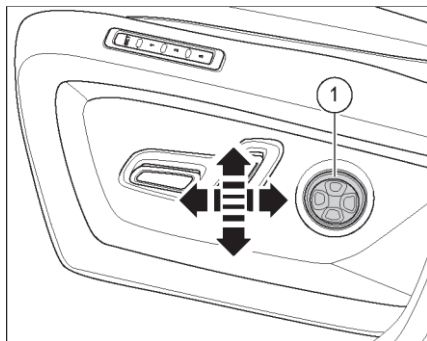
Toggle the switch ① to adjust the seat height, seat cushion angle \* or forward and backward movement according to the left-arrow-direction in the figure.



Move the switch ② back and forth to adjust the backrest angle according to the arrow direction in the right side of the figure.

 **Hint**

- **The front seats for some models do not have electrical control function.**

**Electric lumbar support\*:**

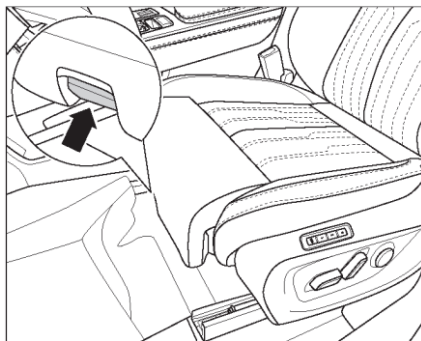
The electric lumbar support control button ① is located on the outside of the driver cushion.

Press the upper part of the control key to move the lumbar support upward;

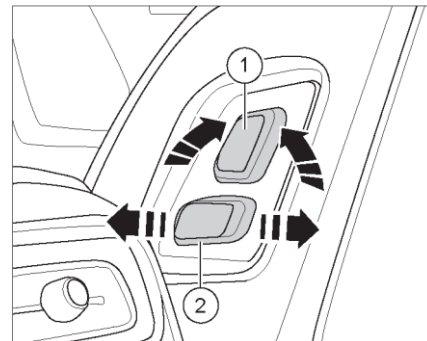
Press the lower part of the control button to move the lumbar support downward;

Press the front part of the control button to move the lumbar support forward;

By pressing the back of the control button, the lumbar support moves backward.

**Leg support\*:**

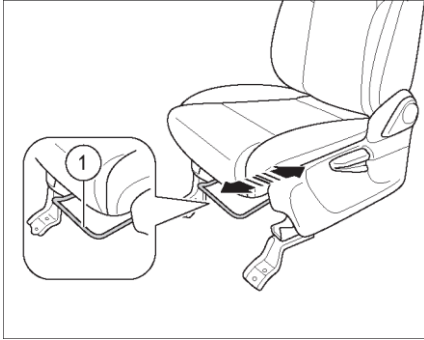
The driver's seat has leg support adjustment function. Pull up the handle under the front of the seat and adjust the leg support back and forth to the proper position. Release the handle and move the leg support back and forth slightly until the locking mechanism engages.

**Easy adjustment of front passenger seat\*:**

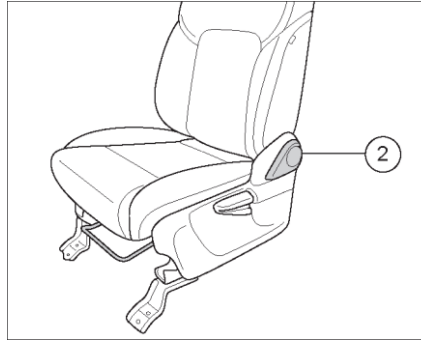
The convenient control switch is located on the inside of the front passenger seat backrest (between the two front seats). You can operate it sitting in the driver position or in the second-row seat position.

① Backrest inclination adjustment

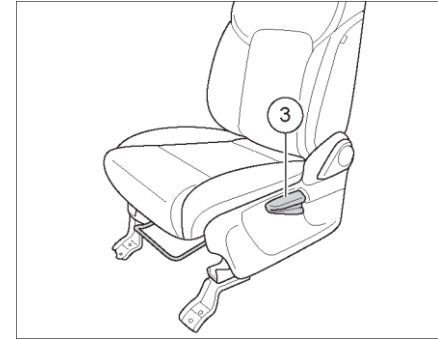
② Seat longitudinal adjustment

**Manual adjustment of front seats \*****Back & Forth Adjustment of Seat:**

The two front seats can be adjusted back and forth. Here, the driver side is taken as an example. Pull up the adjusting handle ① under the front of the seat and adjust the seat back and forth to a proper position. Release the adjusting handle and move the seat forwards or backwards slightly until the seat locking mechanism engages.

**Seat Backrest Adjustment:**

The backrests of two front seats can also be adjusted. Here, the driver's seat is taken as an example. If the driver and front passenger want to adjust the seat backrest, do not leave the backrest with their bodies. Gently pull up the angle handle ②, and the seat backrest will slowly tilt forward or backward to reach the optimal seating position. Release the handle, and the back of the body will move slightly back and forth. The seat locking mechanism will automatically engage.

**Seat Height Adjustment (only for the driver's seat):**

Press the height handle ③ back and forth, and the seat surface will move downwards; Pull up the height handle back and forth, and the seat surface will move upwards.

 Note

- After adjusting the seat position, you may try to slide the seat back and forth and ensure it is locked in the suitable place.
- Push the upper part of the backrest back and forth and ensure it is securely locked, otherwise it may hinder the seat belt from working properly.
- Do not place objects under the driver's seat or front driver's seat. Otherwise, the locking mechanism of the seat may be affected or the seat position adjusting handle may be accidentally pushed upward. The seat may move suddenly and easily cause the vehicle to be out of control during driving.

 Note

- The seat position set by the manufacturer: the front and rear adjustment stroke for the front seats is 240 mm. When designing the seat position, you may adjust it forward by 160 mm and backward by 80 mm. The driver's seat can be adjusted upwards by 20 mm and downwards by 35 mm; The front backrest is designed at an angle of 25° and can be adjusted backward by 46° and forward by 32°; With 6-way adjusting headrest, it can be adjusted forwards and backwards for 5 positions for a total of about 40 mm, and it can be adjusted upwards and downwards for 4 positions for a total of 40 mm. and the wings on both sides of the headrest can be adjusted forwards by 35° respectively.
- The front end of the driver's seat cushion can be raised. It is designed to be the lowest position and can be adjusted upwards by 5,5°.

 Note

- Five seats in two rows: the designed backrest angle is 25°; the seats can be adjusted backward by 10° and forward by 14° after being unlocked by the backrest strap; The seat cushion can be separately folded forward by 94° with the strap; and the backrest is unlocked, adjusted forward by 108 ° and locked again, so that it is completely flattening.
- Seven seats, two rows: the backrest angle is 25°, which can be adjusted backward by 16° and forward by 4° after being unlocked by the seat cushion unlocking handle; When the backrest is adjusted forward by 98°, it can be leveled and locked; The left/right seat can slide forward 140 mm from the designed position by unlocking with the unlocking handle; Right seat EASY-ENTRY Function: The right seat is manually unlocked through the backrest unlocking button. After the backrest is moved forward by about 48 °, the slide track is unlocked, and the entire seat can be moved forward by 290mm, making it convenient for three rows of passengers to get on and off.

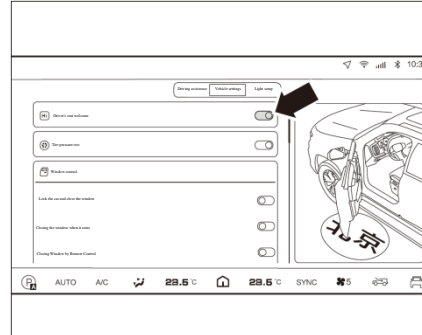
### Note

- Seven seats and three rows: the backrest angle is 20°, it can be unlocked by the backrest unlocking strap handle, and the backrest can be folded forward.

### Warning

- Never adjust the seat when the vehicle is running, as the seat may move accidentally and cause the vehicle to get out of control.
- When unlocking the backrest handle, the back of the driver or the front passenger shall not leave the backrest, and shall not lean forward too fast to avoid accidents.
- Do not make the seat hit the passengers or luggage when adjusting the seat.

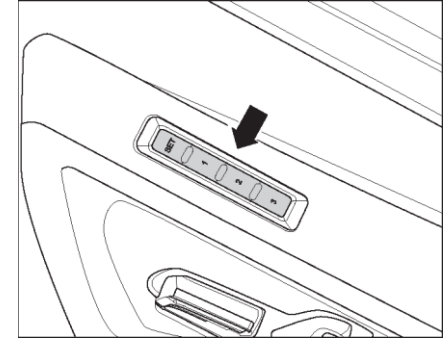
## Driver's seat welcome\*



You may turn on / off the function through Infotainment screen > > Vehicle Settings > Driver's Seat Welcome.

After the function is turned on, the Start/Stop button switches to the "OFF" mode. After opening the driver's side door, the driver's seat moves back to facilitate the driver's entry and exit. After the Start/Stop button is switched to "RUN" mode or vehicle lock, the driver's seat returns to the position before reversing.

## Seat adjustment position memory function\*



### Set the driving position:

1. Adjust the driver's seat and side mirror to the desired position.
2. Press the SET key, and then press any of the memory position buttons 1, 2 or 3 within about 5 seconds for about 1 second. The position is memorized successfully and a prompt interface appears on the instrument.

If the above operation is carried out again, when any button ("1", "2", or "3") is pressed, the previously recorded position of any button will be overwritten with the current position.

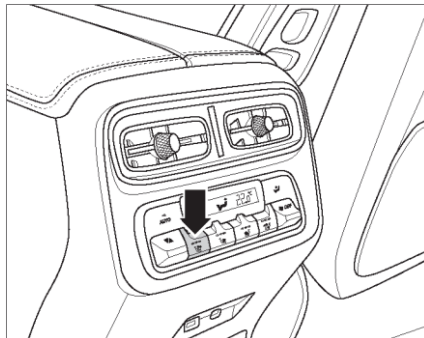
**Call the memory location:**

Press the corresponding memory position button (1, 2, 3) for about 1 s, and the seat and side mirror will be move to the memory position.

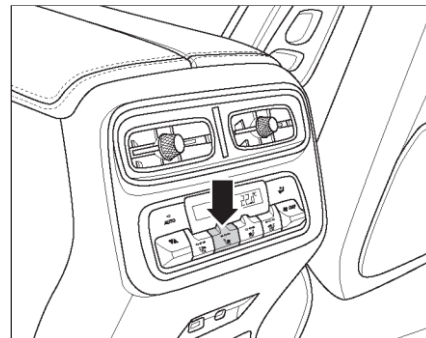
2

**Note**

- When setting the memory position, you can start with any button and then memorize other positions.
- The previous settings of the same button will be overwritten during each memory session.
- The seat memory function does not need to be reactivated after the vehicle has been powered off, and the seat retains the memory position it was in before the power failure when it is powered off and back on again.

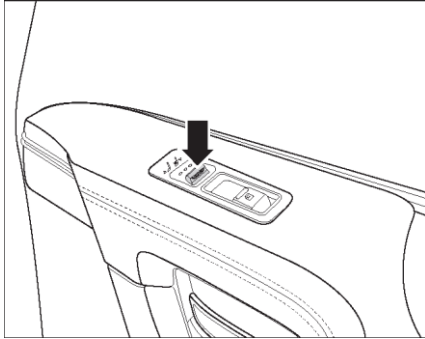
**Second-row Seat****Second-row Seat Heating \***

The seat heating function is divided into four gear positions, e.g. high, medium, low and off. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, press the "heating" button of the seat in the second row, three indicator lights will light up, when the seat temperature indicates the high gear; press the button again, the indicator light goes out successively from top to bottom, when the seat temperature decreases by one gear, and so on. The switch button is performed in cyclic operation.

**Second row seat ventilation**

The seat ventilation is divided into four gear positions: high, medium, low and off. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, press the "ventilation" button of the seat in the second row, three indicator lights will light up, when the air volume of seat is in the high gear; press the button again, and the indicator light goes out from top to bottom, when the air volume of the seat decreases by one gear, and so on. The switch button is performed in cyclic operation.

### Second-row Seat Massage \*



The left and right backrests of the second-row seat have backrest massage function. The switch on the rear door trim can be used to activate, deactivate and adjust 8 modes and their respective 3 speeds.

Stir the switch forward and select the massage intensity on the seat, with three levels of intensity to be selected, and an indicator light for indication. Toggle the switch backwards to select the massage mode, it is toggled backwards once to switch a mode.

#### Warning

When seat heating is in use, the following passengers must be especially careful:

- Infants, children, the elderly, sick or disabled.
- People with sensitive skin.
- People who are overtired.
- People who are drowsy due to alcohol or medication.

#### Note

- Any retrofitting to the seat and its electrical system is prohibited. Otherwise, it may affect the function and lifespan of the seat heater.
- To avoid overheating of the seat, do not lay blankets, mats and other insulating items on the seat when using the seat heating.

#### Note

- In order to prevent battery loss, it is prohibited to use the seat heating for a long time without starting the vehicle.

#### Note

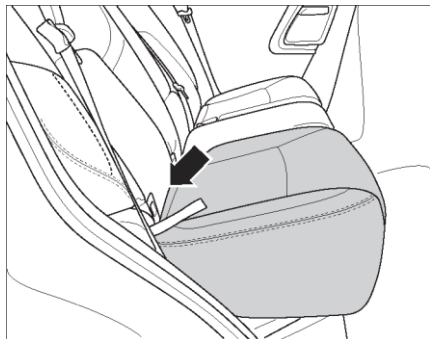
In the following cases, the seat heating may be damaged and must be inspected before being used again:

- When there is a lot of water on the seat;
- When the seat is cut by a sharp object (pin or knife, etc.);
- When the seat emits a smell.

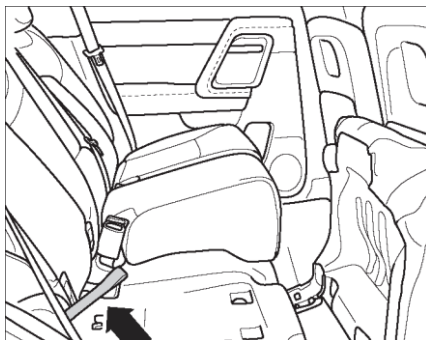
## The second row seats (5 seats) adjustment

### Backrest folding

2



1. Reach your hand into the gap between the second-row backrest and the seat cushion, pull up the seat cushion and turn it forward;



2. Pull the backrest unlocking handle, and then fold the unlocked backrest forward to lay the backrest completely flat;

The left or right side of the backrest to be folded separately.

#### **i** Hint

- Before folding, be sure to fold the seat cushion forward to a proper position, so as to avoid interference between the backrest and the seat cushion and failure to fold forward in place.

#### **i** Hint

- Before folding, please headrest adjustment to a proper position to avoid interference with the seat cushion or front seats.
- Put the seat belt back to its original position to avoid interference when folding the backrest.
- Remove all items from the seat before folding the backrest.

#### **⚠** Warning

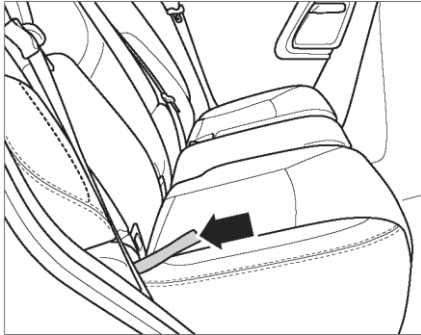
- It is forbidden to adjust or fold the seat during driving of the vehicle.
- It is prohibited to sit on the folded backrest or in the luggage area when the vehicle is running.



### Return of backrest

1. Adjust the seat belt so that the backrest does not get stuck in the seat during recovery.
2. Pull the backrest unlocking handle, lift the backrest up and return it to the use position.
3. Gently shake the backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is locked into place.

### Backrest angle adjustment



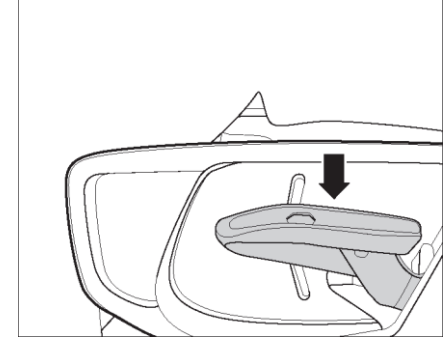
Pull the backrest unlocking handle, adjust it to the required position, and then release the unlocking switch. Shake the backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is locked reliably.

### Adjust the seats in the second row (7 seats)

#### Forward and backward sliding adjustment of seat

1. Pull up the slide unlocking handle under the seat to the unlock, slide the seat back and forth to the desired position, and then release the adjusting handle.
2. After adjusting the seat, gently shake the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked securely.

### Backrest folding



1. Pull the backrest handle on the side of the seat cushion to unlock to fold the unlocked backrest forward and lock it.
2. The left or right side of the backrest can be folded separately.

#### **i** Hint

- **Before folding, please headrest adjustment to a proper position to avoid interference with the seat cushion or front seats.**

**i Hint**

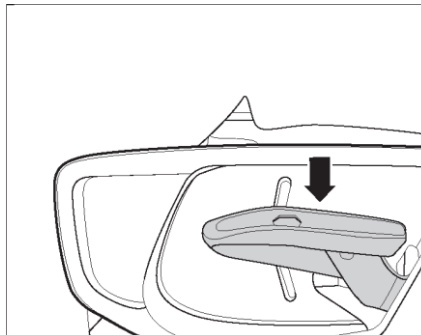
- For vehicle with seat belt retaining clips, attach the seat belt to the retaining clips when not in use, so as not to affect the folding of the backrest.
- Remove all items from the seat before folding the backrest.

**⚠ Warning**

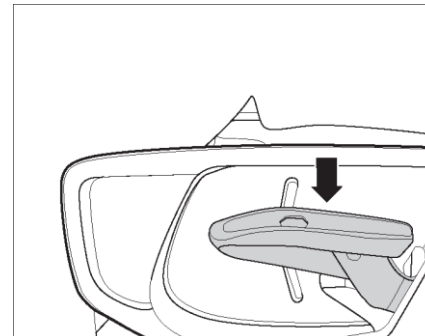
- 1. It is prohibited to adjust or fold the seat during driving of the vehicle.
- 2. It is forbidden to sit on the folded backrest or in the luggage area when the vehicle is running.

**Return of backrest**

1. Adjust the seat belt so that the backrest does not get stuck in the seat during recovery.

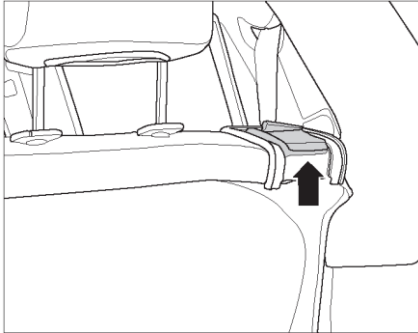


2. Pull the backrest handle on the side of the seat cushion to the unlock and return the backrest to the use position.
3. Gently shake the backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is locked into place.

**Backrest angle adjustment**

Pull the backrest on the side of the seat cushion handle to unlock, adjust the backrest to the desired angle, and then release the handle.

## Access to the Third-row Seat



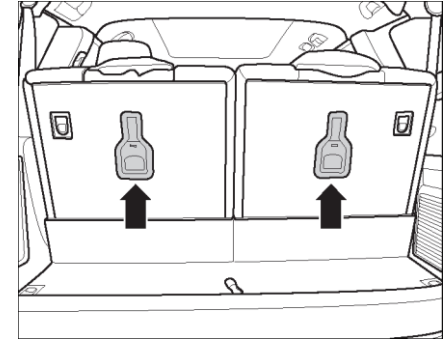
1. Pull the unlocking handle on the upper right of the second-row backrest to the unlocking position. Fold the second-row right-side backrest forward, and then push it forward to the forefront. You can enter or leave the third-row seat at this time.
2. After passengers enter or leave the vehicle, first turn the right backrest of the second row backward to the use position, then push the seat backward to the seating position and make sure it is locked securely.

## Third-row Seat

**i** Hint

- For vehicle equipped with seat belt retaining clips, attach the seat belt to the retaining clips when not in use, so as not to affect the seat adjustment and backrest folding.
- Before folding, please adjust the second-row backrest to a proper angle to avoid affecting the folding of the seat.

## Seat folding



1. Lower all headrest to the lowest position before folding the seat.
2. Pull the unlocking handle at the rear of the backrest to the unlock, and then push the backrest forward to fold the third-row seat and reset the unlocking handle.

### Return of seat

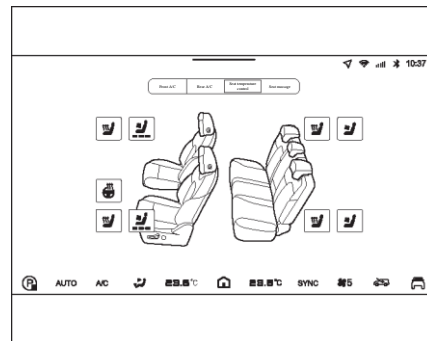
1. Adjust the seat belt so that the backrest does not get stuck in the seat during recovery.
2. Pull the unlocking handle on the rear of the backrest to unlock, return the backrest to the service position and reset the unlocking handle.
3. Gently shake the backrest back and forth to ensure that the backrest is locked into place.

2

### Warning

- **It is very dangerous to sit in the luggage area. In a collision accident, a passenger sitting in this area may suffer from serious injuries or even death.**
- **Ensure that every occupant in the vehicle is seated in the seat and their seat belts are properly fastened.**
- **In case of collision accident, if the seat is not properly locked onto the anchorage, the occupants may be injured. It is important to ensure that the seat remains fully locked.**
- **To prevent personal injury, passengers are not allowed to sit in the rear luggage area or fold the rear seat to sit there.**
- **The rear luggage space is only used for carrying items, not a passenger seat. Passengers should sit on their seats and fasten their seat belts.**

### Seat temperature control \*



The seat heating can be turned on/off through Infotainment screen > A/C Control Interface > Seat Temperature Control Interface.

/Ventilation Function.

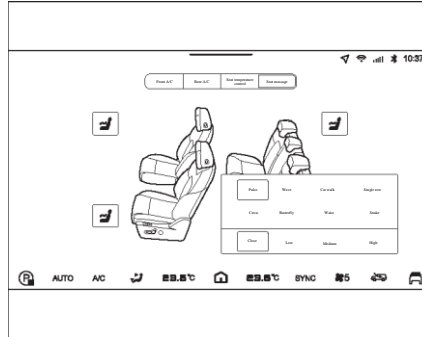
- The seat heating is divided into four gear positions: high, medium, low and off. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, press the seat heating button, and the three indicator light of the button will go on, and the seat temperature will be in the highest gear. When the button is pressed again, the indicator will go out in turn from top to bottom, and the seat temperature will decrease by one gear, and so on, the switch button will be operated in a cycle.

- The seat ventilation is divided into four gear positions: high, medium, low and off. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, press the seat "Ventilation" button, and the three indicator lights of the button go on successively. At this time, the seat air volume is in the highest gear. Press it again, and the indicator lights go out successively from top to bottom. The seat air volume decreases by one gear. Similarly, the switch button operates in a cycle.

### **i Hint**

- Ventilation/heating cannot work at the same time.**

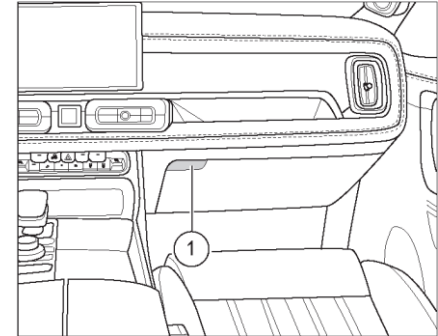
## Seat massage \*



Through infotainment screen > A/C control interface > seat massage interface, you can select to turn on/off seat massage, select modes and gear positions.

## Storage facilities

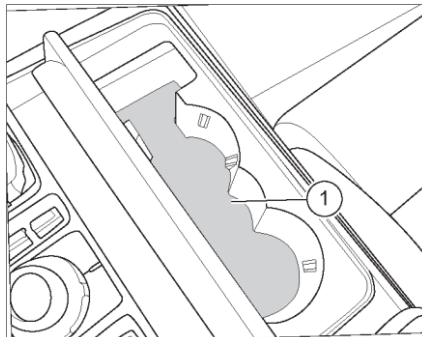
### Open/close the glove box



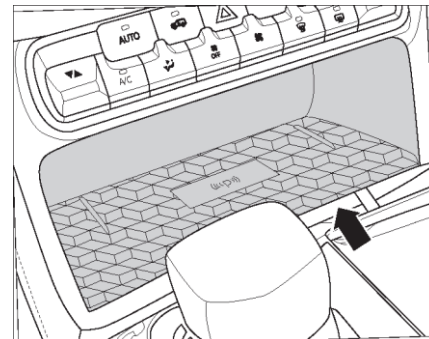
- Open: press switch ① to open the glove box.
- Close: push the glove box cover to close the glove box.

**Note**

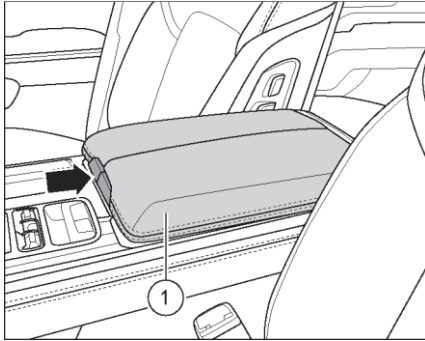
- Store liquids in the glove box only in tightly closed or unopened containers. Splashed liquids will damage the decorative items and electrical components inside the glove box and the dashboard.
- The glove box must be closed when the vehicle is running. Otherwise, the objects in the glove box may fly out and injure the passengers in case of emergency brake or accident.

**Turn on/off the front cup holder**

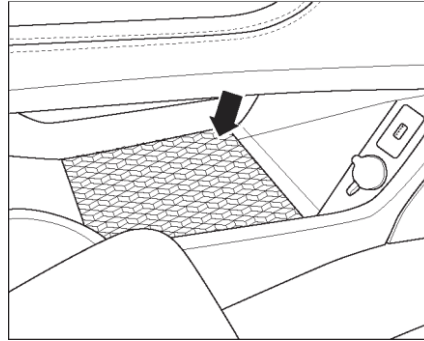
- Open: Press the right area of the front cup holder cover to open the front cup holder ①.
- Close: press down the front cup holder cover until it engages in place.

**Open/close the front storage box**

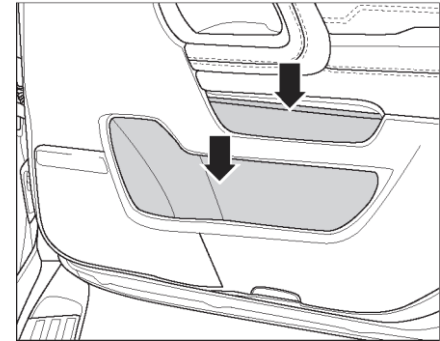
The storage box is located below the A/C panel and can be used to store small items.

**Open/close the front armrest box**

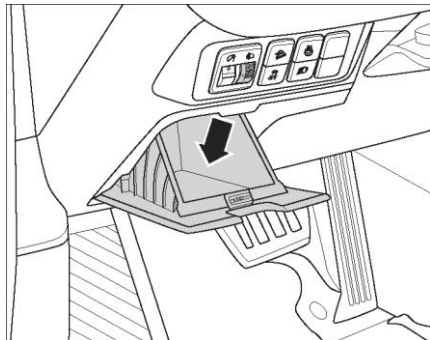
- Open: Press the left and right front armrest box switches respectively to open the armrest box.
- Close: press down the front armrest box cover ① on the left and right side, until it is engaged in place.

**Front storage box**

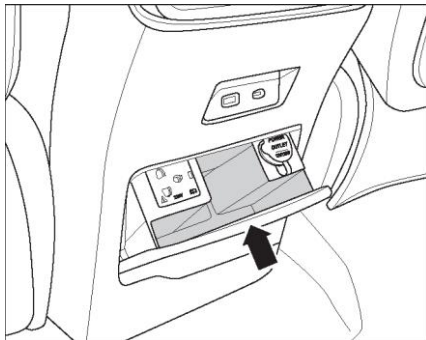
The storage box is located next to the cigarette lighter and can store small items.

**Door storage box**

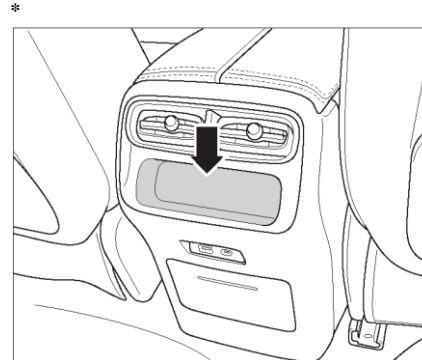
Storage boxes are arranged under the door, the middle storage box can be used to store small articles, and the lower storage box can be used to store umbrellas, water cups and small articles.

**Driver side storage box**

The storage box is located at the bottom left of the dashboard.

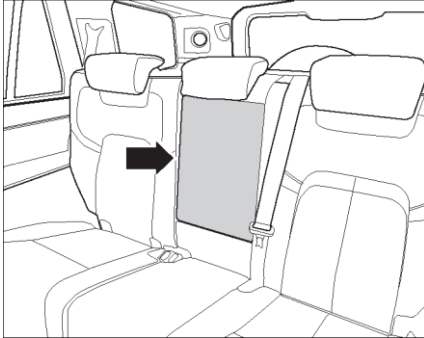
**Auxiliary dashboard rear storage box**

- Open: Press the rear storage box on auxiliary dashboard to open.
- Close: Press the rear storage box of the front armrest box until it is engaged in place.

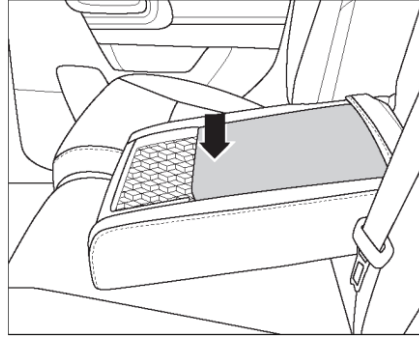
**Rear Upper Storage Box of Auxiliary Dashboard**

A storage box is arranged below the auxiliary dashboard vent for storing small articles.

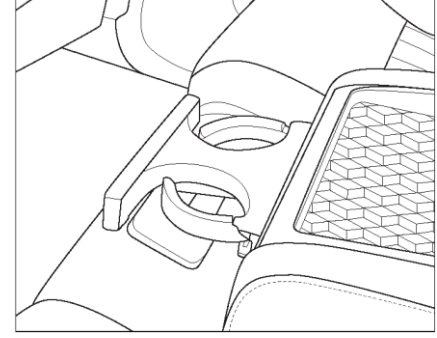


**Open/close the rear center armrest \***

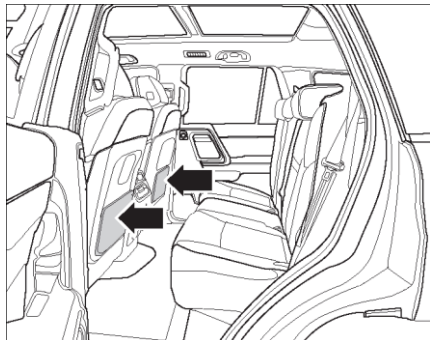
- Open: Pull the strap on the upper part of the armrest obliquely downward, and then press down the rear central armrest to ensure that the armrest is opened properly.
- Close: lift up the central armrest of the rear to ensure that the armrest fits the rear seat backrest.

**Open/close the rear center armrest storage box\***

- Open: lift up the storage box cover.
- Close: press the storage box cover of the rear central armrest, until it is closed in place.

**Open/close the rear cup holder \***

- Open: Press the top of the rear center armrest, the cup holder will automatically pop up.
- Closing: Press the cup holder until it closes in place.

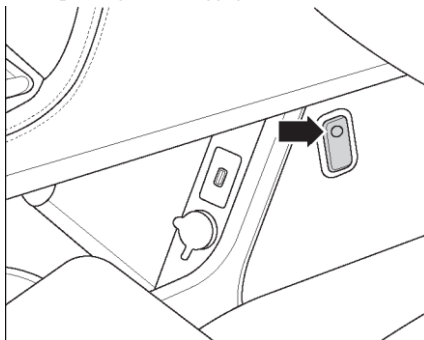
**Map pocket**

- Open: Pull back the back pan map pocket;
- Close: slowly release forward the backboard map pocket, which will automatically retract.

Mobile phone card position: When the pocket is not opened, insert the mobile phone from the upper part of the pocket along the middle position, drop it to the card position step, and clamp it between the pocket and the backplate for temporary storage of mobile phone.

**Note**

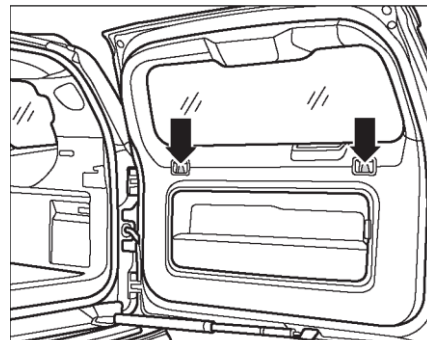
- When the map pocket opens, the mobile phone will slide to the bottom of the pocket.

**Front passenger seat luggage hook**

To use, press the upper end of the luggage hook and then release it. The luggage hook will pop open gently. Turn the luggage hook downward.

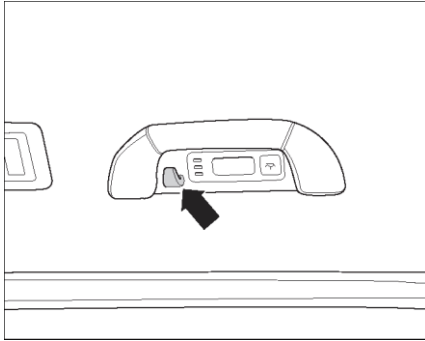
When not in use, turn it upwards to put it in place.

The luggage hook may only hang light objects, and the maximum weight shall not exceed that marked on the luggage hook. Before driving, confirm that all items are fixed firmly.

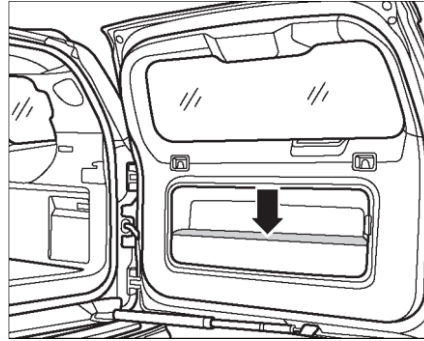
**Liftgate trim panel luggage hook**

Similar luggage hook can be found on liftgate interior panels. The luggage hook may only hang light objects, and the maximum weight shall not exceed that marked on the luggage hook.

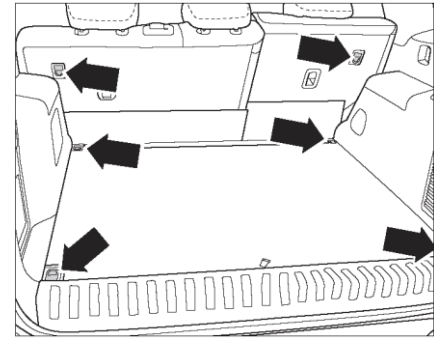
Before driving, confirm that all items are fixed firmly.

**Coat hook**

There is a coat hook on two sides of the rear for hanging hats and thin coats.

**Liftgate storage box**

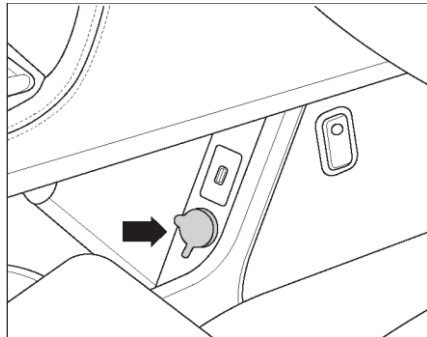
This storage box is located in the liftgate interior panel and can be used to store small items.

**Securing hook of luggage**

The securing hooks of luggage are installed in the trunk for fixing scattered items. When in use, pull down the hooks and secure the luggage with nets or straps.

## Power outlet

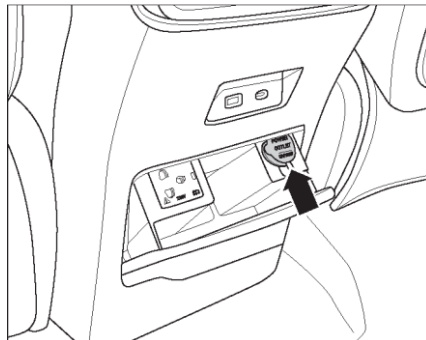
### Front 12V power supply



The front 12V power supply is located below the instrument control panel. Open the cover and connect the charging device.

Always close the cover when it is not in use.

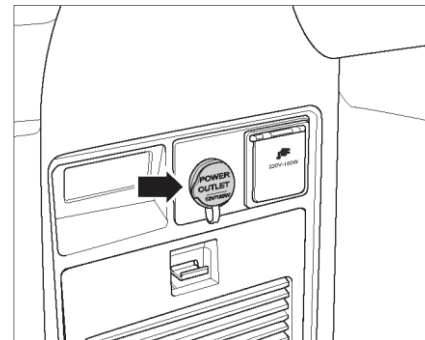
### Rear 12V power supply



The rear 12V power supply is located below the rear of the auxiliary dashboard. Open the rear storage box, open the cover and connect the charging device.

Always close the cover when it is not in use.

### 12V power supply of the trunk

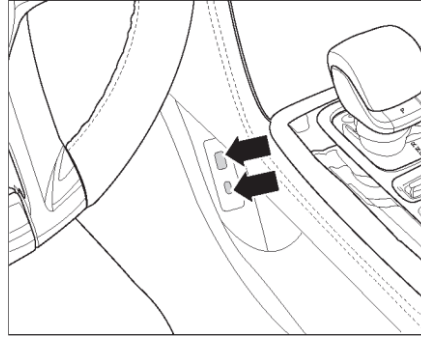


The 12V power supply of trunk is located on the left side of the trunk. Open the cover and connect the charging device.

Always close the cover when it is not in use.

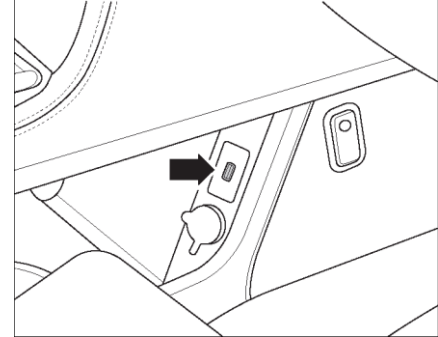
 Note

- It may damage the vehicle or make other parts abnormal by adding electrical devices on the vehicle. Repairing thus incurred is not covered by the warranty.
- Do not use equipment with a maximum rated power exceeding 120W. Please consult with authorized dealership of BAIC ORV after-sales service center before adding electrical devices.

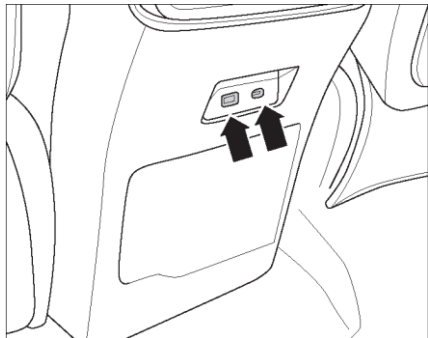
**USB port and Type C power outlet on the lower right side of the driver**

There are USB ports and Type C power outlets at the lower right of the driver's side.

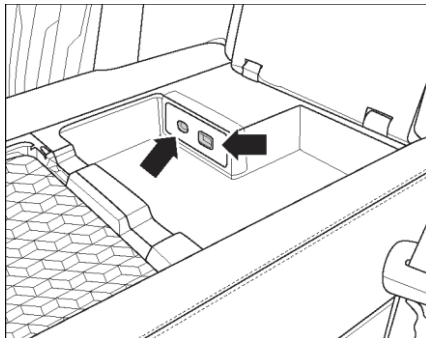
- USB interface: support data transmission.
- Type C power outlet: charge mobile devices.

**USB power outlet at the bottom left of the front passenger seat**

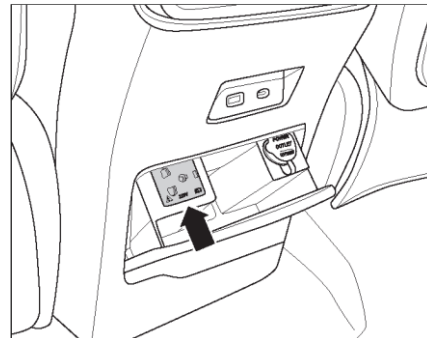
On the lower left side of the front passenger seat there is a USB power outlet that charges your mobile device.

**Rear USB and Type C power outlet on the auxiliary instrument console**

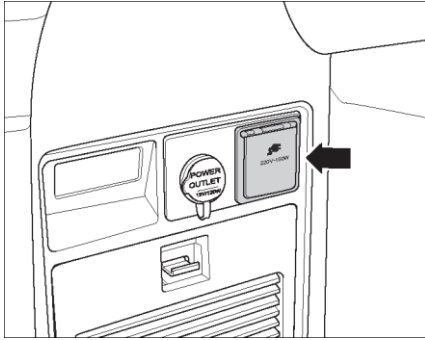
USB and Type C power outlet are located at the rear of the console to charge mobile devices.

**Storage box USB of the rear central armrest and Type C power outlet**

USB and Type C power outlet are installed in the rear center armrest storage box to charge the mobile device.

**220V power supply interface \***

Below the rear air vent



On the left of the trunk

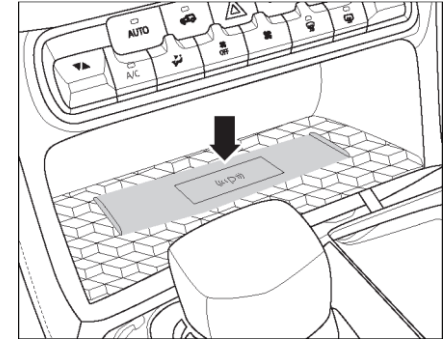
1. You may connect the electrical accessories to the 220V power supply in the vehicle. The connected devices must be in good state and free of malfunctions;
2. The 220V power supply can only be used when the engine is running. Connect the electrical appliances plug and insert the plug into the socket to the limit;
3. Please use the plug matching the power outlet to avoid damaging the socket.

4. When the LED indicator light green light is on, the 220V power supply is in normal working state; When the LED indicator light red light is flashing, the 220V power supply is in abnormal state. Please go to the after-sales service center for inspection and repair.

#### Note

- **The power outlet and the electrical accessories connected to it work when the engine is running. Improper use of the socket or electrical accessories may cause serious personal injury or fire. Therefore, do not leave children unsupervised in the engine.**
- **Do not use electrical appliances exceeding 150W for each 220V power supply connector, otherwise the electrical system may be damaged;**
- **If the connected electrical device is too hot, shut down the device immediately and disconnect the power supply;**
- **Do not spill liquid onto the power outlet, otherwise it may be dangerous.**

#### Wireless charging of mobile phone



Wireless charging of the mobile phone is integrated in the front storage box, which can be used to charge Qi-enabled smart mobile phone. When in use, put the smart mobile phone in the limit rib of the mobile phone non-slip mat on the charger.

#### Note

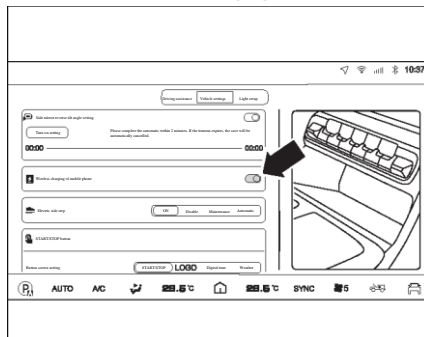
- **Do not place coins, metal key, metal rings or other objects containing metal components in the wireless charging area together with the mobile phone.**


### **i** Hint

- This function can be used only if your mobile phone has wireless charging.
- The charging efficiency may be affected or even failure may occur if the position or distance for placing the mobile phone goes beyond the charging area.
- Only 1 mobile phone can be charged at a time.
- Too thick protective case of the mobile phone may cause the charging failure.
- If the mobile phone cannot be charged normally, please make sure that there is no foreign matter in the wireless charging area and that the mobile phone is in the charging area.

2

### Turn on / off wireless charging



You may turn on / off wireless charging through Infotainment screen >  > Vehicle Settings > Mobile Phone Wireless Charging. The default state is "turned on".

### Mobile phone forgetting reminder function

When the mobile phone is charged on the wireless charging device, set the vehicle power mode to "OFF" position and open the left front door, the vehicle will give a prompt tone and the instrument cluster will prompt "Mobile device on the wireless charging panel!"



## Dashcam\*

### Dash-cam SD card

As the dashcam does not include the built-in storage device, it only works when a separate SD card is inserted. Otherwise, it does not record. The SD card mounting location is on the left side of the side mirror cover.

#### SD card specification requirements

The SD (MiniSD) card needs to be purchased by the user. Due to the dashcam of storing data at high speed for a long time, in order to ensure the dashcam performance and reliability and protect your personal interests, be sure to use a regular brand SD card with storage capacity of 8-128 GB and a transmission level of class 10 or above.

If the SD card is not in the FAT32 format, you must format the document system of the SD card as FAT32 before use. There are two ways of format in the following:

- Format via dashcam: Insert the SD card into the dashcam (located on the left side of the side mirror cover). After inserting the SD card, open the dashcam APP, enter the settings menu, and select the "Format SD Card" command to complete the formatting.
- Format by computer: Insert the SD card into the computer through the card reader and select the format command, select the file system "FAT32", the size of the allocated cell should be more than 4KB (usually the default is OK), select the default values for other options.

#### Storage duration (1080P)

Memory card capacity	64GB	32GB	16GB	8GB
Storage duration	8h	4h	2h	1h

#### **i** Hint

- **The above storage duration is for reference only. The actual storage duration will vary according to the brightness and complexity of the scene.**

#### **i** Hint

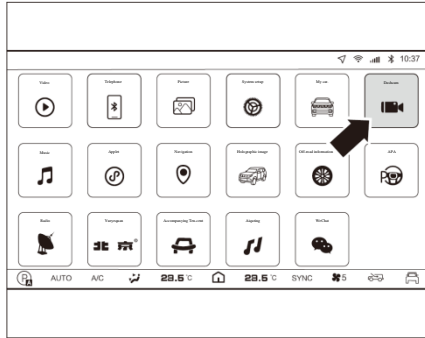
- **All functions of the dashcam are realized with the correct SD card. If you do not use the SD card as required, the system may not work properly and cause system failure!**
- **Since SD card is a consumable, and there are many fault conditions, the system will only indicate typical fault conditions, which cannot cover all fault conditions. The driver is responsible to confirm whether the dashcam is working properly during use.**

#### Enter the dashcam system

Users can operate the dashcam through the dashcam App on the vehicle.

## View the live screen

2



Tap the dashcam icon to enter the main interface of dashcam App, and the system will automatically play the live screen.

### i Hint

- When the speed is > 15 km/h and the "general settings - displayed driving video switch" is turned off, the video will pause and a safety warning will pop up when the video is played.

### i Hint

- Due to the transmission rate limitation, it is normal for the real-time picture to be delayed by 1~2 seconds, which will not affect the quality of the recorded video. Please refer to the actual road conditions.
- It is normal that the dashcam lens may fog up under extreme conditions (high ambient and variable humidity). The fog will automatically dissipate when the environment returns to normal.

## Video and sound recording

To protect your privacy and security, the dashcam is shipped with recording on and off by default. You can set the states of the recording and recording options in the setting interface.

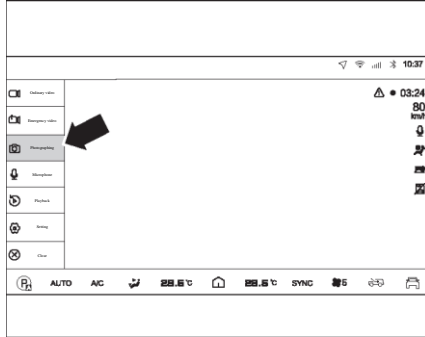
Recording duration: The dashcam video is recorded in segments. Each segment lasts 1, 3 or 5 minutes. The default length is 3 minutes.


Recording resolution: the dashcam video resolution is available in 720p and 1080p, and the default resolution is 1080p.

### i Hint

- For your protection, the dashcam will turn on the recording loop by default when the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode. The loop video is stored in the loop video folder. When the folder is full, the oldest video will be overwritten by the latest video.

## Photographing and emergency recording



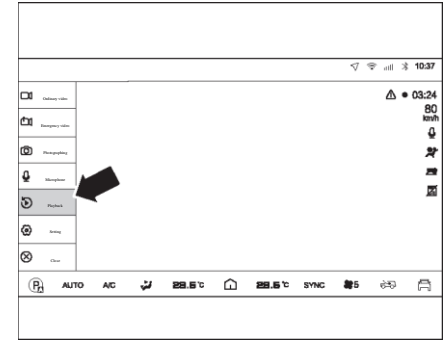
You can take photos by touching the Photo button on the real-time display or the One-button photo button  on the turning wheel.

The dashcam has an automatic emergency recording function. When the vehicle encounters emergency brake, collides or yaws violently, the dashcam will automatically trigger the emergency recording, and the system will record the video 15 seconds before and after the trigger time (a total of 30 seconds) and save it in the emergency recording folder. Users can also press and hold the "One-button photo" button on the turning wheel for emergency recording.

### Hint

- The dashcam does not support continuous shooting, and the shooting interval shall be more than 1 second. The "click" sound is emitted only when the audio/video system volume is not 0.
- If the user does not turn on the recording function, the 30 s video file recorded in an emergency will only have the last 15 s of audio information.
- To ensure data security, the system does not automatically overwrite the "Emergency Recording" folder and only manual operation is supported. If this folder is full, the system will prompt "Emergency Recording" storage space is full. Users need to clean it up in time, otherwise this function will not be available.

## View the file



Click the "Playback" button on the real-time interface to enter the playback browsing interface, where you can view emergency videos, ordinary videos, photos and casual photos. Press and hold the thumbnail to delete, move and save the selected file.

Tap the "Replay" button on the real-time interface to enter the playback browsing interface, and tap "Photo at will" to enter the file browsing interface. Edit the files to delete and upload the selected file to the cloud.

**i** Hint

- The move operation allows you to move selected loops to the emergency recording folder so that they are not automatically overwritten by the system, while files in the emergency recording can only be deleted manually.
- When the dashcam camera is obscured by rain, sleet, mud, or other debris, real-time images, video recordings, and photos may be obscured or blurred. Please keep the camera area clean.

## Accessories and Refitting

When the vehicle leaves the factory, data labels and nameplate are attached to the engine compartment hood inner panel, B-pillar, and other components, which indicate important data and information related to the use of the vehicle. Do not remove or damage labels and nameplates. You must always keep the data and information legible and readable.

This Company has adopted the latest safety technologies to design this car to ensure that it possesses outstanding active safety and passive safety. Therefore, in order to maintain the excellent characteristics of the vehicle, you must consult the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV before installing accessories or replacing components and parts.

It is suggested that you should always use accessories and parts that are recognized by this Company. In the event that parts not recognized by this Company are used, this Company will assume no warranty liability.

### Warning

**Installing unsuitable accessories or refitting the vehicle may affect the steering stability and other performances of the vehicle and may cause serious injuries or casualties.**

Vehicle telephones, alarms, transceiver radio communication equipment and low-power audio system, if properly installed, will not interfere with on-board computer-controlled system such as anti-lock braking system (ABS).

**Before installing or mounting any accessories, please pay attention to the following:**

Make sure that accessories will not dim the vehicle lights or affect the normal steering or performance of the vehicle.

## Retrofitted vehicle

Removing the components and parts from the vehicle or replacing the original parts with non-BXO approved parts will seriously damage the handling stability and reliability of the vehicle.

**For example:**

- Installing larger or smaller wheel and tire will interfere with the vehicle's anti-lock brake system (ABS) and other system.
- Retrofitting turning wheel and other safety features may cause system failure.

### Warning

- **Retrofitting of the front and engine compartment of the vehicle may deteriorate the pedestrian performance of the vehicle and violate the road traffic regulations.**

Retrofitting of vehicles results in increased load, and may cause the problem of heavy turning for the limit position in-situ.

 **Warning**

- **Improper retrofitting of this vehicle or installation of inappropriate accessories can easily lead to malfunctions and accidents. It is suggested that accessories and parts recognized by this Company should always be used, because their adaptability, reliability and safety have all been strictly verified by this Company.**
- **Improper retrofitting or repair of the vehicle may weaken the protective effect of the airbag, resulting in system failure and fatal accidents. Accessories such as the cup holder, telephone bracket, etc., must not be installed on or connected with the covering of the airbag assembly or within the working range of the airbags.**
- **Improper operation or retrofitting of the vehicle will affect the function of the SRS and cause serious casualties.**
- **Do not install wheel and tire that are not approved by our company.**

**It is forbidden to install high-power electrical appliances other than the ones which are originally configured in the vehicle.**

Retrofitting high-power electrical appliances beyond the rated power may cause heating and short circuit of harness due to excessive load, which may lead to fire.

**When installing dashcam, navigation or DVD player, do not change the harness at will**

When installing wiring harness, wiring with high internal resistance will generate high heat, which may cause fire.

**It is prohibited to use high-power bulbs**

When bulbs are being used beyond the rated power that makes them lighter, the harness may be overloaded and cause fires.

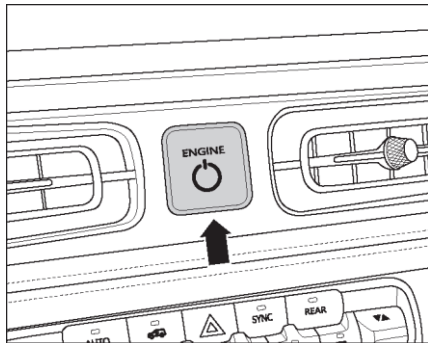
---

## 3 Driving guideline

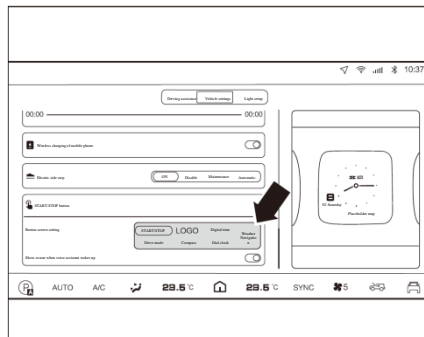
Start and Driving .....	150
Drive mode.....	162
Transmission system .....	164
Differential lock * .....	165
Crawl control (CCO).....	168
Brake system .....	170
Parking sensor * .....	185
Backup camera .....	188
AVM .....	189
APA system *.....	193
Remote control parking with the mobile phone* .....	197
Reverse with track guidance assist * .....	199
System of depth detection.....	200
Cruise control * .....	201
Introduction to intelligent driving assistance.....	204
ACC.....	205
Vehicle active security .....	225
HUD* .....	236
Software upgrade (OTA) .....	237
Idle start-stop system * .....	239
Driving Skills .....	241


## Start and Driving

### Start/Stop button



The Start/Stop button is located in the middle of the A/C vent of the center console.



Set the button display screen by Infotainment screen >  > Vehicle settings > START/STOP button. Power mode switching:

Before starting, the automatic gearshift handle is set to the P position by default, when the brake pedal is not pressed; Press the Start/Stop button and the power mode will switch in the following order:

- When the button is pressed for the first time: the "RUN" mode is turned on, the instrument goes on, and all electrical appliances such as the display screen are in a connected state;

- When the button is pressed for the second time: "ACC" mode is enabled, and the circuits of radio, cigarette lighter and other accessories are connected.
- Press the button for the third time: return to the "OFF" mode.

Press the Start/Stop button one by one to switch cyclically among the three modes: "OFF" → "RUN" → "ACC".



## EPS

The EPS can provide turning effort under various driving conditions according to different vehicle speed and turning wheel torque during vehicle turning, and reduce the disturbance to the turning system caused by rough road. It can not only reduce the turning control at low speed, but also greatly improve the handling stability at high speed.

When driving at parking or very low speed, if the turning wheel is continuously operated for several times or the turning wheel is operated with high torque for a long time (the turning operation is still carried out at the turning wheel limit position or when the wheel is stuck, it is necessary to avoid prolonged operation), the EPS system will reduce the turning effort to prevent the system from overheating and the operation of the turning wheel will become more laborious. If you continue this operation, the EPS will enter overheat protection mode, the assist will decrease, and the hand force will gradually increase, but the EPS indicator light will not go on. The turning shall be stopped until the temperature drops and the assistance will automatically resume.

When the engine is running, the EPS indicator light is on (yellow light: some functions are affected or the assist is gradually reduced; red light: cut off the assist), indicating that the EPS is not working properly. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to check the EPS.

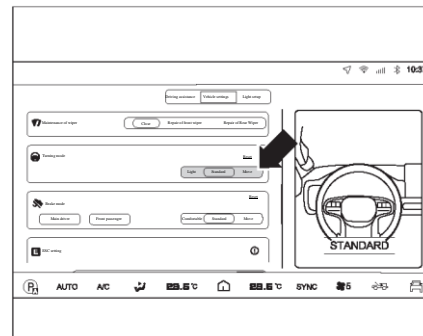
### Note


- **When the turning system fails, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV immediately for inspection and repair. Even if you don't notice anything unusual during the turning, the system may have had a serious problem causing the turning to malfunction.**
- **After the turning column and turning gear are replaced or the vehicle four-wheel alignment is done again, the angle sensor SAS shall be calibrated in the neutral position, otherwise the vehicle will deviate and the alignment function will fail.**

### i Hint

- **When the vehicle is powered on or off, the indicator light will light up for a short time and then go out, which is the EPS self-test process and a normal phenomenon.**

### Setting of Assist Mode



Press the keyless Start/Stop button to "RUN" mode, via infotainment screen >  > vehicle settings > turning settings, switch the turning modes, including easy, standard and sport.

**i Hint**

**To switch to turning effort mode, the following conditions shall be met:**

- **The electric turning effort system works normally.**
- **The speed is lower than 100 km/h, and no large turning torque is applied to the turning wheel.**

3

Light

By increasing turning effort, it is easy to turn, and suitable for urban and other congested driving conditions.

Standard

It is applicable to general driving habits.

Move

It is recommended to reduce turning effort and increase turning wheel feedback in situations such as high speed, rain and snow.

The factory state turning effort mode and ATS mode are preset correspondingly. When the user switches the turning mode via the infotainment screen interface, it is in one of the ATS mode. If the turning mode is switched successfully, the correspondence between the turning mode and the ATS mode is changed and memorized. The next time the ATS mode is switched, it will be switched in accordance with the memorized turning mode in relation to the ATS mode. At the same time, set the reset button at the switching point of the turning mode on the infotainment screen, and tap Reset to restore the default mapping between the current ATS mode and the turning mode.

## Electronic anti-theft function

The electric anti-theft function is used to prevent others from stealing the vehicle. The transceiver chip inside the smart key carries an electronic code and sends it to the vehicle. Electronic code with only the chip and vehicle registration

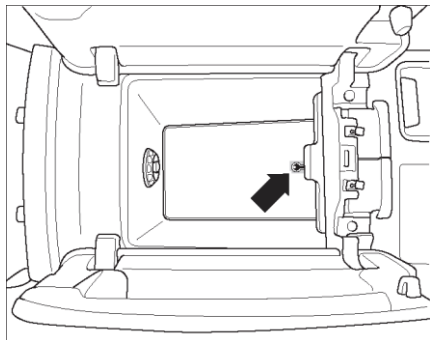
the engine can be started. If a smart key with an incorrect code (or other tool) is used, the engine will not work.

## Automatic locking during driving/unlocking after flameout

When all door are locked, after unlocking the doors with smart key, if none of the four doors and engine compartment hood or trunk lid have been opened within 30 seconds, the central door lock will be automatically locked. In the vehicle, if the speed is higher than the set value, the central door lock will be automatically locked and lock all doors. When the vehicle stalls, the doors will be unlocked automatically.

## Smart key standby start function

If the vehicle is in the region with strong signal interference or the smart key cell is short of electricity, when you press down the Start/Stop button to try to start the vehicle, the instrument cluster display on the instrument will display "Smart key not found". In this case, the standby start function is required.



Set the gear to "P/N" position, step on the brake pedal, put the smart key into the key identification of the armrest box storage box, and press down the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

## Emergency shutdown function

The emergency flameout mode can be used when the normal mode fails to shut down the engine. Press the brake, continuously press the Start/Stop button twice within 2 seconds or press and hold the Start/Stop button for 2 seconds to make the shut down the engine.

## Start engine

Use the Start/Stop button to start engine when the smart key is within the valid detection range. The start method is shown as follows:

- Step on the brake pedal to the bottom and hold it;
- Press the Start/Stop button to start the engine.

### **i** Hint

- **If the engine does not start successfully within about 10 s, release the Start/Stop button, wait for 10 to 15 s, and then repeat the normal startup procedure.**
- **If multiple startups fail, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to check the vehicle for troubleshooting.**

 Hint

- The start-up time of the engine may increase at the temperature of  $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below. Because the starter needs to run longer to overcome resistance and adapt to harsh combustion conditions, turn off all unnecessary electrical appliances at start-up.

 Note

When starting the cold state engine, the engine oil may produce running noise because it takes several seconds to reach the normal operating pressure. This is a normal phenomenon.

 Warning

- Do not start or operate the engine in a poorly ventilated place or a closed room. Because the engine exhaust is a colorless, tasteless and poisonous gas, it may cause coma and even suffocation.
- Do not leave the vehicle unattended state when the engine is running.
- Do not start the engine with a starting aid. Use of such a device may cause an explosion or make the engine run at high speed, which could result in fatal accidents.
- To prevent damage to the starter, do not start the engine for more than about 10 seconds at a time, and wait for 10 to 15 seconds before the next start.

## Start of vehicle

Idle speed is related to engine coolant temperature. As the coolant temperature rises, the idle speed of the engine gradually falls to the normal idle speed. In cold weather, the time for the engine to reduce from high idle to low idle may be longer. If you want to start the vehicle at high idle speed, run the engine for at least 15 seconds. At the same time, the speed of releasing the brake pedal shall not be too fast to prevent the vehicle from rushing forward and causing accidents.

## Turn off the engine

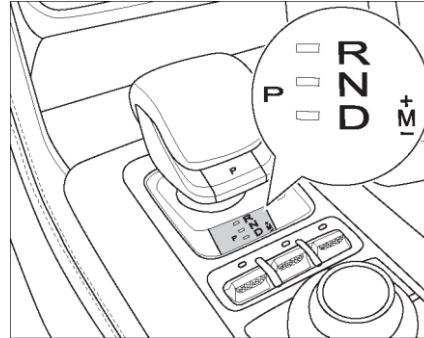
1. Stop the vehicle, press the brake pedal and place the gearshift handle in "P" position.
2. Press the Start/Stop button once, the engine will stall, and then the brake pedal can be released.

### Note

**It is suggested that the engine should be left to run for several minutes before being turned off after running under a big load. This will enable the cooling system to continue to work so as to lower the engine temperature.**

## Driving instructions

### Automatic transmission model



- The gear shifting control mechanism is an electronic bistable self-resetting gear shifting. Shift gears based on the prompts on the gearshift handle.

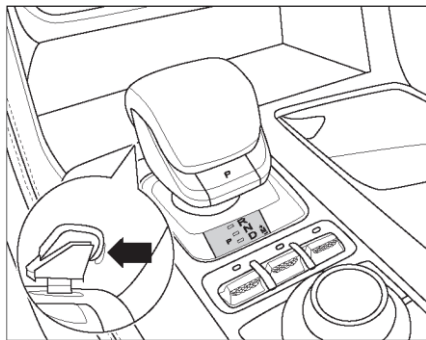
Description of gear position:

Location and state of gearshift handle:

- The gearshift handle has two steady-state positions respectively, the central position and the manual mode position. The remaining positions are transient positions. (Note: Steady-state position refers to the position where the gearshift handle can be stabilized; transient position refers to the position where the gearshift handle can be pushed by hand, but the gearshift handle will automatically return to the steady-state position when the hand is released.)
- When the gearshift handle is in the central position, it can be pushed forward to two transient positions, the first and the second order in turn; There are also two transient positions of pushing backwards, the 1st and the 2nd.
- When the gearshift handle is in the central position, it can be pushed to the right to the manual mode position. When it is pushed forward and backward at the manual mode position, there is both a transient position. When it is pushed to the left at the manual mode position, it can return to the central position.

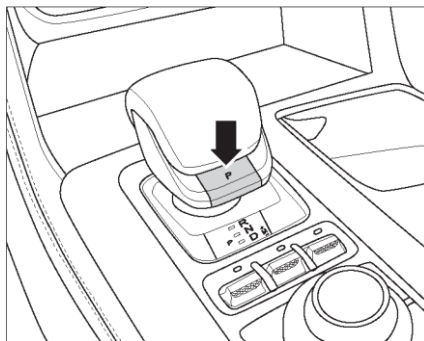
- For the first-order and second-order gear shifting by pushing forward or backward, when it is pushed to the first order and the gear shifting conditions are met, the automatic transmission will engage the adjacent first gear position according to the gear prompt on the gearshift handle. When it is pushed forward or backward to the second step and the gear shifting condition is met, the automatic transmission will engage the adjacent second gear position according to the gear prompt on the gearshift handle. If there is no adjacent second gear position, it will engage the adjacent first gear position, and if there is no adjacent first gear position, the current gear position will remain unchanged.

Unlock (UNLOCK) button:



- The button at the front of the gearshift handle is the UNLOCK button, which should be pressed when the handle is moved out of the "P" position or put into the "R" position; if not, the operation might fail.

P button:



- The button with "P" character behind the gearshift handle is the "P" position button. When the vehicle is completely stopped, press the "P" position button to put the automatic transmission into the "P" position directly from any gear.

"P" position (parking gear):

- After the vehicle is completely stopped, press the brake pedal to the bottom or pull up the parking brake, and press the "P" button to shift the automatic transmission into "P" position. The internal drive gear of the transmission is stuck.
- Because this model is an electronic gear shifting mechanism, in order to ensure safety, the transmission has a locking structure that switch to the "P" position (when the vehicle is powered off and turned off, the automatic transmission will switch to the "P" position). Therefore, the automatic transmission will also switch to "P" position in the following cases:
  1. When the vehicle is stopped, the automatic transmission is in any gear position of R/N/D/M, and the engine is turned off;
  2. When the brake pedal stop is pressed and the gear R/N/D/M is engaged, the driver door is open, and the brake pedal is released.
- As the transmission of this model has a locking mechanism that switches to the "P" position, the gear can be shifted from the "P" position to other gear positions only when the brake pedal is fully pressed, the vehicle is started, the unlock button of the gearshift handle is pressed, and the shift handle is pushed forward or backward to the 1st or 2nd position.

"R" position (reverse gear):

- When shifting into "R" position, make sure that the vehicle has stopped completely. When shifting into "R" position from "N", "P" or "D" position, you must press the brake pedal to the bottom and press the unlock button of the gearshift handle. Push the shift handle forward to the first or second gear before shifting into "R" position. When shifting into "R" position, "R" position will be displayed on the dashboard and the gearshift handle, and the backup lamp will be lit automatically.

"N" position (neutral):

- Select "N" position when the vehicle is completely stationary and the engine needs to idle for a short time (e.g., waiting for a traffic light). When in the "N" position, the "N" position will be displayed on the dashboard and gearshift handle. The transmission is not locked and the parking brake must be used or the brake pedal must be pressed.

"D" position (driving gear):

- Generally the "D" position is used when the vehicle is driving forward, which will be displayed on the dashboard and the gearshift handle. The system will automatically switch to the high or low speed gears according to the engine load and the vehicle speed.

"M" position (manual):

- Only when the current gear position is "D" position, push the shift handle to the right to the manual mode position, and the automatic transmission will enter the "M" position. Meanwhile, the dashboard will display the current actual gear position which is M position, and the "M" position will be displayed on the gearshift handle. At this time, you can push the shift handle forward and backward to manually upshift or downshift, and the instrument panel will display corresponding actual gear position.
- If the gearshift handle is pushed to the right to the manual mode position in the "P", "R" or "N" position, the automatic transmission will remain in the original gear position at the same time, and the vehicle will display a prompt message on the dashboard and give a prompt sound, prompting to push the gearshift handle to the left.
- If the automatic transmission switches to the "P" position after shutting down the engine in the "M" position, be sure to push the gearshift handle to the left center position at this time, otherwise the engine will not be started again, and the vehicle will display a prompt message on the dashboard and give a prompt sound, prompting to push the gearshift handle to the left.

Driving operation:

- Press the brake pedal to the bottom and the vehicle is engaged to P/N gear before starting the engine.
- Press and hold the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and shift to "D" position,
- After engaging in gear position, release the EPB first, then release the brake pedal and slowly press the accelerator pedal, and the vehicle can start. When parking, step on the brake pedal, stop the vehicle, apply parking brake, and hook the vehicle into the "P" position.

 Note

- The vehicle will start the corresponding gear shifting according to the change in resistance (such as towing, climbing a long slope, etc.), and provide more power to the vehicle by switching to a lower gear position. This prevents frequent gear shifting.
- The RPM of the cold state engine is very high when it is just started, so please be careful when shifting into "D" position or "R" position before the engine is warmed up.
- Before starting the engine, make sure the gear position is in "P" position or "N" position. Do not try to start the engine in other gear positions.
- When shifting the gearshift handle from "N" position to other gear positions, keep the engine at idle.
- After the engine is turned off in "M" position, the transmission will automatically switch to "P" position. Be sure to push the gearshift handle to the left position to avoid affecting the next start.

 Note

- The transmission will switch to the "P" position automatically when the engine is turned off. Be careful not to turn off the engine when the transmission "N" position is in use (e.g. vehicle wash device, towing trailers, etc.).
- When the engine cannot be started or must be shut down, if you want to put the transmission in "N" gear, use the "P" position, and the emergency unlock mechanism will forcibly unlock and switch the transmission to "N" position.
- When driving with a manual mode, the vehicle is forced to upshift only when the RPM is too high. Please also pay attention to the speed and load of the vehicle to upshift in time, otherwise the engine and automatic transmission will be damaged.
- When the vehicle is being towed, please lift the drive wheels off the ground.

 Note

Automatically switch to "P" position when:

- When the vehicle stops moving, the automatic transmission is in the R/N/D/M gear position, and the engine is turned off;
- If the gear D/M/R/N is switched in the stop state, open the driver door and release the brake pedal.



**Warning**

- The driver must be sure to carry the smart key with him when leaving the vehicle. Otherwise, the person(s) in the car may falsely start the engine or electrical equipment, thus causing injury or death.
- Always apply parking brake during stop. No one is allowed to stay in the car when it is parked, or the parking brake may be unintentionally released and the car will move.
- Be careful not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time when parking or stopping with the engine running state. Otherwise, fire may be caused by the excessively hot engine or exhaust emission system.
- Do not park vehicle near flammable and explosive materials. Pay attention to the direction of vehicle. Do not let the exhaust spray onto the plants and damage the green belt.

## Display of transmission gear position \*

On models equipped with automatic transmission, the gear position display screen in the instrument cluster shows the gear position the transmission is in.

The gear characters on the gear shifting panel or gearshift handle are capable of displaying the gear position, that is, when the transmission is in a certain gear, the gear characters will be displayed with the gear illuminated, brightened or changed color. When the transmission and the gearshift handle are in any of the manual mode gears, the M, +, and - characters will light up, or fade up or change color accordingly.

## The use of automatic transmission

The following information is particularly important for drivers unfamiliar with vehicle equipped with automatic transmission.

### Start

- The engine can be started only when the gearshift handle is in "P" or "N" position.
- Step on the brake pedal before starting the engine.

- Do not allow the engine to run at a high speed when "D" or "R" position is selected and the vehicle is stationary.
- Always apply the parking brake until you are ready to drive the vehicle away. Remember that once the gear is selected, the automatic transmission vehicle will move forward or backward slowly.
- Do not leave the vehicle stationary after the gear has been selected and the engine is already running (always shift to "N" position if you need to idle for a long time).
- When the vehicle is driving in the wet and slippery road, start in the snow mode.

**Note**

- Do not engage the "P" position or "R" position when the vehicle is driving; otherwise, the transmission will be seriously damaged.
- Please do not shift into neutral gear when driving the vehicle, especially at idle speed.
- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, please hang up the "P" position and use it with the parking brake.

### Special cases where the transmission function is restricted

When the transmission hardware, CAN communication or TCU fails, the vehicle will be restricted, and enter the corresponding limp mode (the vehicle may not upshift or downshift normally, or be fixed in a specific gear, etc.), and a warning will be given through transmission indicator light or text on the instrument. The driver can continue to drive the vehicle and it is recommended that repairs be made as soon as possible.

#### Engage reverse gear

1. Stop the vehicle stably.
2. Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button of the gearshift handle, and shift to "R" position.
3. After engaging the "R" position, slowly release the brake pedal so that the vehicle can drive in reverse gear.

#### When driving in reverse gear

- The reverse signal light goes on.
- The rear view system automatically activates and displays a backup camera on the infotainment screen (applicable to certain models).

- When the reverse sensor is activated and approaching the obstacle, it sends alarms with different audible frequencies (see "parking sensor \*" on page 206).

#### Transmission P position emergency unlock

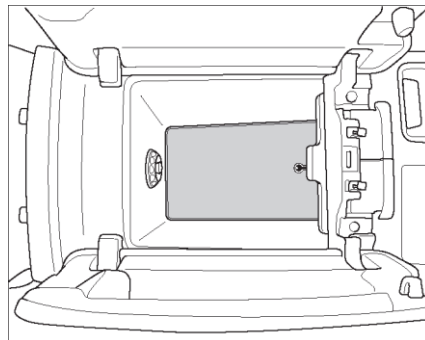
If the transmission cannot normally switch from "P" position to other gear positions, the transmission "P" position shall be mandatorily removed with the emergency unlock. The transmission emergency unlock handle is arranged in the center console armrest storage box (below the pad).



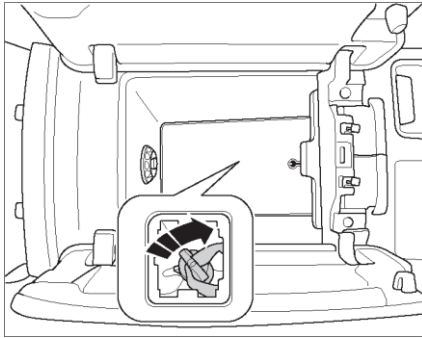
Note

- **In case of this fault, it is recommended to contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for professional operation to eliminate the fault. Operation by yourself may damage the relevant parts of the vehicle.**
- **When the transmission needs emergency unlock, it indicates that the vehicle is faulty and needs to be repaired at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**

1. Apply parking brake or brake;
2. Open the center console armrest storage box;



3. Remove the bottom liner of the center console armrest storage box;
4. Use a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver to pry up the cover at the gap, and then the P-position unlocking handle can be seen;

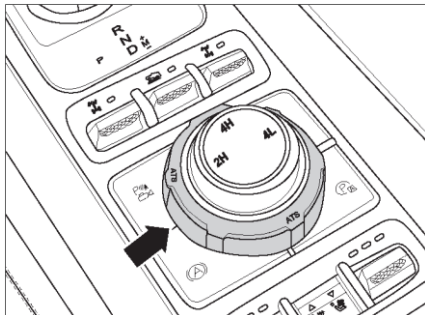


5. Turn the transmission emergency unlock handle counterclockwise to get it into the chute;
6. Pull the rope on the handle outward to the very outside, turn around the emergency unlock handle of the transmission in clockwise, and you will hear a slight "click" sound, indicating the handle position is fixed and the transmission is in the "P" unlock state. At this time, the vehicle will give an alarm, the instrument will display "transmission parking lock failure", and the transmission indicator light will light up. At this time, the transmission is in "N" position.
7. When the vehicle has been moved, please operate as contrary to the above procedure and restore the transmission emergency unlock handle to its original position.

 Note

- **Avoid long-term forced de-"P" position.**
- **When the "P" position is released forcibly, the transmission is not locked. Be sure to use the parking brake or press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.**

## Drive mode



The ATS system contains 9 drive modes (move, economy, comfort, snowfield, crossing, sands, muddy ground, rocks, wading). The driver may select modes with the ATS knob, so that relevant information is displayed on the instrument and the vehicle machine, and operation prompts for alarm information are displayed on the instrument.

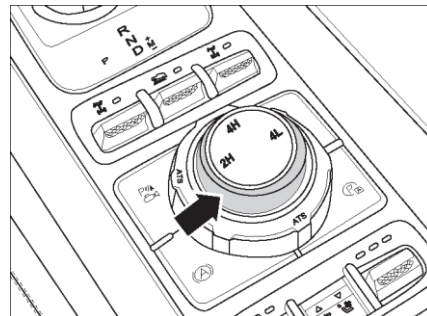
The transfer case has 2H/4H/4L three gear positions, 4L gear position hanging and hanging out requires the driver to manually operate the four-wheel drive knob, other gear position are automatically switched with the instrument, there will be corresponding prompts.

The operation of the differential lock requires manual operation by the driver, and there will be corresponding prompts on the instrument.

Driver assistance system and APA system are only available in move, economy, comfort mode, and the transfer case is in 2H gear position.

Under the modes of snowfield, crossing, sands, muddy ground, rocks, wading\*, etc, each system of the whole vehicle is adjusted separately, which differs significantly with the normal driving conditions. Please drive carefully and avoid dangers.

## Electronic control 4 WD transfer case



This vehicle is equipped with an electronically-controlled four-wheel-drive transfer case with the following gear positions:

2H: the mode of 2WD high gear and rear-wheel-drive is used for normal driving conditions, without the 4WD mode.

4H: four-wheel drive high gear and four-wheel drive can be used for a short time in rain, snow, mud, gravel areas or general off-road surfaces, not allowed on dry or paved roads.

4L: four-wheel drive low gear and four-wheel drive can be used for a short period of time on off-road surfaces that require high traction at low speed, and it is not allowed to be used on dry or paved roads.

## Shift the gear

### Switching between 2H and 4H:

When the vehicle is running (the speed is less than 60 km/h), the driver can switch between 2H and 4H at will without stopping the vehicle, but it shall be carried out at a constant straight speed.

### Switching between 4H and 4L:

1. Stop to keep the engine in state;
2. Move the transmission control handle to the N position;
3. Rotate the transfer case gear shifting switch to 4L or 4H position.

The "4L" position in the lower left of the instrument cluster display shows the current gear position of the time-sharing four-wheel-drive transfer case.

### Note

- **In order to avoid the failure of transfer case parts caused by misoperation, the electronic control transfer case of this model does not support the vehicle of retrofit clutch!**
- **When in 2H position, the instrument light does not light up.**
- **When the transfer case is shifting the gear, the current gear position is always on and the target gear position flashes. If the gear 4H is switched to the gear position 4L, the 4H light on the instrument is always on, and the gear 4L flashes. After the gear shifting is completed, the 4H light goes out and the 4L light is always on.**

### Warning

- **If the transfer case gear position is not fully engaged, the transfer case may be damaged or the vehicle may lose power and control, resulting in personal injury.**
- **Do not drive on dry and hard roads for a long time in the 4WD mode.**
- **If abnormal vibration of the chassis is found during turning, please first check whether the transfer case is not set to "2H".**
- **Use the "4L" gear position only when extra tow is required, and do not use the "4L" gear position for a long time.**
- **The speed shall not be higher than 60km/h in 4H mode; The speed shall not be higher than 30 km/h in the 4L mode.**

## Transmission system

### General Instructions

When the vehicle is off-road, improper operation of the driver will cause abnormal damage to the transmission system.

Operation requirements (steep slope, uneven mountainous area and muddy road section):

1. Four-wheel low gear drive, maintaining steady throttle. Drive slowly and do not accelerate at a speed of more than 25 km/h.
2. Avoid rapid acceleration and thereby abnormal damages to the transmission system.
3. Once the vehicle can't get out of trouble by itself, do not force it. Please ask for external help to get out of trouble quickly.



Note

- **When vehicle into the off-road area, remember to drive slowly and the speed shall not exceed 25 km/h.**
- **Do not accelerate suddenly to prevent the wheel from turning suddenly and violently, which may cause idling and slipping.**
- **It is prohibited to accelerate sharply when the vehicle is released.**

The following items will cause failure to the transmission parts, which should always be remembered to avoid:

1. Press the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal at the same time and lift the brake pedal sharply.
2. When the front wheel encounters a great obstacle, the driver urgently press the accelerator pedal to get out of it.
3. The wheels take flight and the accelerator pedal is forcefully pressed.
4. When the turning wheel is turned to the limit, one side of the wheel is in the stress state (e.g. a step or pit) and the drive axle shaft is under excessive stress.

## Differential lock \*

### General Instructions

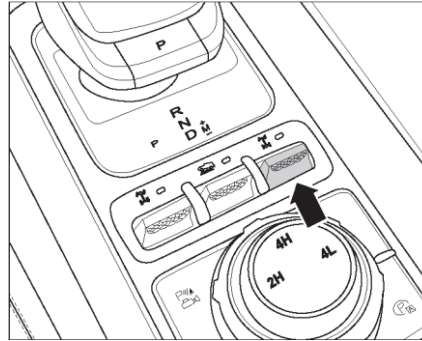
When one side of the drive wheel slips, the locking differential lock can transmit the engine torque to the other side of the drive wheel, so that the vehicle can still maintain the effective driving force, thus helping the vehicle out.

### Electronic differential lock\*

#### ⚠ Warning

- It is forbidden to retrofit the powertrain and transmission system of the vehicle to avoid damaging the differential lock.
- It is forbidden to use differential lock on paved roads;
- The differential lock is only used when the vehicle cannot get out of trouble, and the differential lock should be released immediately after getting out of trouble;
- Drive the vehicle carefully after the differential lock is locked. Emergency turning is prohibited. Otherwise, the stability of the vehicle will be affected and the risk of accidents will be increased.

### Operation instructions for rear axle differential lock \*





#### Manual lockup



#### 👁 Note

To lock the differential lock, all of the following conditions must be met:

- The vehicle is stationary or the speed is less than 5 km/h;
- The transfer case is in the 4H or 4L gear position;
- The speed difference between the left and right wheels is less than 50 rpm.

Toggle  the button (more than 1.8 seconds), when the  indicator light on the instrument is always on state, it indicates that the rear axle electric control differential lock is locked successfully, at this time, the LCD display on the instrument will pop up and display "the rear axle differential lock has been locked, and it will be unlocked immediately after getting out of trouble".



#### Locking refused

When all locking conditions are not met, toggle the  button (more than 1.8 s), and the indicator light on the instrument will  flash quickly (2Hz), and the LCD display pop-up on the instrument will display "Differential lock locking conditions not met, locking refused". After the indicator light goes out, please adjust the vehicle state to ensure that the locking conditions are met before re-locking.


#### ⚠ Warning

After the differential lock is locked, try to avoid large angle turning, otherwise the components may be damaged.


### Overspeed alarm

After the rear axle differential lock is locked, the  indicator light on the instrument will continue to flash slowly (1 Hz) when the speed is within the range of 30~40 km/h, and the LCD display on the instrument will continue to pop up and display "differential lock is in use, please slow down"; When the vehicle speed drops below 30 km/h, the  indicator light on the instrument will return to the always-on state, and the LCD display on the instrument will pop up again to display "Rear axle differential lock locked".



### Overspeed unlock automatically

After the rear axle differential lock is locked, if the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, the rear axle differential lock will be automatically unlocked and the  indicator light on the instrument will go out, indicating that the rear axle differential lock is unlocked successfully.


### Forced unlocking

After the rear axle differential lock is locked, when the transfer case is switched to 2H gear position, the  indicator light on the instrument will go out, indicating that the rear axle differential lock is forcibly unlocked due to the shift of the transfer case gear position.

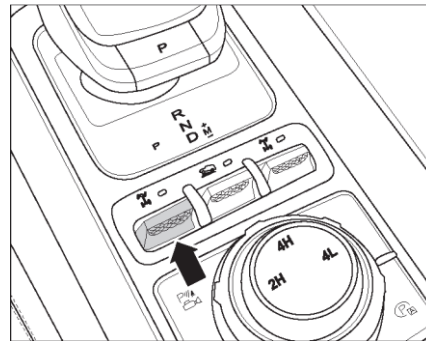
### Manual unlocking

After the rear axle differential lock is locked, push the  button again, and the  indicator light on the instrument goes out, indicating that the rear axle differential lock is unlocked successfully.

#### Note

- When the instrument  indicator light is off, but the locking mechanism of the differential lock does not release lockup and reset normally, which causes the rear tires to generate relative sliding on the ground, you may gently turn the turning wheel to the left and right directions, so as to facilitate smooth unlocking of the vehicle.

### Instructions for front axle electric control differential lock \*



### Manual lockup

#### Note



To lock the differential lock, all of the following conditions must be met:

- The vehicle is stationary or the speed is less than 5 km/h;
- The transfer case is in 4L gear position;
- The rear axle differential lock is in the locking state;





 Note

- The speed difference between the left and right wheels is less than 50 rpm.

Toggle the  button (for more than 1.8 seconds) till the  indicator light on the instrument is in the state of constantly on, indicating the electric control differential lock of the front axle is locked successfully. At this time, the LCD display on the instrument will pop up and display "The front and rear axle differential lock is locked. Unlock it immediately after breakout".



**Locking refused**

When all locking conditions are not met, toggle the  button (more than 1.8 s), and the indicator light on the instrument will  flash quickly (2Hz), and the LCD display pop-up on the instrument will display "Differential lock locking conditions not met, locking refused". After the indicator light goes out, please adjust the vehicle state to ensure that the locking conditions are met before re-locking.


 Warning

- After the differential lock is locked, try as much as possible to avoid large-angle turns, otherwise the components may be damaged.


**Overspeed alarm**


After the front axle differential lock is locked, the  indicator light on the instrument will continue to flash slowly (1Hz) when the speed is within the range of 30~40 km/h, and the LCD display on the instrument will continue to pop up and display "The differential lock is in use, please reduce the speed"; When the speed drops below 30 km/h, the  indicator light on the instrument will return to the always-on state, and the LCD display on the instrument will pop up again to display "Front rear axle differential lock locked".

**Overspeed unlock automatically**



After the front axle differential lock is locked, if the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h, the front axle differential lock will unlock automatically; and if the  indicator light on the instrument goes out, it indicates the front axle differential lock is unlocked successfully.

**Forced unlocking**


After the front axle differential lock is locked, it will be forcibly unlocked under the following conditions. The  indicator light on the instrument goes out, indicating that the front axle differential lock is forcibly unlocked due to the shift of the transfer case gear position or the unlocking of the rear axle differential lock.

- Touch  the button to release the rear axle differential lock locking;
- Switch the transfer case to 4H or 2H.

**Manual unlocking**

After the front axle differential lock is locked, push  the button again, and the  indicator light on the instrument goes out, indicating that the front axle differential lock is unlocked successfully.

 Note

- When the instrument  indicator light is off, but the locking mechanism of the differential lock does not normally release locking and reset, which causes the tires of front wheels to generate relative sliding on the ground, you may gently turn the turning wheel to the left and right directions, so as to facilitate smooth unlocking of the vehicle.

### Daily maintenance of electronic control differential lock system \*

Electronically controlled differential lock system consists of mechatronics components. It is highly reliable and usually does not require regular maintenance. Paying attention to the following aspects will help improve system performance and reduce system fault rate:

- The ECU of electronic control differential lock is composed of precise electronic parts. Strong collision and knocking are easy to damage the electronic parts. Therefore, the ECU shall be avoided to be collided.
- Do not contaminate the electrical connectors of the electronic control differential lock system, especially the metal terminals, so as to avoid poor electrical contact;
- After the vehicle is driven off-road on non-paved roads, it is necessary to inspect the electrical connectors and line speed of the electronic control differential lock on the front and rear axles in time to avoid contamination with sediment or other debris.

## Crawl control (CCO)

### Introduction to system

The crawl control focuses on low-speed off-road driving. When the vehicle is in 4L mode and the transmission is in D/M, it allows the driver to set and maintain a steady speed, reducing the difficulty of driver operations and allowing the driver to concentrate more on turning and finding a path through the obstacle.

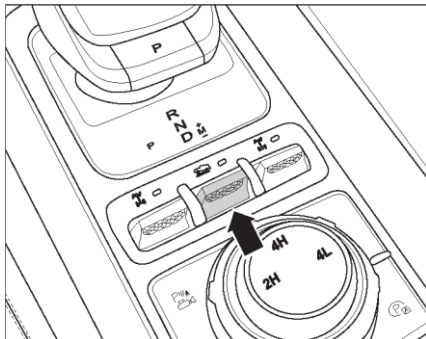
#### Warning

- **The crawl control is only an auxiliary system, which cannot substitute the judgment of the driver on the surroundings and road conditions, not even driving the vehicle for the driver. In any case, the driver must concentrate on driving carefully and be responsible for the vehicle safety.**

#### Warning

- **Incorrect use of the crawl control may cause collisions and damages to the vehicle.**
- **If the crawl control displays any indicator light or fault message on the instrument, do not use this function to go down a steep slope.**
- **Prolonged use of the crawl control may cause overheating of the relevant system. When the instrument prompts "The brake system is too hot, please use the crawl control with caution", please stop using the function and wait until it cools down.**

## Use method



After starting the engine, pull the crawl control button on the auxiliary dashboard to start the crawl control.

The conditions for opening the creep function include:

1. The vehicle is started.
2. The driver door is closed.
3. The driver's seat belt is fastened.

4. The four-wheel drive is in 4L mode.
5. EPB is in the release state.
6. The vehicle is in N/D/M position.
7. Vehicle speed  $\leq 20$  km/h.
8. The gradient is less than 60%.

When the crawl control indicator light on the instrument goes on in white, it indicates that the crawl control is in standby mode.

When the indicator light goes on in green on the instrument, it indicates that the crawl control is in working state.

Speed adjustment:

There are three ways to set the crawl control speed:

- ① The speed control knob on the left side of the turning wheel will increase/decrease the speed by 1 km/h for each up/down toggle.
- ② Press the brake pedal and lower the vehicle speed as required. The crawl control will set the speed at which the brake pedal is released.

- ③ Press the accelerator pedal to raise the vehicle speed to the desired speed. The crawl control will set the vehicle speed to the speed at which the accelerator pedal is released.

Function closed:

Pull the crawl control button on the auxiliary dashboard to turn off the crawl control, and the crawl control indicator light on the instrument will go out.

### Hint

- **The crawl control is specially developed for driving on challenging road conditions such as off-road/bumpy/breakaway. The controllable speed range is 1-12 km/h. When the crawl control is turned on, the infotainment screen will display the images from the left, front and right angles, which facilitates observation of the driver for the road conditions around the vehicle.**

## Brake system

### General Instructions

Four wheels of the vehicle are equipped disc-type brakes. The booster can help to reduce the force needed to depress the brake pedal.

The service brake system has two sets of brake pipelines. If one pipeline fails, the other will still work normally and make the vehicle stop. However, you must apply a bigger force than usual to depress the brake pedal. Go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

When driving, putting a foot on the brake pedal will cause the brake to make a minor movement and generate heat, thus reducing the effectiveness of the brake and shortening the service life of the friction plate of the brake. It will also lower fuel efficiency. If the brake light is lit all the time, it will also confuse drivers behind your vehicle.

When driving down a long slope, the continuous use of the brake will make it accumulate heat, thus reducing its effectiveness. At this time, the foot shall be taken off the accelerator pedal, and it shall shift to a low gear position to use the engine to assist in brake.

After driving through deep water, check the brake. Moderately depress the brake pedal and see if it feels normal. In case of abnormality, be sure to lightly depress the brake pedal from time to time until it returns to normal.

The braking operation includes feeling time and reaction time.

First, decide whether to press the brake pedal as this is the feeling time. Then, you must lift your foot and depress the pedal. This is the reaction time.

The average reaction time is approximately three quarters of a second. But, this is only the average time. One driver may have a shorter reaction time, while another driver may need a reaction time of two to three seconds, or even longer. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and sight all affect reaction time. Alcohol, drugs and depression also have an effect on it. Even though the reaction time is about three-quarters of a second, when the speed is

The vehicle will move 20 m at 100 km/h, which is too long in an emergency. Therefore, it is very important to keep sufficient distance from other vehicles.

Of course, the actual braking distance will vary greatly depending on the surface (highway or dirt), road conditions (wet, dry, icy), tire tread, brake condition, vehicle weight, and braking force.

Avoid violently depressing the brake pedal. Some drivers drive with too much force, such as stomping on the accelerator pedal then pushing the brake pedal down, rather than maintaining the driving flow with other vehicles. This is a wrong way of driving. In the short period between these periods of braking, there is no time for the brakes to cool down. If you stomp on the brake pedal in this manner, the brakes will wear out more quickly. By maintaining flow with other vehicles and maintaining necessary distance from other vehicles, you can greatly reduce unnecessary braking. This will improve the braking effect and prolong the life of the brakes.

## Factors affecting the braking effect

### 1. Wear

The wear of brake linings depends to a great extent on the mode of use and driving conditions, especially for those vehicles that often drive in urban traffic and short distances in sport mode. Therefore, it is very necessary to go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to check the thickness of the brake friction plate within the specified maintenance interval.

When driving downhill, you should shift to a low gear in time to take advantage of the braking force of the engine, which can reduce the burden of the brake. If you want to increase the braking force, do not brake continuously, but brake intermittently.

### 2. Wet or sprinkled/sprinkled with salt

Under some driving conditions, such as when driving in water or after heavy rain or after car washing, dampness or low temperature in winter can cause icing of the brake discs and the friction plate and the braking action will lag. In such cases, you should brake several times to dry the brake.

When driving in rain and wet and slippery road, the speed shall be controlled to prevent skidding; When encountering stagnant water, it is advisable to pass at a low gear and uniform speed. After passing through road sections with deep standing water, because the brake pads and the brake discs will become wet, the brakes will be affected. In such a case, you need to lightly depress the brake several times so that the braking parts are kept dry.

When driving on salted roads, the braking action is also delayed if the brakes are not applied for a longer period of time, so it is necessary to remove the salt layer from the brake discs and friction pads.

### 3. Plateau environment

In highland regions, the hills are high and the slopes are long. The brake is used highly frequently and over long periods of time. Moreover, the brake continuously works under high-intensity braking conditions. All these factors will make the braking effect poorer. Therefore, we recommend that the vehicle should not coast in neutral and avoid frequent braking when going downhill. Try to use the low gear to control the speed through the braking effect of the engine itself. This can reduce the working intensity of the wheel brake and reduce the brake temperature. When the engine brake is applied, the lower the transmission gear, the higher the engine RPM, the greater the drag force, and the more obvious the braking effect.

### 4. Ice and snow weather

Due to the low coefficient of friction on the ice and snow-covered roads, the braking distance will significantly increase during braking, with the increase of the vehicle speed. Therefore, when driving on the ice-snow road, the driver must pay special attention to controlling the speed, and maintaining a large safe distance with the vehicles at the front or sideways.

It is forbidden to coast in neutral gear when driving in ice and snow-covered road.

### 5. Surface rust

If you park the vehicle for a long period of time or you do not use the braking system for a long period of time, the brake lining of the brake disc may rust. This will also cause the friction plate to become dirty. We therefore suggest that before driving the vehicle you should apply the brake several times so as to clean the brake disc.

### 6. Brake system failure

If you find that the braking distance has suddenly become longer or the depression of the brake pedal has become longer, it is likely that there is a problem with the braking system. In this case, immediately drive to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for maintenance. On the way to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV, keep your speed low, adjust your driving style and apply more force on the brake pedal when braking.

### 7. Brake overheating

When no braking is needed, be sure NOT to lightly depress the brake pedal, which may otherwise make the brake “slide and turn”. This will result in brake overheating, longer braking distance and greater wear.

Installation of the spoiler, wheel trim panel, etc. must avoid interfere with the airflow drifting to the front brake. Otherwise, the brake might overheat.

## Brake pedal

Do NOT put any thick mat or other alien objects close to the brake pedal. Such objects may affect the stroke of the brake pedal in emergency situations. Ensure that the brake pedal can be operated freely in all circumstances.

When no braking is needed, do not put your foot on the brake pedal. If you do so, it will increase the brake temperature, cause early wear to the brake pads or even damage the brakes.

## Brake Lining

When the brake lining reaches the limit of wear, the disc brakes mounted with a warning device will issue a sharp sound of metal friction. If you hear this sound, go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible to replace the brake friction plate.

Try to avoid emergency brake during the first 200 km driving after replacing with a new friction plate.



Warning

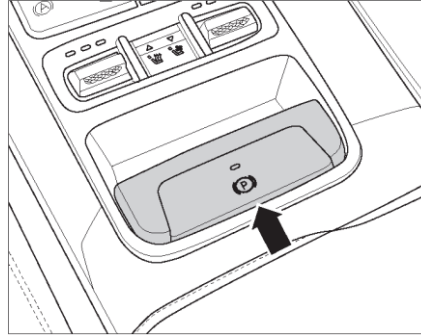
**Do NOT drive a car with an over-worn friction lining, because it makes vehicle braking difficult and may cause an accident.**

## The Braking System State & Braking System Fault Warning Light

The brake indicator light turns on when the parking brake is applied or when the brake fluid level falls below the specified level. Before driving the vehicle, the parking brake shall be completely released and the brake indicator light shall be turned off. If the brake warning light is lit while driving, it implies a weakened braking effect. Follow the operations below and park the vehicle in a safe place:

- If you step on the brake pedal, when the braking effect weakens, step on the brake pedal harder.

## EPB



Manual application of EPB:

When the vehicle is stationary and the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode (P), pull up the AUTOHOLD switch button to apply EPB to prevent the vehicle from rolling. At this time, the red parking lamp on the instrument cluster lights (P) up.

Automatic application of EPB:

When the vehicle is in any gear state and the Start/Stop button is placed in "OFF" mode, the vehicle will automatically park, and the red parking light on the instrument cluster will (P) go on.

Secondary application of EPB:

In some special cases, the AUTOHOLD switch button can be triggered upwards for 3 s with the brake caliper clamped a second time when the car is already parked. Manual release of EPB:

When the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode, press the brake pedal and push down the AUTOHOLD switch button (P) to release the EPB. At this moment, the red parking lamp on the instrument cluster (P) goes out.


 Note

- If you push down the AUTOHOLD switch without pressing the brake pedal, the EPB will not be released. The instrument cluster display prompts "Please press the brake pedal to release the EPB".
- After the vehicle with automatic gears stops moving, apply EPB first, and then switch the gearshift handle to the "P" gear position.
- In some special cases, if the EPB is not required for parking, the AUTOHOLD switch can be pushed down before the Start/Stop button is switched off, and hold it for more than 3 s before switching off the whole vehicle power supply, and then the vehicle will not apply the parking brake.

 Note

- When the transfer case is in 4L, the transmission is in D/R position. If EPB parking is used for a long time, the instrument cluster display will prompt "If parking is used for a long time, please switch to P/N position". On a slope, the vehicle may slip when the transfer case is 4L and the EPB is used in D/R position. Please be careful. When the transfer case is 4L, minimize the use of EPB in D/R gear.
- If two or more wheel speed sensors fail and the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" state, the vehicle cannot be parked by pulling up the AUTOHOLD switch. The instrument cluster display prompts "If parking, please pull the EPB switch for a long time after shutting down the engine". When the Start/Stop button is in the "OFF" state, pull up the AUTOHOLD switch for 3 seconds to realize parking.

 Note

- When the Start/Stop button is in "OFF" state, if the EPB is released, the vehicle can be parked by pulling up the AUTOHOLD switch for 3 s.
- When the yellow indicator light  on the instrument cluster goes on, it indicates that the EPB system is faulty. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for repair.



Automatic release EPB:

First make sure the door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened. In AT driving gear position (i.e., not P or N position), step on the accelerator pedal, for automatic release of EPB.

 Note

- **Make sure that the driver's seat belt is fastened; otherwise, the EPB automatic release cannot be realized.**
- **If the driver does not fasten the seat belt, the instrument cluster display prompts "Please fasten the driver's seat belt and release the EPB".**

## ABS anti-lock braking system

The anti-lock braking system (ABS) can prevent wheels from becoming locked when the brakes are applied. This will ensure vehicle controllability and directional stability at the time of braking.

The main role of the ABS is to improve the active safety of driving. The ABS will automatically adjust the braking pressure on each wheel. Before the wheels are about to be locked, the braking pressure automatically decreases. Then, it is increased until the wheels are locked. The electrical components of the braking system receive a signal from the wheel speed sensor. This signal accurately contains the time when the wheels are about to roll on. Such information is continuously processed so as to accurately adjust the braking pressure. The brake pressure can be adjusted up to 12 times per second, but it cannot be expected that the ABS system can reduce braking distance in all cases. For example, on a gravel road or on a slick road that has just snowed, the braking distance may be longer even if you drive slowly and carefully.

## Working mode of ABS anti-lock braking system

When the speed reaches about 20 km/h, an automatic testing is started. At this time, the operating sound of the pump can be heard.

ABS does not reduce the braking distance on gravel or icy roads, but it retains some turning control as the wheel does not lock up completely.

When ABS is working, it is normal to hear click sound. If the speed range of a wheel is too low over the speed of the vehicle and the wheel has a tendency of locking, the ABS will reduce the braking pressure on this wheel. This adjustment process can be noticed through the noise of the brake pedal. As driver, you should then know that the wheel is to be locked (ABS's adjustment range). At this time, you need to continue to keep the brake pedal fully depressed and steer the vehicle out of danger.

Do not release the brake pedal until the vehicle has stopped or the danger is over! Do not press the brake pedal repeatedly, as this will stop the ABS and may increase braking distance.

If the road is slippery, ABS will be enabled even if the driver presses the brake pedal lightly, so that the driver can obtain the road characteristics information through braking, and then adjust his driving style.

 **Warning**

- **No ABS can violate the physical principle. Therefore, please form a good driving habit and don't take advantage of the ABS to drive fast.**
- **In order to obtain the shortest possible brake distance and improve the stability of the track on both wet and dry surfaces, the vehicle shall be braked as hard as possible and be performed emergency avoidance operations as necessary.**

## ABS indicator light

ABS is integrated with a monitoring system, which is used to check in real time whether all the relevant electrical components of the ABS work normally.

If the ABS has a fault, the ABS warning light will be lit. During the vehicle self-test, when the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position, this light will come on for 2-3 seconds and then go out. Be sure that this light has gone off before driving your car.

When the ABS system indicator light illuminates in driving, do not press the emergency brake at this time, otherwise the vehicle may be trapped in danger of unstable driving. Be sure to depress the brake pedal softly and park the vehicle in a safe place. Restart the engine and check to see if the indicator light goes out after a few minutes of driving. If the indicator light goes out during driving, it indicates that there is nothing wrong.

If the warning light does not go off, or is lit again while driving. Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

 **Warning**

**After the ABS system breaks down, the normal brake system will work normally and not be affected by the partial loss of ABS function, but the braking distance will be increased.**

## Routine Maintenance of ABS

ABS consists of integrated electromechanical components. It is highly reliable and usually does not require regular maintenance. Paying attention to the following aspects will help improve system performance and reduce system fault rate:

- The ECU of ABS is composed of precise electronic parts. Strong collision and knock may damage the electronic parts. Therefore, try to avoid the collision of ECU.
- Do not contaminate the electrical connectors of ABS, especially the metal terminals, to avoid poor electrical contact.
- Do not contaminate the wheel sensor with greasy dirt or other impurities, especially near the gear ring.

- Excessive moisture content of brake fluid will not only cause poor brake due to vaporization, but also corrode the brake system and reduce the performance of ABS. Therefore, the brake fluid shall be replaced regularly, at least once every two years.

- When the ABS indicator light has the following conditions:

1. Continuously on
2. Lighting up for a long time during driving
3. The ABS indicator light on the instrument cluster keeps off when the Start/Stop button is turned from "OFF" to "RUN".

then you must take the vehicle to have it checked. When using the brake system before troubleshooting, attention must be paid to controlling the brake strength to avoid wheel locking.

## EBD electric brake force distribution system

Automatic adjustment of front-to-rear axle brake force distribution proportion to improve the brake efficacy (and shorten the brake distance to certain extent), and improvement in brake stability together with ABS.

### ESC Electronic stability system\*

The Electronic Stability System (ESC) can reduce the risk of vehicle sideslip.

The ESC only works when the engine is running. In special cases, the ESC function can be deactivated, for example:


- When the vehicle is running with tire chain.
- When the vehicle is running on deep snow or soft road.
- When the vehicle is stuck somewhere (e.g. on a muddy road) and needs to move back and forth.

If not, turn on the ESC system.

Electronic stability control (ESC) system can be used to improve vehicle control at extreme state, such as acceleration and cornering. It can reduce side slip hazards of the vehicle under all pavement conditions, and in this way improve driving stability of the vehicle.

In the electronic stability control system, it is also integrated anti-lock braking system (ABS), electric brakeforce distribution (EBD) and traction control system (TCS), hill hold control (HHC), hydraulic brake assist (HBA), hill descent control (HDC), roll movement intervention (RMI), and autohold (AUTOHOLD).

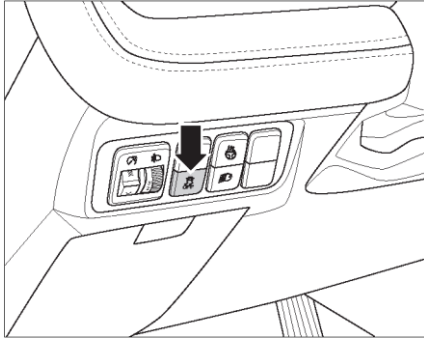
### ESC indicator light

When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position, the ESC indicator light in the instrument cluster  lights up, and the ESC system self-test begins. After the self-test, the indicator light goes out.

During driving, if the ESC indicator light flashes, it means that the ESC system is working.

If the ESC indicator light does not go out after the self-test or stays on during driving, it indicates that the ESC system is faulty. The vehicle shall be driven at low speed to the nearest authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repairing.

### ESC shutdown function



When the transfer case is at 2H: ESC is enabled by default.

Press the ESC OFF button for a short time to turn off the TCS function, and the TCS indicator light on the instrument cluster will light up. Press and hold the ESC OFF button for a long time to turn off the TCS and ESC functions, and the TCS and ESC OFF indicator light will light up on the instrument cluster.

Press the ESC OFF button again to activate the ESC function, and the TCS OFF and ESC OFF indicator light on the instrument cluster will go out.

#### Note

- When the transfer case is in 4H, the ESC function is turned off by default; Press the ESC OFF button for <3 seconds to turn off the TCS engine torque control. Press and hold the ESC OFF button (3-10 seconds) to turn off the TCS function.
- When the transfer case is at 4L, ESC and TCS engine torque control are turned off by default; Press and hold the ESC OFF button (3-10 seconds) to turn off the TCS.
- When the transfer case is at 2H, press the ESC OFF button for <3s to turn off the TCS; Press and hold the ESC OFF button (3-10 seconds) to turn off the TCS and ESC functions.
- Press the ESC OFF button for more than 10 seconds, the operation is invalid.

#### Note

- When the ESC function is turned off by pressing the ESC OFF button, the ESC function will be automatically restored after the driving speed is higher than 80 km/h, and the ESC OFF indicator light will go out.

When the transfer case is in 4H: the ESC OFF indicator light goes on by itself, indicating that the ESC system is in the partially functional state, including: ABS, EBD, TCS, Slope Assist, Brake Assist and HDC. When the ESC system is working, the ESC OFF indicator light goes out and the ESC indicator light flashes.

When the transfer case is in 4L: the ESC OFF indicator light goes on by itself, indicating that the ESC system is in the partially functional state, including: ABS, EBD, TCS Brake Control, Slope Assist, Brake Assist and HDC. When the ESC system is working, the ESC OFF indicator light OFF goes out and the ESC indicator light flashes.



Warning

**The Electronic Stability System (ESC) has a certain limit to the stability control of the vehicle while in motion, even if the vehicle is equipped with an Electronic Stability System (ESC), you should also adjust your driving style at any time according to the road and traffic conditions. This is especially important for driving on smooth and wet pavements. Do not take the risk of driving because this system improves the driving safety, otherwise you may have accidents!**

3

### TCS tow control system \*

TCS can prevent the driving wheel from slipping during acceleration.

The TCS tow control system is part of the Electronic Stability System (ESC). Under extremely unfavorable road conditions, start, acceleration and driving uphill is possible or easier only with the traction control system (TCS).

Operation method of TCS:

TCS can automatically function, without intervention from the driver. It monitors speed of the driving wheel through the sensor of ABS. In case of wheel slipping, the engine torque will be automatically reduced to enable the driving force comply with road conditions, which can be achieved within all speed ranges.

TCS works jointly with ABS. In case of fault to ABS, TCS is also disabled.

### HBA hydraulic brake assist \*

The brake assist system is for purpose of brake force optimization. The brake assist system helps to improve the brake force and shorten the brake distance. When the driver steps on the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system will automatically be started adjust the braking force to the maximum until the ABS conducts control and intervention. Keep depressing the brake pedal until the required braking is achieved. Once the brake pedal is released, the brake assist system will be automatically shut down.

In case ABS fails, the brake assist system is also out of service.

### HHC slope auxiliary function \*

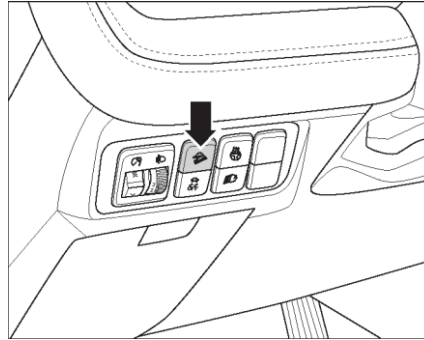
After the driver has fastened the seat belt and closed the driver door, when the gradient is greater than 4 °, whether the vehicle is parked and moved forward on an uphill slope or stopped and reversed on a downhill slope, the HSA will automatically enter into operation at any time. When the brake is released, the brake system still provides a strong braking force within about 0.5 to 2 s, ensuring that the brake is applied to the vehicle and preventing it from skidding, making driving as smooth as possible without the hassle of rolling, greatly increasing comfort and handling safety.

## Hill descent control (HDC)\*

HDC enables driving at constant speed during driving downhill.

The HDC is an additional function of the ESC system and can be used when going downhill. It is divided into the comfort mode and the cross-country mode. When the driver wants to maintain a constant speed (in the range of 8 km/h to 35 km/h when the transfer case is at 2H/4H, and in the range of 1 km/h to 8 km/h when the transfer case is at 4L)

HDC work mode:



1. Press down the HDC switch and turn on the HDC. The instrument HDC lamp is on at this time, indicating that the HDC function is turned on and in standby mode; Press down the HDC switch again to turn off the HDC function.
2. When the HDC function is turned on and the vehicle is on a downhill slope, the driver does not engage in braking or accelerating, and the vehicle speed is within 1 km/h ~ 35 km/h (transfer case in 4L)/8 km/h ~ 35 km/h (transfer case in 2H/4H); The HDC starts to work and the vehicle can run at the initial speed; At this time, the green HDC light on the instrument will be in the flashing state;

3. When the driver uses the accelerator pedal to make the vehicle speed exceed 35 km/h, the HDC function will exit and be in standby mode; When the speed continues to increase beyond 60 km/h, the HDC function exits completely, and the instrument HDC lamp goes out and the HDC function is in the OFF state.
4. When the "yellow HDC light" on the instrument cluster is on, it indicates that the HDC function fails. Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

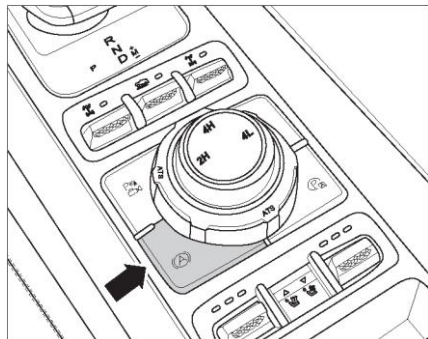
## RMI Anti-rollover function \*

When the inclination of the vehicle body or the height of the wheels above the ground exceeds a certain limit during driving, or when the driver's turning exceeds a certain limit, which may cause the vehicle to roll over, the RMI Anti-Rollover function will reduce the risk of rollover by braking the wheels and reducing engine torque.

## AUTOHOLD\*

AUTOHOLD can help driver get off more comfortably on slope roads. After releasing the brake pedal, the system continues to maintain braking, allowing the driver enough time to press the accelerator pedal to start,

### AUTOHOLD is on



When the engine is running, close the driver's side door, fasten the seat belt and press the "AUTOHOLD" switch, so that the AUTOHOLD is started with the switch indicator light on.

### AUTOHOLD activation

1. Start the engine, close the driver's door, fasten the seat belt, engage gear other than R, activate "AUTO HOLD" function, depress the brake pedal until the vehicle speed reaches zero, the AUTOHOLD will be activated and the green instrument cluster indicator light (P) will go on;
2. Gently press the accelerator, the parking will be automatically released, and the green indicator light (P) on the instrument cluster will go out;
3. If accelerator pedal is not pushed down for more than 3 minutes, it will be switched to EPB mode and the EPB red parking light (P) will be turned on.

### AUTOHOLD off

Press the "AUTOHOLD" switch, the AUTOHOLD will be turned off and the switch indicator light will go out.

### AUTOHOLD Forced Exit

1. When the seat belt is released or the driver side door or shut down the engine is opened, the AUTOHOLD function exits automatically.

2. If the AUTOHOLD function has been activated, release the seat belt or open the driver door or shut down the engine, and then perform the EPB. The green indicator light of the instrument cluster will go out and the red indicator light (P) of the EPB will light (P) up.

### Note

- **AUTOHOLD monitors the vehicle state. If insufficient brake pressure is detected after the brake pedal is released, the ESC will actively increase the pressure and keep the vehicle stationary. There will be noise when ESC is actively supercharging. This is the working sound of ESC motor, which is normal.**
- **When the instrument cluster display prompts "Automatic parking system failure", it indicates that the AUTOHOLD function fails. Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair as soon as possible.**



## Intelligent brake mode selection (IBC)

### Introduction to system

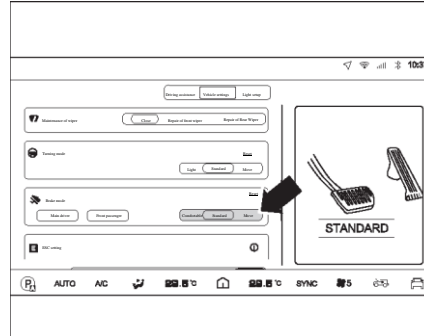
The intelligent select function of the brake mode (IBC) provides three brake modes: comfort, normal and move, so as to meet requirements for the braking style with different driving habits. The IBC system correlates with the all-terrain mode and the vehicle key internally to realize the automatic switching of the specified mode.


#### Warning

- Please switch the brake mode in the stop state. Do not switch the brake mode while the vehicle is running. Improper use of the brake mode may lead to traffic collision.

### Use method

Switch of brake modes



Go to infotainment screen >  > body settings > brake mode and click "Comfort/Standard/Sport" to switch. After switching, the mode will be memorized.

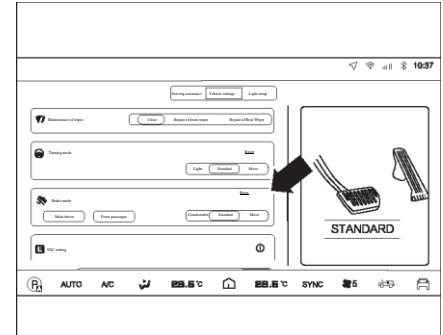
#### Hint


- Under different brake modes, the brake pedal stroke is different and the foot feeling is different, so it is necessary for the driver to adapt in advance on the safe road.

#### Hint

- The brake mode has been associated with the two keys of the vehicle. The brake mode will be different according to different key carried.

Brake mode reset



Restore factory settings by infotainment screen >  > body settings > brake mode and clicking "Reset" for reset.

## Comfort stop function (CST)

Comfort stop function (CST) allows the vehicle to properly reduce the brake pressure before stopping on a flat vehicle, reduce the pitching jitter of the vehicle, and improve braking comfort.

### Hint

- The comfort stop function is bound to the "Comfort" mode in the brake mode, and automatically opens when the brake mode selects Comfort.

## Dynamic adaptation function (DAF)

The Dynamic Adaptive Function (DAF) is used to keep still for feeling the brake pedal when the vehicle is being braked with the 4L mode idle driving brake and the cold idle driving brake, so as to counteract the impact of power output on feeling for the pedal.

## Brake disc outlet wiping function (BDW)

The Brake Disc Outlet Wiping Function (BDW) is used to wipe and remove water from the brake disc of the vehicle after wading in water, improving brake efficiency and vehicle driving safety.

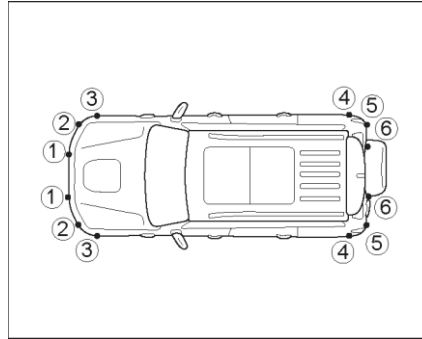
### Hint

- The brake disc outlet wiping function is associated with the all-terrain wading mode and only works in wading mode.

## Parking sensor \*

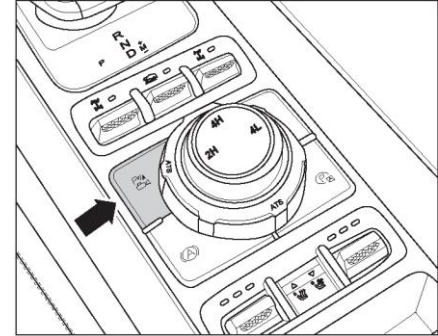
### Introduction to PDC

A parking sensor system is a safety aid when parking or reversing. It uses ultrasound to detect the approximate distance between the vehicle and the obstacle, display it on a infotainment screen, and informs the driver (by an intermittent audible signal). The parking sensor system is only an auxiliary tool, and it can't replace you to observe the surrounding environment. You should still be responsible for the safe car moving and parking operation. Please make sure that no person, animal or other object is within the moving and parking range.



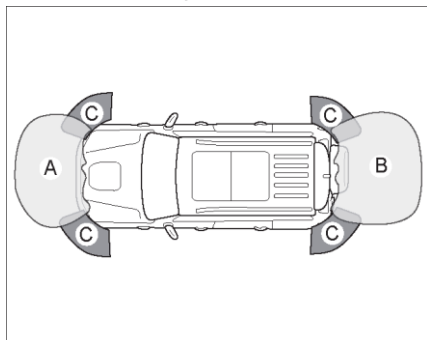
- ① Front center sensor\*
- ② Front corner sensor\*
- ③ Front sensor\*
- ④ Rear sensor\*
- ⑤ Rear corner sensor
- ⑥ Rear middle sensor

## Use of Parking Sensor



When shifting into R position, the front and rear parking sensor system are turned on. When switching to D position, only the front sensor is turned on and the rear sensor is turned off.

## Sensor detection range



<b>A</b>	<b>About 90 cm</b>
<b>B</b>	<b>About 150 cm</b>
<b>C</b>	<b>About 30 cm</b>

The maximum detection distance of the sensor varies with the size of obstacles. For smaller obstacles (e.g. poles, traffic signs), the detection range may be less than the maximum in the table.

## Alert

If there is an obstacle within the detection range, the relevant warning indication will light up and an audible alarm will sound. As the distance gets closer, the interval between audible alarm gets shorter; When the distance is less than 30 cm, the audible alarm will continue to wail. The display screen only shows the obstacle the color segment corresponding to the position, and the rest are not displayed. When there are more than one obstacles, the alert shall be for the closest obstacle.

When the audible alarm continues to beep and the display screen indicates the red segment, the driver shall immediately stop the audible alarm to avoid collision or scratch with obstacles.

<b>Target level</b> <b>Alarm area</b>	<b>3</b> <b>(Green)</b>	<b>2</b> <b>(Yellow)</b>	<b>1 (red)</b>
<b>Front/rear sensor (cm)</b>	-	-	$\leq 30$
<b>Front/Back angle sensor (cm)</b>	-	<b>30-60</b>	$\leq 30$
<b>Front middle sensor (cm)</b>	<b>60-90</b>	<b>30-60</b>	$\leq 30$
<b>Rear middle sensor (cm)</b>	<b>60-150</b>	<b>30-60</b>	$\leq 30$

**i** Hint

- The above distance information is only approximate and for reference only. Please refer to the actual situation.

### Front sensor

The front sensor will operate only when the speed is less than about 15 km/h. It checks the approximate distance from the front of the vehicle to the obstacle at an angle to it.

If the gearshift handle is in P gear or the parking sensor system switch is off, the front sensor will not work.

When the parking sensor system switch is turned on, the front sensor automatically resumes when the vehicle decelerates from high speed to less than 12 km/h.

#### Note

**The following conditions may cause false alarms or no alarm:**

- **There are noises close to the ultrasonic sensor transceiver frequency band in the sounds of vehicle horn, engine roar, vehicle exhaust and tire inflation, which may cause false alarms.**
- **When reversing on narrow areas, rough roads, or uphill slopes, the system may detect railings, trees, or sloping surfaces, which may result in false alarms.**
- **When high-frequency radios or antennas are installed or used nearby, false alarms may be generated.**
- **No alarm or false alarm may be generated when the sensor is frozen or dirty in rain or snow.**

#### Note

**Inability to detect obstacles:**

- **The ultrasonic sensor has a blind spot in detecting obstacle. It cannot detect objects under, under, or too close to or far from the bumper.**
- **The parking sensor system cannot detect net-shaped objects such as fine wires, ropes and blocking nets; soft objects such as snow, cotton and sponge that easily absorb ultrasonic waves; low objects such as rocks, wood blocks and curbs; and special-shaped objects such as pillars, small trees, bicycle, angles, cornerstones and corrugated paper.**
- **The surface of some articles does not reflect the ultrasonic signals emitted by the sensor, which makes it impossible to detect such articles or people wearing such clothes.**



Note

#### Other important precautions:

- Do not spray the surface of the sensor directly with high-pressure water such as a squirt gun, and do not squeeze or impact the surface of the sensor in any other way. Otherwise, it may cause malfunction.
- The parking sensor system sensor is a precision part. Do not disassemble and repair it without permission. The company will not bear the quality guarantee for the damage caused by the user's unauthorized disassembly, assembly and maintenance.

## Backup camera\*

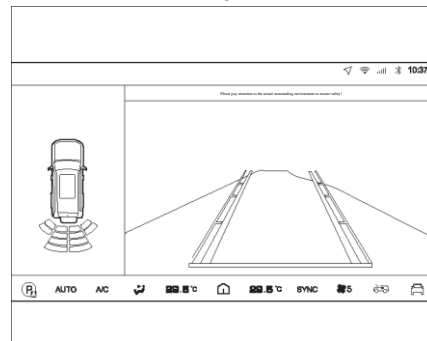
### Introduction to Backup Camera

This vehicle is equipped with a reverse camera on the right side of the rear license plate lamp trim strip. By using this camera, the backup camera captures images behind the vehicle and transmits them to the infotainment screen in the cab, so as to assist the driver to reverse.

During reverse, the driver can clearly see the scene behind the vehicle through the infotainment screen to avoid damaging the vehicle. But the system also has blind spots, such as being unable to detect small objects under the bumper and objects near the back and corners of the bumper.

### Use of backup camera

When the vehicle is in R position, the rear view camera starts working and the infotainment screen will display a real-time backup camera. At the same time, the backup camera is accompanied by dynamic and static trajectory line indications. The driver can determine the distance between ground obstacles and the vehicle based on the static trajectory line identification. The static trajectory line represents the distance as shown in the figure.



When the vehicle exits the R gear, the rearview camera stops working, and the infotainment screen returns to the previous interface.

When the backup camera is started, if the system detects fault information, the infotainment screen will display the prompt interface indicating a fault.

#### Conditions affecting the rear view of reverse

- In a storm or fog.
- The surface of the camera is frozen or stained with dirt, dust and snowflakes.
- Reverse at night.

## AVM\*

### Introduction to AVM

The AVM is a kind of comfort system, which consists of four wide-angle camera and a AVM system controller mounted around the body. AVM system can assist the driver in reversing, parking or turning by providing a clear view of the vehicle's surroundings, thus extending the driver's field of vision and assisting the driver in driving.

#### i Hint

- The AVM can only display 2D images on the screen, and it is difficult or impossible to identify protrusions or potholes in the road surface through AVM due to the lack of spatial depth. Always observe the surroundings of the vehicle.
- Due to AVM system resolution, some objects cannot be displayed or cannot be clearly displayed, such as thin isolation columns, grilles and trees.

#### i Hint

- The AVM may deform the outline of objects on the screen, and relying on AVM to estimate the distance between the vehicle and obstacles (vehicles, pedestrians, etc.) may be inaccurate, which may lead to accidents
- There are still a few blind spots in the AVM. Always observe the surroundings of the vehicle.
- The width of the parking space shall be at least equal to or greater than the width of the track extension.
- Please use the AVM only when the trunk lid are completely closed, the left and right side mirror are unfolded naturally, and the left and right front doors are normally closed.

### Note

The 360° camera does not work or is limited in the following cases:

- The door is turned on.
- Side mirror folding.
- The trunk lid is not closed.
- Heavy rain, snow or fog.
- At night or in places with very low light.
- The camera is exposed to bright light.
- The area is illuminated by fluorescent or LED lighting (central control display screen will flicker).
- Driving into a garage with a heating system in winter and experiencing rapid temperature changes.
- If the components of the mounting camera is damaged, please check the position and calibration of the camera at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

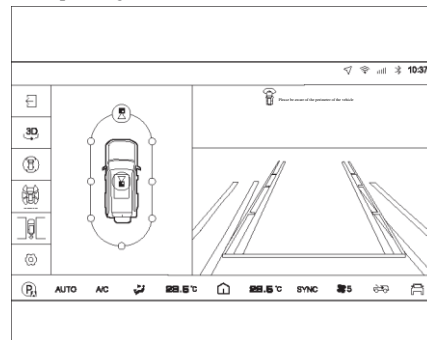
### Hint

- The AVM camera is installed outside the vehicle compartment and is easily covered by dirt. If the video is not clear, it is recommended to wipe the lens manually with a soft cloth.

The AVM consists of the following main functions:

The controller seamlessly stitches images of four camera placed around the body to create a 360° AVM. The display effect is similar to the image taken from the air, which can present the images around the body 360°.

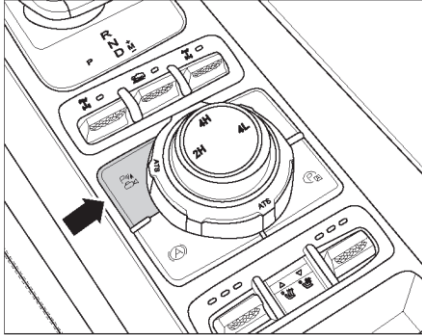
In the AVM surround view image system, when touching the camera buttons around the AVM trolley, the single view area can be switched to the corresponding view.





## Use of AVM

### AVM switch



There are AVM switch buttons in the switch buttons of the infotainment screen and auxiliary instrument. Press the switch button to turn on the AVM. When the system is turned on, press the switch button again or click the exit button in the AVM interface of the center control screen to turn off the AVM.

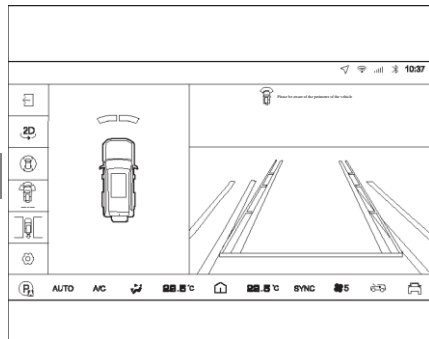
### Turn On/Off AVM Method

- Shift the gear to the "R" position, the AVM is automatically turned on; After exiting the R position, if there is no other operation, the AVM will be automatically turned off after 5 seconds.
- When the vehicle is not in R position and the speed is less than 25 km/h, press the AVM switch.
- Voice on/off when the speed is less than 25 km/h and the gear is not in R position.
- When the speed is less than 15 km/h and the gear is not in R position, the AVM can be automatically activated when the obstacle is detected.
- When the speed is less than 25 km/h and the gear is not R, the AVM can be automatically turned on by turn signal or detected obstacle, and will be turned off after the turn signal is turned off.
- When the APA is working, the AVM interface is on.
- In non-"R" position and creep mode, press the "Exit" button or switch button on the left side of the display screen to turn it off.
- Being not the "R" position with the vehicle speed greater than 30 km/h, the AVM is automatically turned off.

### **i** Hint

- **The AVM will not function properly until the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode.**
- **The obstacle-triggered panoramic view is only available for models with front sensor and AVM.**

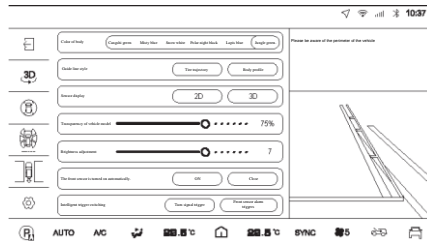
### Switching operation of AVM interface



When the system is started, the default screen of the system in non-R position is front view + AVM, which can be switched to other views through gear position, turn signal, or touch screen operation.

When the vehicle is in "R" position, the screen defaults to a 2D rear view + AVM, where dynamic (and static) guides are integrated. When turning the turning wheel, the vehicle driving track will be calculated according to the turning wheel angle, with guides provided to assist the driver to park.

### AVM setting



The AVM function can be set through the infotainment screen.

- Body color setting.
- Model setup of transparency: the vehicle transparency can be adjusted from opaque to full transparency.
- Auxiliary style, you can choose to turn on or off the tire path and body contour. The green line is the tire line, the yellow line is the body line, the auxiliary line will change according to the change of turning wheel.

- Sensor display: sensor display style, 2D sensor or 3D sensor can be selected.
- Brightness adjustment: adjust the brightness of AVM interface.
- Front sensor automatic ON: when the vehicle is under 15 km/h and the function is turned on, the front sensor is turned on and can detect the close obstacle ahead.
- Intelligent trigger switching: the AVM can be triggered automatically when the turn signals are switched on and when the front sensor detects an obstacle.

## APA system \*

### Introduction to APA

The fully automatic parking system uses 4 AVM high-definition fisheye cameras and 12 ultrasonic sensor sensors around the vehicle to collect real-time environmental data around the vehicle. By processing the environmental data, the current position and attitude of the vehicle, the position of the target vehicle, and the environmental parameters of the distribution of surrounding obstacles are obtained. According to the above parameters, the system generates an automatic parking strategy to control the vehicle to automatically carry out forward, backward, turning, braking and other operations, and park the vehicle in and out of the parking space within the specified number of operations and time.


The APA system supports horizontal parking space, vertical parking space in and out.

### Warning

- **This system is a PAS and cannot completely replace the driver's operation. When using this function, the driver should still pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and control the speed. If necessary, the driver should actively intervene in the braking to avoid unnecessary vehicle damage.**
- **This function cannot exempt users from accurate evaluation of traffic conditions and responsibilities. Due to usage limitations, the system may not automatically respond appropriately in all situations. If there is a risk of accidents, users need to observe the traffic situation and take over effectively.**
- **The system may not be able to identify people, animals and various unusual obstacle around the vehicle.**
- **During APA, parking emergency brake may occur. Where the deceleration rate is high, and the occupants may be "go forward" during braking due to inertia.**

### Warning

- **The vehicle will brake only when it encounters an obstacle continuously recognized by the sensor. Unable to recognize obstacles, such as small, low, or obstacle beyond the sensor's detection range. If the driver is not careful, accidents or damage to items may occur.**
- **Due to the sensor's inability to recognize whether there are potholes on the road surface, do not use the system on large potholes to prevent the vehicle from collision or trapping. It is particularly prohibited to use this system on the side of the road with height differences, such as cliff edges, parking lots that are higher than adjacent roads, such as roadways or sidewalks, to prevent the risk of vehicles falling.**

 Warning

- This system does not apply to parking scenarios where there are following obstacles:
- Non-motor vehicles with three or two wheels:
- Vehicles without continuous solid forms under the lower body (e.g. truck, tanker, trailer, etc.)
- No solid form or low obstacles (such as stop line locks, stones, etc.).

 Note

- External sound sources may interfere with the system, causing the system sensor to be unable to recognize correctly, resulting in the system false alarms of nonexistent obstacle.
- The system may not be able to recognize certain objects and persons wearing such clothing.

 Note

- The system may not be able to detect obstacles around the vehicle (e.g., protrusions that are much higher than the ground, hangings, flat cars, trucks, low flower bed, steps, curbs, potholes below the ground, cracks, steps, etc.).
- The system may not be able to accurately identify parking space in scenes with insufficient or uneven lighting, such as night, shadows, underground garages, etc.
- Misidentification may cause brake by mistake if this function is used in places with uneven ground (such as weeds and gravel roads).
- Avoid immersing the sensor in liquids and damages to it.

 Note

The system may not recognize obstacle that:

- Smaller diameter obstacle, such as barbed wire fences, etc.
- Fluffy obstacles, such as snow, grass, shrubs, etc.
- Obstacles with edges and corners on the surface, such as square columns, C-shaped steel
- Obstacles located too low or too high, such as low floor locks, curb, hanging water pipes, fire extinguishers, etc.

 Note

- Driving the vehicle or the surrounding environment in harsh weather such as rain, snow, and heavy fog can cause vehicle vibration and affect system performance.

 Note

- When cleaning the vehicle, only a small stream of water can be used to wash the sensor for a short time, and a distance of at least 10 cm shall be maintained. Avoid using a pressure washer or steam washer to clean the sensor, so as to avoid damages to the sensor.
- Before parking the vehicle into the spot, please make sure there is no obstacle (such as stone, thin column, thin square column, rope, trailer towbar, etc.) in the parking space and around the vehicle, as the system may not be able to detect this type of obstacle.
- Be aware of the actual validity of detected parking space. system may recognize entrances, doorways, intersections, etc. as valid parking space.
- Do not use the system when the transported goods protrude from the vehicle.
- The system may misidentification the tire prints and road boundary as parking space. In this case, the user shall confirm the validity.

 Note

- The system performs calculation based on the circumference of the wheel and parks the vehicle into the parking space by planning the effective route. When being installed with non-standard wheels of non-original size, tire chain, spare tires, or tire pressure, the system may fail to work properly, and the final position of the parking space may be deviated.
- To ensure safety, when using the parking function mode in the vehicle, the system will require the driver to fasten the seat belt and confirm that the door is turned off. Only when the vehicle is in automatic mode can it be activated.
- Thin rod objects at the edge of driving, forward and backward moving vehicle in narrow space, and complex road conditions (such as close following, underground garage curves, plugging, etc.), during the APA control of the vehicle with the low speed automatic emergency braking function, it may brake by mistake due to inaccurate detection and identification.

 Note

- To ensure the normal operation of the system, the camera must be kept clean (free from snow, ice and dirt).
- The braking distance may be increased due to ice and snow, ponding and slippery roads, making it impossible for the low speed automatic emergency braking function to avoid collision during parking.
- Abnormal noise during the APA brake is normal, not a fault. In case of emergency brake during parking, you may not be able to respond effectively to the sharp brake of vehicle ahead. External sound sources, such as vehicle with the same ultrasonic sensor, may interfere with low-speed automatic emergency braking and the system sensor may not respond correctly.
- If there are moving obstacles (such as pedestrians, electric vehicles, bicycles, motor vehicles, etc.) during automatic parking, the system may not be able to brake in a timely manner.

### Note

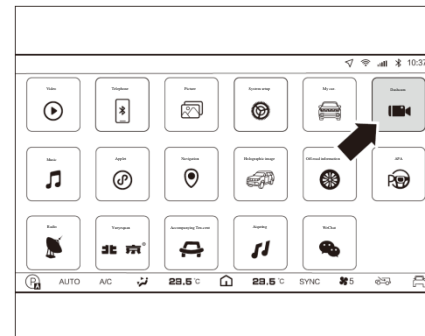
- The user's intention might not be effectively judged (such as emergency brake of users), resulting in brake by mistake during parking.
- The braking distance may be affected by different lighting conditions, different road surfaces (gradients), different vehicle loads and different tire pressures. The APA and emergency brake results may not be the same.
- The system's sensors have a blind spot, which prevents the system from braking when an obstacle enters the vehicle's blind spot, e.g. on either side of the vehicle, in front of the vehicle or in close proximity to the rear.
- There is recognition error in the system, and there may be a risk of scratches when surrounding obstacles are adjacent to the parking space. It is not recommended to use the APA function.
- The sensor has recognition errors, and the recognized parking space may be skewed, misaligned, etc.

### Note

- It is not recommended to use APA in complicated circumstances, such as irregular parking by surrounding vehicle, skewed surrounding vehicle, out-of-frame surrounding vehicle, encroachment by surrounding vehicle on target parking space, etc., which may easily lead to vehicle collision and parking failure.
- When the system cannot recognize the low curb and there is curb in the roadside, in the movement track set by the system, the curb may be crushed, and the driver needs to take over the vehicle.
- In narrow lanes, narrow roads and when transverse passing space of vehicle is insufficient due to obstacles around, the vehicle will approach the surrounding wall, vehicle or other obstacles, and the system will control the vehicle to move repeatedly, which may result in vehicle scraping and parking failure. It is not recommended to use APA.

## Use of APA system

### APA



After the vehicle is started and the speed is less than 25 km/h, press down the APA switch, select the APA and follow the prompts on the infotainment screen to operate. After the function is enabled, press the exit button in the upper left corner to exit the APA.

 Note

- **This system is mainly suitable for parking spaces with standard and clear parking lines. For parking spaces with severely worn parking lines, strong ground reflection, shaded by trees or buildings, as well as color tile parking spaces, the recognition rate is low, and it is not recommended to use the APA in similar scenarios.**

During APA, the following conditions can cause the APA to exit:

- Touch the Exit button in the upper left corner of the display screen to exit.
- The user intervenes in the turning wheel, gear position and AUTOHOLD switch during parking.
- During parking, the pause time of the system exceeds 60 seconds, or the time of the whole parking process lasts for more than 3 minutes.

During APA, the following conditions can cause the APA to pause:

- Release the seat belt.
- Open the trunk lid.
- The door is turned on.
- Obstacles are encountered during parking.

 Hint

- **Users are required to be ready to take over the vehicle at all times through brake and turning wheel to ensure safety.**
- **During parking, the user may control the speed with the brake.**

## Remote control parking with the mobile phone\*

### Introduction to mobile remote parking

This system is controlled by the Bluetooth that connects the T module to the mobile phone. Please make sure that the mobile phone Bluetooth is turned on and connected to the vehicle successfully.

This system only supports remote control parking in the horizontal parking space and the vertical parking space.

### Remote parking via mobile phone APP

1. After selecting the parking space, click the remote parking button.
2. Click the Remote Control Parking, and the display screen will jump to the interface of Remote Control Parking. Prompt the user to "Please engage P gear and turn on the mobile APP and connect Bluetooth". After the Bluetooth is successfully connected, the user will be prompted to get off the vehicle with the key for remote control.
3. The user opens the mobile phone Bluetooth and the Off-Road APP. After the Bluetooth connection between the mobile phone and the vehicle is successful, it will automatically jump to the remote parking interface. After the user follows the prompts of the APP and presses and holds the "Start Parking" button, the remote mobile phone parking function is activated.

4. When the system control vehicle is parked, the user shall monitor the parking process in real time to ensure that the parking can be terminated in time.
5. When the vehicle is parked in the target parking space, the APP will prompt the user that "parking is completed". The system will automatically shift the vehicle into P position and apply the handbrake.

#### Suspend or terminate remote parking

- Suspend parking: release the parking button in the APP or open any door of the vehicle or encounter obstacles in the parking route.
- Stop parking: click the exit parking button in the APP or the parking time expires.

#### Remote control pulling out the vehicle with the mobile phone APP

1. Start the vehicle remotely through the mobile phone APP.
2. Select the remote control of parking out.
3. From the available directions, select the pulling-out direction and confirm.

4. Follow the mobile phone prompts to press and hold the button until pulling out is completed.

#### Suspend or terminate remote pull-out

- Suspended parking: release the parking button in the APP or open any door of parking path encounters obstacles.
- Stop parking: click the exit parking button in the APP.

#### Note

- **The system of PAS does not exempt the user from accurate assessment for traffic conditions and responsibilities. Due to usage limitations, the system may not automatically respond appropriately in all situations. If there is a risk of accident, the user shall take over in time.**

#### Note

- **Limitation of system: since the principles and sensor of parking space identification and obstacle identification are identical to those of APA, the limitations described in APA are fully applicable to this system.**
- **Because the system is controlled by mobile phone and on-board Bluetooth, the theoretical effective transmission distance is about 8~10 meters. Due to the influence of the device and surrounding environment, the actual transmission distance may be shortened or even interrupted. Please pay attention to the Bluetooth connection and vehicle control state in real time.**
- **To ensure that the driver can manually intervene the remote control parking at any time, please ensure that the vehicle door lock is in unlock during parking.**



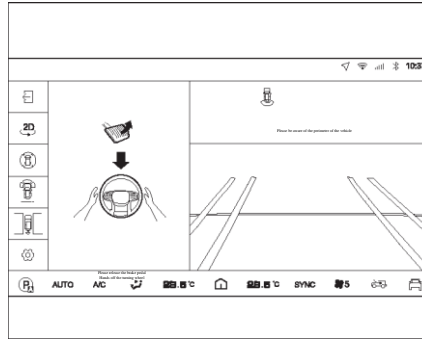
## Reverse with track guidance assist \*

### Introduction to reverse with track guidance-assisted system

When the vehicle is in D position and the speed is lower than 30km/h, the system will record the latest forward route in real time (up to 50m). When the reverse with track guidance function is enabled, the system will control the turning wheel, braking and speed to automatically complete the reversing according to the recorded route.

### Use of reverse with track guidance system

When the vehicle speed is lower than 30km/h, the reverse with track guidance function will automatically memorize the driving path in the background. The user can also click to enter the tracking reversing interface for path memory. When the vehicle stops, the user clicks the reverse with track guidance start button, and the system will control the vehicle to reverse back to the last path memory starting point along the original path.



When the reverse with track guidance is turned on, the following situations can cause to reverse and exit:

- Touch the upper left corner of the display screen to return to the button.
- During the reverse with track guidance, users will intervene with the turning wheel and the accelerator pedal.
- The system pause during reverse with track guidance exceeds 60 seconds.

When the reverse with track guidance is turned on, the following conditions will cause the reverse with track guidance to pause:

- Release the seat belt.

- The trunk door is open.
- The door is turned on.
- Obstacles are encountered during reverse with track guidance.

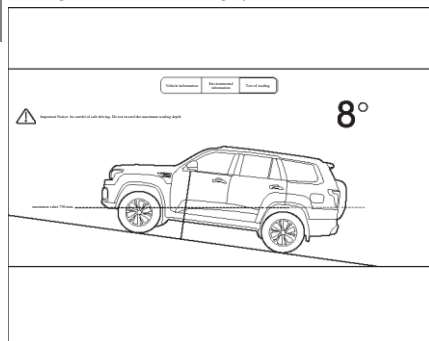
The system clears the memory path when the following conditions are met:

1. The speed is above 30km/h;
2. The turning wheel rotates by more than 450° during driving;
3. The user reverses by oneself and deviates from the original path by more than 1 m;
4. The vehicle stalls.

## System of depth detection

When the all-terrain switch is turned to the wading mode, the wading detection function is started. Under this function, the water depth value at the position below the side mirror of the vehicle can be detected and simulated. When the all-terrain switch leaves wading mode, the sounding system is turned off.

3



### Note

- **The depth detection is only a kind of driving assistance function. It is limited by working principle and has the possibility of false alarms. It cannot replace the driver in judging the safety of the vehicle.**
- **The water depth detection system only measures the water level on the vertical line between the side mirror and the flat ground. The simulated display on the vehicle screen shows the maximum water depth values detected by sensors on the left and right sides of the vehicle body;**
- **The water depth detection sensor is installed beneath the left and right side mirrors to detect the water surface by using ultrasound. In order to ensure proper function, keep the surface of the sensor clean and unobstructed. When there are dense obstacles close to each other below the sensors on both sides, it will cause false alarms of the system;**

### Note

- **In view of the low underwater visibility in water, try to control the body attitude within 10° during wading, and drive safely at a constant low speed. When the speed is > 10 km/h, the water waves or splashes generated by wading will affect the detection result.**

When any of the following conditions is satisfied, the water depth detection system will suspend working. When the conditions are resolved, the system resumes working:

1. Gradient > 15°;
2. The speed is higher than 30 km/h;
3. Side mirror folding;
4. The door is open.

## Cruise control \*

The cruise control is a system that controls the throttle by means of an electronic program and keeps the vehicle moving automatically at a constant speed. When using the cruise control function on long expressway journeys, the driver does not have to press the accelerator pedal to keep the vehicle at the set speed, thus reducing driving fatigue and improving driving comfort.

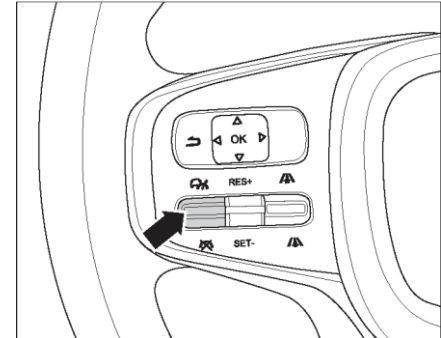
Control conditions of the cruise control:


- The speed works only when the cruise control is between 40 and 130 km/h. If the speed is not within this range, the vehicle cannot enter the cruise control.
- The gearshift handle is in "D" position.
- Failure to meet any conditions that cause the cruise control to exit (e.g., pressing the brake pedal).
- Cruise control must be selected.

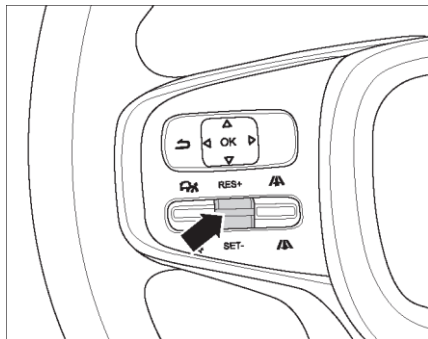
### Warning

- **Never use the cruise control in extreme weather (such as heavy fog, rain, snow, hail, etc.), slippery roads, steep slopes or bends, so as to avoid losing control of vehicle and causing accidents.**
- **The set cruising speed and distance from the vehicle in front must be adapted to the traffic conditions at that time. The cruise control is only a driving assistance system and should be used with caution.**
- **The cruise control shall be closed in time after use.**

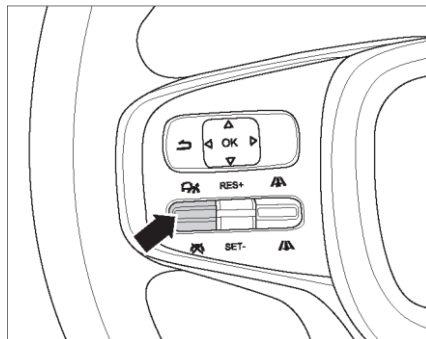
### Turn on / off the cruise control




1. Toggle the ACC switch upward to turn on the cruise control. At this time, the white cruise control indicator light in the instrument cluster lights  up;
2. Increase the speed to the initial speed of the cruise control (not less than 40km/h);

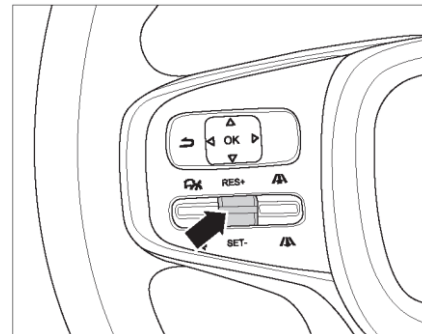


3. Toggle down the cruise control RES+/SET- button, so that the vehicle will cruise at the current speed. At this time, the green indicator light of the cruise control in the instrument cluster will light up. If the cruise control RES+/SET - button is toggled up while the speed memory is not cleared, the last memory speed cruise control will be restored;
4. Release the accelerator pedal and the vehicle will enter the cruise control state.

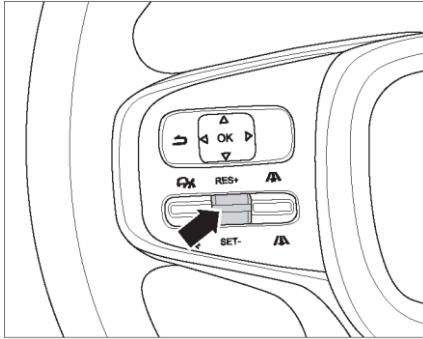


When the cruise control is turned on, toggle the ACC switch upward to exit the cruise control. At this time, the green cruise indicator light  in the instrument cluster goes out.

### Increase / Decrease Cruising Speed



1. Toggle the cruise control RES+/SET- button upward to increase the cruise target speed by 2km/h;
2. Press and hold the cruise control RES+/SET- button upward to increase the target speed by 10 km/h, but not higher than 130 km/h.

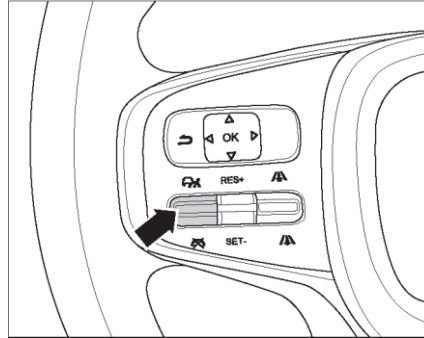



3. Toggle the cruise control RES+/SET- button downward to decrease the cruise target speed by 2 km/h;
4. Toggle the cruise control RES+/SET- button downward and hold to decrease the speed continuously but not lower than 40 km/h. Release the control handle, and the cruise control will be realized according to the newly set speed.

### Overtaking

Step on the accelerator pedal to accelerate when you need to overtaking. After the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle will gradually return to the previous set cruising speed.

### Suspension of Cruise Control




The following four operations will temporarily cancel the current cruise control, but the speed memory will not be cleared, and the white cruise control indicator light  in the instrument cluster will go on.

- Press the brake pedal.

- The transmission will shift the gear to N position.
- Toggle the ACC switch downward.
- When ESC is working.

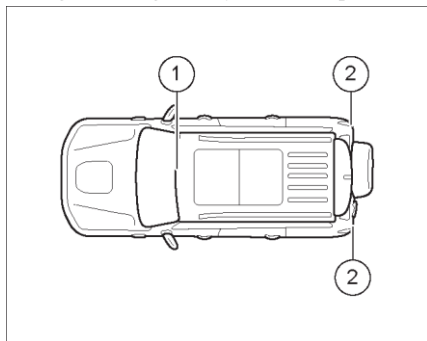
### Recovery of Cruise Control

After the cruise control is temporarily released, when the speed is higher than 40 km/h, toggle the cruise control RES+/SET- button upward, the green cruise indicator light  on the instrument cluster will go on, and the speed will return to the memory value of the last cruise control and keep speed. Toggle the cruise control RES+/SET- button downward to cruise at the current speed.

## Introduction to intelligent driving assistance

The Intelligent Driver Assistance System can actively monitor the road conditions around the vehicle and realize assistive driving.

### Intelligent driving assist system sensor position



① Front camera \*

② Rear corner mmWave sensor sensor \*



Note

- If the front windshield window or bumper needs to be replaced, please send the vehicle to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV. This ensures proper handling, installation and mmWave sensor of the camera. Otherwise, some functions of the intelligent driving assist may fail.
- To ensure that the various components of the Intelligent Driver Assistance system provide the most accurate information possible, they shall be kept clean, unobstructed and undamaged. Occasionally, wipe the parts, and bumper and windshield on the outside of the parts with a piece of soft cloth that is dipped in warm water, so as to remove dirt and ice on them.
- Do not use corrosive or abrasive cleaning agents.
- Do not clean the camera lens with sharp or abrasive objects to avoid scratching or damaging the lens.



Note

- Do not use high-pressure cleaner.



Note

Special precautions for the use of mmWave sensor sensor:

According to the Provisional Regulations on the Management of Automotive Sensor Sensor Radio, in order to protect radio astronomy services operating in the same frequency band, it is prohibited to use automotive sensor sensor in the frequency band 76-79 HZ within the vicinity of the radio observatory site. The specific locations and prohibited scope are as follows:

- The radio observatory at Xiaoyematan, Zelinggou, Xuji Township, Delingha City, Haixi Mongol and Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture, Qinghai Province is 26 km from the automotive sensor sensor.

 Note

- The radio observatories are located at No.1703, Jiujiang Highway, Songjiang District, Shanghai; Sheshan Town, Songjiang District of Shanghai; and Bulaotun Town, Miyun District of Beijing. And the protective distance against intervention between them and the automotive sensor sensor are 3 km.
- The radio observatory locates at Gangou Township, Urumqi County, Urumqi City, Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region, the protective distance against intervention between which and the automotive sensor sensor is 5 km.
- The radio observatory locates in Shihezi Village, Qitai County, Changji Hui Autonomous Prefecture, Xinjiang Uygur Autonomous Region, the protective distance against intervention between which and the automotive sensor sensor is 15 km.
- The radio observatory located at Djuanhu Lake, Ailaoshan Nature Reserve, Jingdong Yi Autonomous County, Pu'er City, Yunnan Province, is 10 kilometers from the automotive sensor sensor.

## ACC\*

The function of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is based on conventional fixed speed cruise control, using a front camera to detect the vehicle in front and actively control the vehicle's driving speed for the purpose of automatic following cruise control. Depending on whether there is a vehicle ahead, the system will automatically switch between cruise control and ACC.

With ACC, your vehicle can follow and cruise with the front vehicle within the range of 0-150km/h, and cruise at a constant speed within the range of 30-150km/h. You can also set the time gap between the subject vehicle and the front vehicle.

 Warning

- ACC is not a safety system, obstacle detector, or collision warning system. Rather, it is a comfort system. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and take full responsibility for the vehicle.

 Warning

- The trailer degrades the dynamic performance of the ACC system.
- ACC can assist the driver, but cannot replace the driver in driving. Even if the ACC system is in the active state, the driver must drive carefully and obey the traffic rules.
- ACC system is suitable for use on expressway and good road conditions. It is not suitable for use on complicated urban or mountainous roads.
- The ACC system will automatically control the vehicle as the target moves within 90 s after following the target ahead. At this time, the driver shall observe the surroundings of the vehicle in real time to ensure that there are no obstacle or other traffic participants that may cause a collision.
- The performance of ACC system will degrade to a certain extent when the camera is blocked or malfunctioned.

 Warning

- Due to the complexity of real-time traffic, roads, weather, etc., the camera cannot guarantee correct detection in all conditions. Please turn off the ACC function and drive carefully in bad conditions.
- The driver needs to adjust the following distance according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain, snow, etc.) and set the ACC system properly. The driver need to monitor the vehicle in real-time and ensure its safety.
- Do not use ACC system in extreme weathers (such as heavy fog, rain, snow, hail, etc.), on slippery roads, on steep slopes or on curves.
- The system does not have enough time to reduce the relative speed in some cases (the relative speed of the vehicle in front is too large, the lane change is too fast or the safe distance is too small, etc.). The driver needs to respond appropriately in this situation.

 Warning

- For safety reasons, ACC system cannot be activated when ESC function is not turned on.
- The ACC system can apply the braking force of about 40% of the brake capacity. After the ACC system is turned on, if the distance from the vehicle in front of you is too short, a takeover request alarm will be triggered, and the instrument cluster will send a continuous alarm. The driver must take over the control of the vehicle immediately and take collision avoidance measures to avoid danger.
- The ACC system cannot generate audio or visual warning in every situation. It is the driver's responsibility to keep a distance from the vehicle in front. The drivers shall maintain an appropriate distance based on environmental conditions.
- When the ACC system is working, if the driver presses the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver. The distance control function of the ACC system will be inhibited.

 Warning

- The ACC system only works on vehicle travelling in the same direction ahead of the lane. It does not work on oncoming, crossing, stationary or slow-moving vehicle, and does not work on pedestrians, animals and other objects on the road.
- If the vehicle on which the ACC system is turned on is too close to the vehicle in the adjacent lane (or the vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to the lane of the ACC vehicle), it is possible that the ACC system will react to the vehicle and brake.
- Do not use ACC system when driving on unpaved or dirt roads.
- If the vehicle in front suddenly brake (emergency stop), the ACC system will be unable to respond or react too slowly to the vehicle in front, resulting in the risk of late brake. In this case, the driver does not receive a takeover request.



### ⚠ Warning

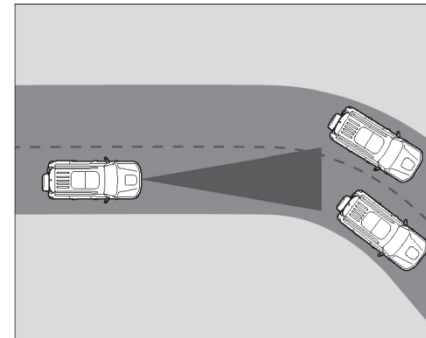
- The ACC system is limited by the limitations of the camera, and may brake unnecessarily or not when necessary. Therefore, if there is a need for immediate braking, the driver is responsible for taking proactive braking measures.
- During the theme switching process, the instrument interface cannot display the ACC system state and related prompt alarm information. Please keep an eye on the vehicle and road conditions, and take over the control of the vehicle in time when necessary.
- It may be difficult for the driver to see the message on the instrument under strong sunlight or when he / she is wearing sunglasses. It may be difficult to hear the warning sound from the instrument when opening the windows, driving at high speeds, or when the sound of the in car entertainment system is too loud. The driver needs to always pay attention to the vehicle driving state and road conditions, timely take over the control of the vehicle.

### ⚠ Warning

- When the ACC is activated, the instrument will display the situation of the vehicle in front and adjacent lanes, which may be different from the actual situation. You must keep a real-time view of the vehicle and the real road, and take full responsibility for driving safely.

### Problems of detection

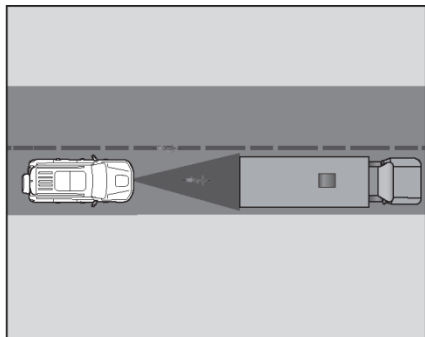
The front camera may not be able to detect the target vehicle or detect it later in the following situations:



#### 1. Driving on a curve

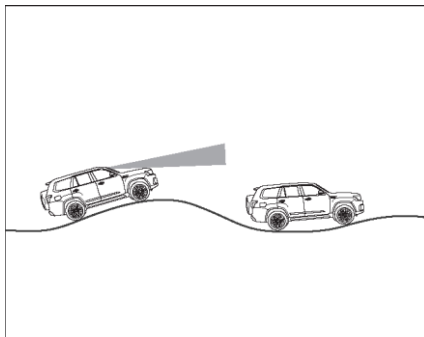
When a vehicle is driving through a curve, the front camera may not be able to detect the vehicle in front of its lane or the vehicle of the adjacent lane.

3



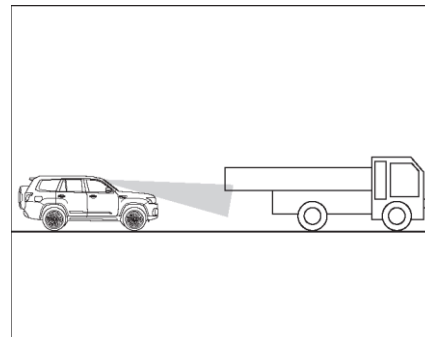
### 2. Narrow vehicles ahead

The front camera may not be able to detect narrow vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.



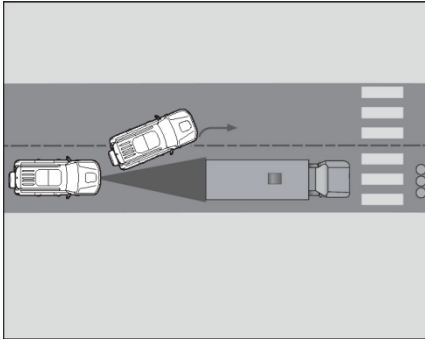
### 3. Slope

When the vehicle enters the slope, the front camera may not be able to detect the vehicle ahead.



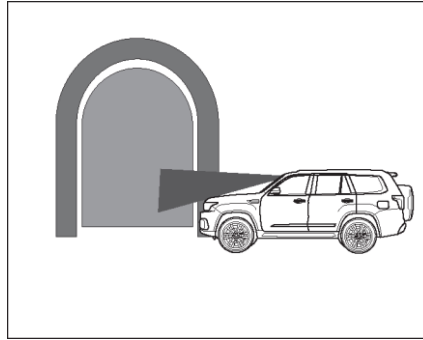
### 4. Vehicle equipped with special goods/equipment

The front camera cannot detect items or accessories loaded on the front vehicle beyond its body sides, rear ends, or roof. If the vehicle in front is equipped with the above-mentioned special articles or accessories, the driver shall be alert when such vehicle are exceeded. If necessary, emergency measures shall be taken and ACC function shall be temporarily turned off.



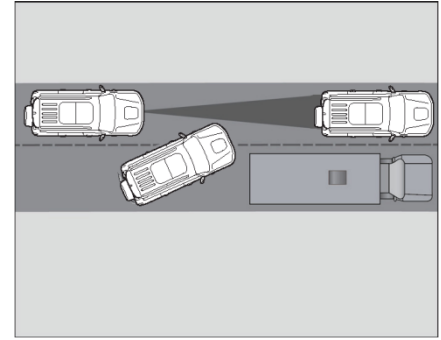
#### 5. Stationary vehicle ahead

The front camera cannot reliably identify stationary vehicles ahead.



#### 6. Drive through the tunnel

The front camera sensor may not work properly when the vehicle is driving in the tunnel. Please drive carefully.



#### 7. Other vehicles change lanes

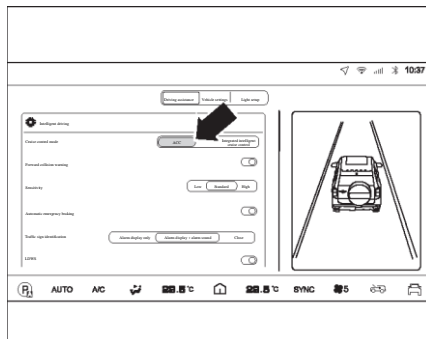
When a vehicle in an adjacent lane merges into your lane, the front camera sensor may not be able to detect the vehicle if it is not in front detection range, resulting in delayed ACC response.

**i Hint**

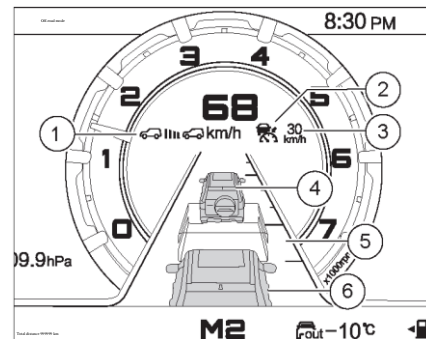
- The system may brake with noises when ACC is working. This phenomenon is normal, please rest assured.

**👁 Note**

- ACC system can cause brake during operation when brake is not needed or when you do not intend to brake. This may be caused by the detection of vehicle or objects in the adjacent lane, especially on curves.
- The ACC function cannot cover all driving scenarios, traffic, weather and road conditions. Even if the ACC is in active state, the driver must drive carefully and obey traffic rules. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.



**Turn On/Off ACC**

The cruise control mode can be selected by the infotainment screen: ACC/integrated intelligent cruise control. Select ACC.

**Starting interface:**

① Set the time interval for following the vehicle, divided into four gears

② ACC indicator light

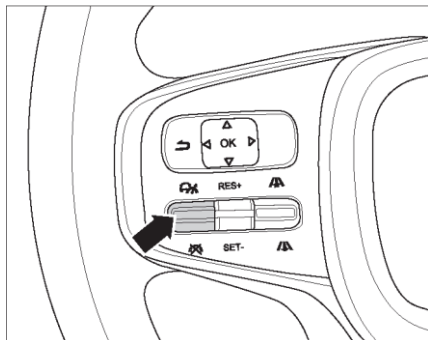
In case of standby state, the ACC standby indicator light (white) will light  up; After ACC is activated, ACC indicator light  (green) goes on.

③ Set cruising speed


④ The preceding vehicle is recognized, and the preceding vehicle is highlighted when ACC is activated

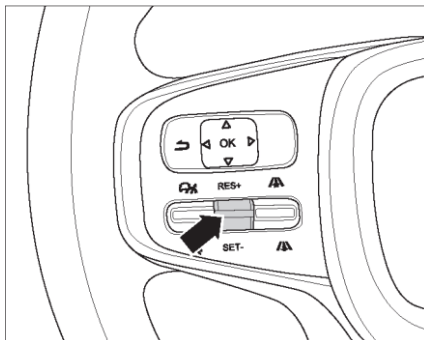
⑤ Recognized distance from the front vehicle

⑥ Subject vehicle


**Turn on/off/exit ACC**

When the cruise control mode is set to ACC in the settings of infotainment screen:

- When the ACC is turned off, toggle the ACC switch upward to turn it on. At this time, the white ACC indicator light  in the instrument cluster goes on, and the ACC enters the standby state.
- When the ACC is turned on, toggle the ACC switch upward to turn it off.

**Activate ACC**

When the ACC is in the ON state and the system meets the activation conditions, toggle the cruise control RES+ key up or the SET- key up to activate the ACC.

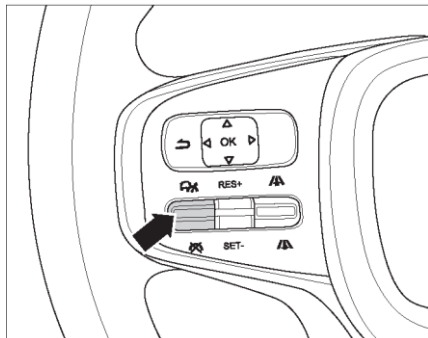
At this moment, if the current speed is  $\geq 30$  km/h, the current speed will be set as the target speed; If the current speed is  $\leq 30$  km/h, set 30 km/h as target speed. At this time, the green ACC indicator light in the instrument cluster lights  up and the ACC is activated.

**i Hint**

After the ACC is turned on, it shall normally work only when the following conditions are satisfied:

- Set cruise control mode to ACC in infotainment screen settings.
- The gear position is in D position.
- The engine is in operating state.
- No EPB is applied.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The ESC switch is not turned off.
- The vehicle runs stably and the EPB system is not involved.
- The brake temperature is not too hot due to frequent brake.
- All doors are closed, including the bonnet and liftgate.
- The driver's seat belt is not unlatched.
- $0 \leq \text{Ego speed} \leq 150$  km/h.

## Cancel ACC



When ACC is activated, toggle down the ACC switch that will cancel the ACC; and when ACC is not fully turned off, toggle up the RES+ key and restore it.

 Hint

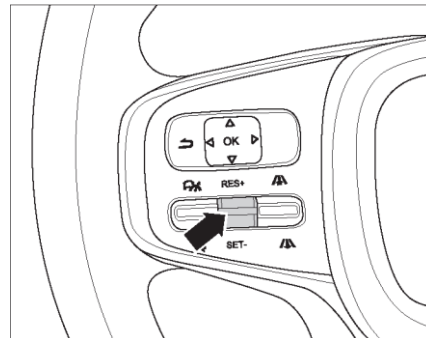
- When ACC state is activated, by toggling down the ACC switch with the turning wheel, exit ACC; Toggle the ACC switch upward from the turning wheel to turn it off.

 Hint

ACC will automatically exit if:

- The vehicle following stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The vehicle slips backward after car-following stops.
- The driver continuously pressed the accelerator pedal to accelerate for more than 15 minutes.
- Activation of ABS, ESC, etc.
- Other activation conditions are not satisfied.

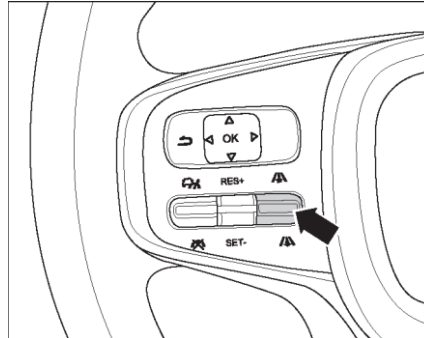
## Increase/decrease target speed



After the ACC is turned on, toggle up the cruise control RES+ key so that the cruising speed increases at a rate of 5 km/h. For the first time to toggle up the cruise control RES+ key, increase the target speed close to multiple of 5 (for example, 43 km/h increases to 45 km/h); Long press and hold the cruise control RES+ button upward to increase the target speed by 1 km/h/s. The instrument displays updated target speed information in real time.

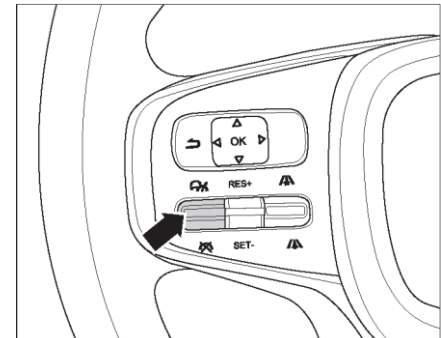
After ACC is turned on, toggle the cruise control RES+ button downward to decrease the target speed by 5km/h. Toggle the cruise control RES+ button downward for the first time to decrease the target speed to the nearest multiple of 5 (for example, 43km/h will be decreased to 40km/h); Press and hold the cruise control RES+ button down to decrease the target speed by 1 km/h/s. The instrument displays updated target speed information in real time.

### Headway adjustment



In the ACC activation state, push the following distance adjustment button upward to decrease the headway, and push the following distance adjustment button downward to increase the headway. The headway setup has 4 gear positions.

### Restore ACC



After ACC exits, pull up the cruise control RES+ key to reactivate ACC according to the target speed previously set.

### Vehicle follow-up stop/start

The ACC system can control the vehicle to stop with the front vehicle under normal driving conditions. If the stop time is within 90 seconds, the vehicle can automatically follow the front vehicle to start.

If the vehicle stops within 10 minutes, the driver is required to step on the accelerator pedal or toggle down the ACC switch to reactivate ACC.

If the vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC system will enter the standby state with the EPB function started.

### Active acceleration/deceleration during the use of ACC system

When ACC is in the activation state, press the accelerator pedal so that the vehicle accelerates continuously. On obtaining the desired speed, release the accelerator pedal. If the speed is greater than 150 km/h or the time for constantly pressing the accelerator pedal lasts for more than 15 minutes, the system will enter the standby state when ACC should be reactivated.

When ACC is in the activation state, press the brake pedal and the vehicle decelerates continuously. The ACC system will enter the standby state automatically. After releasing the brake pedal, ACC needs to be reactivated.

#### **i** Hint

- **When the driver steps down the accelerator pedal to accelerate actively, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver and the ACC will not be activated.**

### Fault handling

When the system is detected a malfunction, the cruise control state indicator light on the instrument turns to yellow.

The front camera is obscured:

If the fault on the front windshield window surface at the front camera cannot be eliminated automatically for a long time after cleaning, please go to the dealership of BAIC Motor for troubleshooting.

Function limited:

If the fault occurs, and the fault reminder cannot be eliminated automatically for a long time, and the fault still exists after restarting the vehicle, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair.

Please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to have the ACC system professionally calibrated in the following cases:

- Remove or reinstall front camera and front windshield window.
- External forces or other factors may cause unstable fixation or abnormal position of the front camera.
- ACC performance degradation (e.g., abnormally short distances to targets or frequent misidentification of vehicles in the next lane, etc.)
- Abnormal PAB function (such as frequent false alarms or brake, etc.).



**IACC \***

Please read and familiarize yourself with all of this chapter before using IACC.

IACC (IACC) provides longitudinal and lateral assistance of the vehicle to the driver in the full speed range.

Longitudinal assistance is realized by ACC, which controls the vehicle to follow the front vehicle within the speed range of 0~150km/h, and cruise at a constant speed within the range of 30~150km/h, or set the time gap between the subject vehicle and the front vehicle.

IACC operates at a speed of 0 to 150km/h. IACC performs turning-assisted control by identifying clear lane marking on both sides of the lane. At this time, IACC is in lane marking control mode. The instrument IACC icon is shown in green and the lane marking is shown in green.

 **Warning**

- **The IACC cannot cover all driving scenarios, traffic, weather and road conditions. Even though the system is in the activated state, the driver must drive carefully and obey the traffic rules, maintain control of the vehicle at all times and assume full responsibility for the vehicle.**
- **The IACC is a driving assistance function, which may be restricted frequently to exit. Therefore, the driver should always hold the turning wheel in hand, and must not drive with hands off.**
- **The IACC is not a collision avoidance system, and the driver shall intervene timely in the event of an emergency.**

 **Note**

IACC may incorrectly detect lane marking or fail to detect lane marking, or may incorrectly detect targets ahead or fail to detect targets ahead. Although the system is turned on under the following conditions, it may not work:

- **Poor camera vision, such as rain, snow, fog and other bad weathers;**
- **The windshield window is foggy, dirty or the front of the camera is blocked;**
- **The camera is too hot;**
- **Dazzling and self-dazzling camera caused by direct sunlight, oncoming traffic and water accumulation;**
- **Sudden changes in environmental brightness, such as access to tunnel;**
- **The system finds that the driver has no operational turning wheel for a period of time;**

 Note

- The lane marking is damaged, illegible or invisible, or the lane marking is indistinguishable from the road color, or the lane marking is covered with dirt, snow, etc.;
- Sudden increase or decrease in the number of lanes;
- Barrier strips or other objects on both sides of the road cast shadows on the lane marking;
- The markings on the left and right sides of the lane for the moving vehicle should not exceed two;
- Marking changes in a short time, such as ramps and expressway exits;
- Running on a curve with too small radius of curvature;
- The lane width is too wide or too narrow;
- Vehicle lane change;
- ABS and ESC activation;
- Too high vehicle yaw rate;

 Note

- The driver gets involved when the system is working;
- Activation of APA system;
- The driver's accelerator pedal rate or turning wheel angular rate is too high or the brake pedal is pressed.

 Hint

- The longitudinal control of IACC system shall be based on ACC. For limited working conditions, please refer to ACC content.
- The system may brake with noises during IACC operation. This phenomenon is normal, please rest assured.

 Note

- During operation, the system may cause the vehicle to brake when braking is not required or when you do not intend to brake. This may be caused by the detection of vehicle or objects in the adjacent lane, especially on curves.

 Note

It is not recommended to use IACC in the following cases:

- Worn and missing lane marking;
- Unclear lane markings, such as crossing or converging;
- Low visibility and harsh weather conditions, such as backlighting, sunset, rain, sleet, foggy, slippery and waterlogged roads;
- Edges such as curbs, joints, shadows or obstacle near the driveway;

 Note

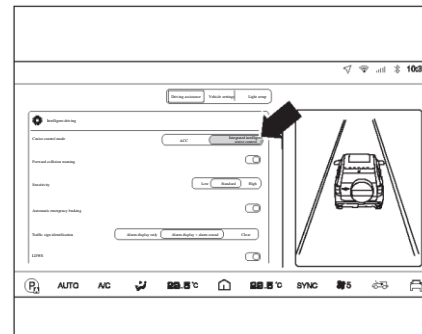
- Intense driving vehicle on unpaved roads;
- Driving in complicated traffic environments such as urban areas, intersections, construction sites, and in situations such as mountainous roads, undulating roads, expressway entrances and exits, etc.
- Strong magnetic fields will interfere with the response of the EPS. Do not place objects with strong magnetic properties near EPS. When the vehicle is in a strong magnetic environment for a long time, please pay attention to the vehicle of EPS turning auxiliary performance, do not use IACC, and go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV immediately for inspection and repair;
- When the trailer is vehicle.

 Note

The control function or performance of the IACC system may not be guaranteed under the following circumstances:

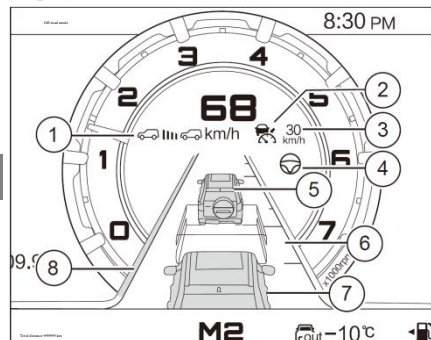
- Vehicle overload;
- When the vehicle tire pressure is too high or too low, but not necessarily conforms to the alarm state;
- The road is bumpy and uneven;
- There is strong crosswind;
- Sharp turn or narrow road;
- The components and parts related to vehicle control are not original matching parts or have been retrofitted.

### Turn On/Off Intelligent Cruise Control Assist





The cruise control mode can be selected by the infotainment screen: In ACC/integrated intelligent cruise, select integrated intelligent cruise.

### Display interface




① Set the time interval for following the vehicle, divided into four gears

② ACC indicator light

In case of standby state, the ACC standby indicator light (white) will light  up; After ACC is activated, ACC indicator light  (green) goes on.

③ Set cruising speed

④ Indication for the IACC state. When both the longitudinal and lateral controls are activated, the green indicator light  is turned on, and it turns to white in standby mode.

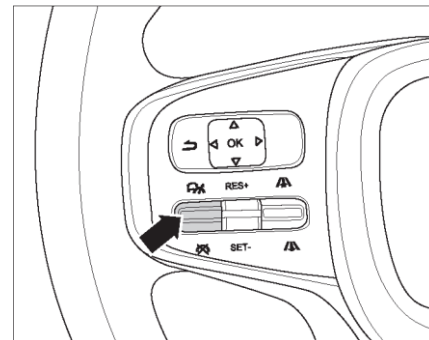
⑤ The preceding vehicle is identified and the preceding vehicle is highlighted when ACC is activated

⑥ Recognized distance from the front vehicle



⑦ The vehicle

⑧ Lane marking. When the lane marking is visible, the IACC is moving along the lane in the center

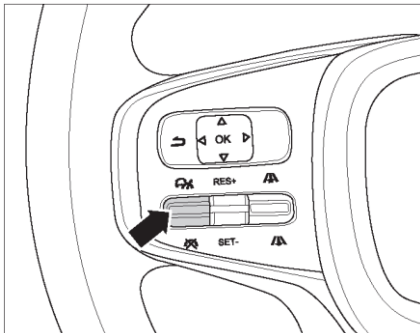
### Turn on/off/exit IACC





When cruise control mode is set to Integrated Smart cruise control in infotainment screen settings:

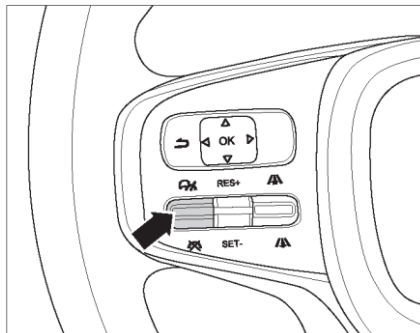
When the IACC is turned off, toggle the cruise control auxiliary switch upward to turn on the IACC. Meanwhile, the white ACC indicator light  and white lateral control indicator light  on the instrument cluster goes on, and the integrated intelligent cruise control system enters the standby state.

### Activate IACC



When the integrated intelligent cruise control is in the ON state and the system meets the activation conditions, first activate the IACC by toggling up the cruise control auxiliary switch. At this time, if the current speed is  $\geq 30$  km/h, set the current speed as the target speed; If the current speed is  $\leq 30$  km/h, set 30 km/h as target speed. The green ACC indicator light  in the instrument cluster goes on and the ACC is activated. Toggle the ACC switch upward again, and the green lateral control indicator light  on the instrument cluster goes on, and the IACC function is activated.

### Recover IACC



After the IACC is downgraded to ACC, the IACC will be automatically reactivated when the activation conditions are met. After IACC exits, push the RES+ key upward to activate IACC.

### Take over

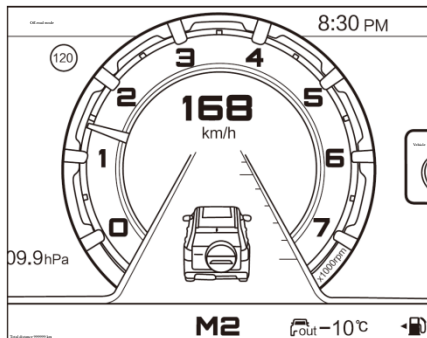
When the IACC detects that a driver's hands are off the turning wheel, the system will send a prompt, indicating "Hold your turning wheel and drive carefully." If the driver does not respond in time, the system will issue a takeover request "Please take over the turning wheel, drive carefully."

The driver shall immediately brake in an appropriate manner and hold the turning wheel, after receiving the takeover request. Do not panic or fiercely spin the wheel. When the IACC system detects that the user is operating the turning wheel, it will automatically reactivate the lateral assist function.

IACC system have limited brake capability, and when the system needs driver to intervene in the brake, the instrument will also display "Please take over."

### Speed limit sign identification system \*

Speed sign recognition system (TSR) uses camera to detect the speed limit on the road or beside the road and display it on the dashboard to help driver observe the speed limit.

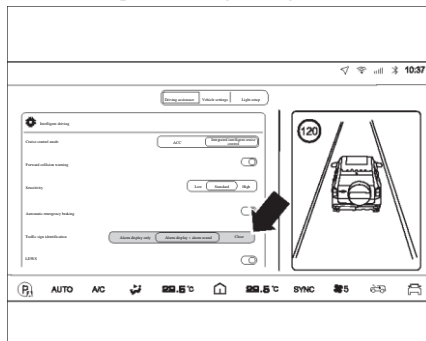


3

#### Note

- **TSR is a driving assistance function and cannot be applied to all driving situations. You must maintain control of your vehicle, drive carefully and take full responsibility for maintaining a safe and legal speed. If a third-party navigation is used, the TSR will not be able to read the speed from the navigation unit.**

#### Turn on/off speed limit sign recognition



The user can turn on/off the speed limit sign recognition function through the infotainment screen and set the alarm method.

After the vehicle passes the speed limit sign, the instrument will display the speed limit information within a certain driving distance. After the vehicle passes the speed limit cancellation sign, the instrument will display the speed limit cancellation message (does not display the specific number). If the cancel sign and the speed limit value of the next section appear at the same time, the speed limit value will be displayed directly.

#### Note

- **TSR detection performance is affected by weather, illumination, and position lamp restrictions on road signs.**

TSR detection will be limited in the following situations:

- Tilted/damaged signs.
- Signs on the curve.
- Signs that are completely/partially obscured or improperly placed.
- Signs covered by ice, snow or thick dust.

- Signs beyond the camera's vision.
- Environments with poor vision such as rain/snow/fog.
- Insufficient lighting at night.
- Vehicle driving in backlight.

### Warning

- **The above examples do not cover all the situations that affect the normal operation of the TSR, and many reasons may cause the TSR to be unable to issue an alarm. Do not rely solely on the TSR to drive the vehicle. Always drive within safe speed according to traffic and road conditions.**

### Hint

- **Improper repair of the windshield window may cause position change of the camera, which may affect the function of TSR. Therefore, repair work must be conducted by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**

## Lane assist system \*

### LDWS \*

The LDWS (LDW) detects lane markings through the camera. When it detects that the vehicle deviates from the lane and the driver has no intention to change lanes, the system sends visual and audible alarms to warn the driver that the vehicle is deviating from the lane. Drivers are advised to drive with caution.

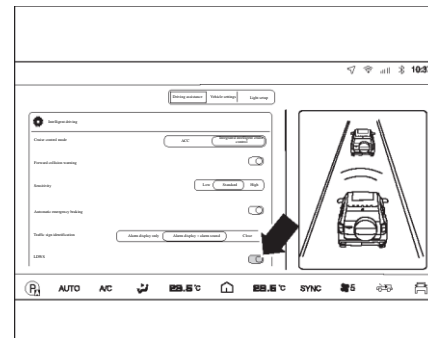
### Note


- **This function only serves as an auxiliary warning and cannot replace the driver's control.**
- **Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection when the system is prompted.**
- **In case of road construction, water accumulation, cracks or unclear markings, this function may send false alarms and fail to alarm. Drivers are advised to drive with caution.**
- **When the camera is covered by rain, mud, ice, etc., this function may generate false alarms and miss alarm. Please drive carefully and keep the camera area clean.**

### Note

- **When in environments such as night, rain, snow, fog, shadows, etc., this function may cause false alarms or missed alarms. Please drive carefully.**

### Turn on/off LDWS



Users may turn on/off the LDWS function with the infotainment screen, and select its alarm method and alarm sensitivity. When the system is turned on, the instrument cluster LDWS indicator light  will illuminate.

When the vehicle is started, the LDW switch is in the ON state, and the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, the LDW function is activated.

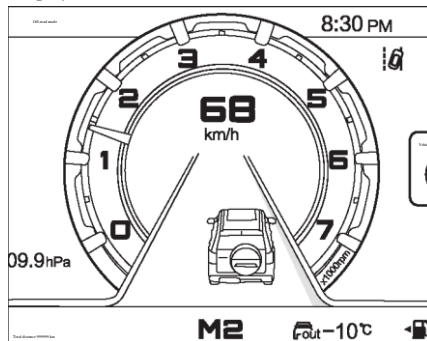
When the LDWS is activated, you can exit if you meet one of the following conditions:

- The speed is less than 55 km/h or the speed is greater than 150 km/h.
- ABS or ESC function is activated.
- Turn off the LDWS switch in the infotainment screen settings.
- The lane marking on both sides are not visible and are too wide or narrow.

### Hint

- **When the vehicle is in the backlight, glare, etc., the LDWS function may exit for a short time, or there may be false alarm or missing alarm. After a period of time, the system will automatically recover. Please driver to drive carefully.**

Display interface



The display state of lane marking identification and system interface are as follows:

- The lane marking is not displayed when it is unrecognized.
- The lane marking is white when it is identified and the vehicle is not deviated.
- The lane marking is red when it is identified and the vehicle deviates.

### LDW sensitivity

The LDW sensitivity is divided into three levels: Low, standard, high.

Conditions for LDW trigger suppression:

- The turning indicator light is turned on when the vehicle deviates.
- ESC or ABS intervene.
- Crossing lane marking quickly and continuously.
- Driving on the line.
- Merger.
- Forced brake.
- Sharp turning (excessive turning rate).
- Press the accelerator sharply.



**LKAS\***

The lane keeping assist system (LKAS) uses camera to detect lane marking to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle in its lane by applying turning intervention when it detects that a driver is about to deviate from its lane and has no intention of changing lanes.


 **Note**

- **This function is only auxiliary and cannot replace the control of driver. When using this function, the driver shall always pay attention, hold the turning wheel, and be ready to make turning corrections or take over the vehicle at any time, otherwise it may cause injury or property damage.**
- **The function does not work when the camera is covered by rain, snow, mud and ice. The driver must drive carefully and keep the camera area clean.**
- **When in environments such as night, rain, snow, fog, shadows, etc., this function may malfunction or not work. Please drive carefully.**

 **Note**

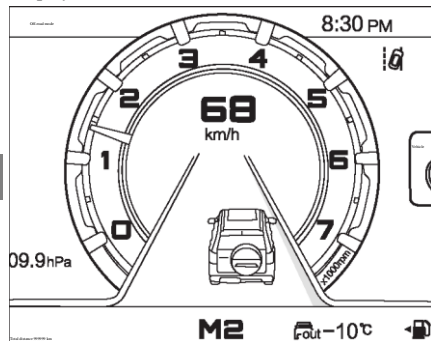
- **When the camera cannot detect the lane marking ahead due to road construction, water accumulation, cracks or unclear markings, this function does not work. Drivers are advised to drive with caution.**
- **The function may malfunction or not work when encountering situations where lanes are added or merged. Drivers are advised to drive with caution.**
- **In case of intersection or traffic jam, the function may work incorrectly or not. Please driver to drive carefully.**
- **Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection when the system is prompted.**
- **When the vehicle tire pressure is too high or too low, but not at the alarm state, the LKA may be unusable or degraded.**
- **When the components and parts related to vehicle control are accessories from the non-original manufacturer or being retrofitting, the LKA function may be unavailable or degrade.**

## Turn on/off LKAS

Users can turn on/off the LKAS function through the infotainment screen, and select its alarm method and alarm sensitivity. When the system is turned on, the instrument cluster LKAS indicator light  will go on.

When the vehicle is started, the LKA is in the on state, and the speed is greater than 60 km/h, the LKA function is activated.

## Display interface



The display state of lane marking identification and system interface are as follows:

- The lane marking is not displayed when it is unrecognized.
- The lane marking is white when it is identified and the vehicle is not deviated.
- The lane marking is red when it is identified and the vehicle deviates.
- The lane marking is green when the lane marking is identified and turning intervention is activated.

When LKA is active, it exits when one of the following conditions is met:

- The speed is less than 55 km/h or the speed is greater than 150 km/h.
- ABS or ESC function is activated.
- Turn off the lane keeping assist switch in the infotainment screen setting
- The lane markings on both sides are not visible, or the lane is too wide/narrow.

### i Hint

- **When the vehicle is in backlight, glare or other environmental states, the LDA may exit for a short time, or false alarms or failure to alarm may occur. After a period of time, the system will recover automatically. Drivers are advised to drive with caution.**

## LKA sensitivity

The LKA sensitivity is divided into three levels: Low, standard, high.

Conditions for LKA trigger suppression:

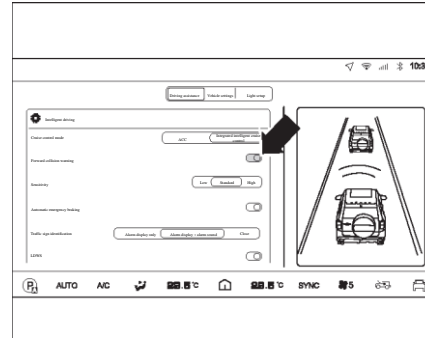
- The turning indicator light is turned on when the vehicle deviates.
- ESC or ABS intervene.
- Crossing lane marking quickly and continuously.
- Driving on the line.
- Merger.
- Forced brake.
- Sharp turning (excessive turning rate).
- Press the accelerator sharply.

## Vehicle active security

### FCW \*

The FCW detects vehicle and pedestrian targets by cameras. When a potential risk of collision between the subject vehicle and the vehicle in front, pedestrians or other objects is detected, the system will visual, audible or inching braking are used for pre-alarm, and the driver should take appropriate actions in time to ensure safe driving distance.

#### Turn on/off FCW



Users can set the FCW feature on/off, and FCW sensitivity in the infotainment screen.

#### FCW

The FCW contains pre-alarm and emergency alarm functions.

#### Pre-alarm

During driving, when there is a risk of collision between the subject vehicle and the preceding vehicle, the system will pre-alarm visually and audibly, and the instrument cluster will prompt information. The driver should take appropriate actions in time to ensure safe driving distance.

#### Emergency alarm

After the pre-alarm, if the driver is still unresponsive, the emergency alarm will be triggered, and the system will apply a short brake. In some emergency situations, the pre-alarm can be skipped and the emergency alarm can be triggered directly. If the camera fails, the emergency alarm will not be triggered.

The operating speed of the FCW is about 30 to 150 km/h.

 Warning

- Improperly retrofitted vehicles (such as reducing the ground clearance, changing the front license plate, etc.) may degrade performance for the FCW or increase the false triggering rate.
- Due to inherent limitations of the system, the FCW may generate misidentification of vehicles and pedestrians in some complex work conditions, causing unnecessary alarms and brake intervention. The driver must drive carefully.
- The FCW is an auxiliary function for the driver. Do not take risks in driving with the extra convenience provided by the FCW. This function is not a substitute for the driver's attention to traffic. If the FCW function issues an alarm, the driver must apply the brakes to slow down or steer to avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

 Warning

- Improper maintenance may cause misalignment of the sensor and affect the normal operation of the system.
- In the event of an emergency alarm, the system will not continue to trigger the AEB if the driver is alerted (e.g. the driver swings the turning wheel or applies the emergency brake).
- The FCW cannot guarantee that collision will be avoided under all circumstances. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and take full responsibility for it.
- The FCW is working state in the background, will not be detected by the driver, if the front vehicle is detected by the system will not display to the driver.
- Heavy rain, mist, ice or sludge may weaken the performance of the camera. Please keep the camera clean so as not to interfere with normal operation.


 Warning

- If the camera is obscured by bird droppings, dirt, ice, insects, etc., the PAB may not work. Therefore, it is strictly prohibited to repair the windshield window near the camera (side mirror position). If there are cracks, the camera recognition effect will be affected, and the whole front windshield window must be replaced.
- It is always the driver's responsibility to apply the brake quickly and timely.
- The performance of FCW system will be greatly limited for targets that are cut in, detected only after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in sharp turning roads.
- When the system is affected by the environment (such as underground parking lot, tunnel, bridge, road track, construction area, width and height limit gate, etc.), the detection will be disturbed, and the PAB performance will be reduced or the false triggering rate will be increased.


 Warning

The FCW is only a driver assistance function, and there is a risk that the pedestrian cannot be recognized due to limitation of objective conditions:

- Special targets such as non-moving pedestrians.
- Pedestrians being blocked, or in mild contrast with the environmental background, or in rainy, snowy, foggy and low illuminance environment.
- Pedestrians carry large objects or wear clothes that make their outline unclear.

 Warning

- When loading goods, do not make the compartment exceed the full weight and allowable weight of the front and rear axles. Otherwise, vehicle damage or casualties may occur.

 Warning

For pedestrians:

- When the system detects pedestrians by identifying the following accurate information: the pedestrian's head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body and the pedestrian's normal movement form. The outline of the body must be clearly visible and in contrast with the background.

 Hint

The FCW may not work when:

- When the FCW is turned off or the system fails.
- Severe brake by the driver.
- The system considers that the collision danger has been eliminated.
- Instability of vehicle.
- System initialization.

 Hint

- Instrument failure.
- The gear position is not in D.
- The speed is beyond the operating speed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- Active turning by driver.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal sharply.
- The powertrain is shut down.
- Manual shutdown of ESC or ESC fails.
- When the front camera is dirty or covered.
- Drive in snowy or rainstorm days.
- Drive with narrow vehicle (e.g. motorcycle) ahead.
- There are vehicles driving on both sides.
- In case of cross-running vehicle.

**i Hint**

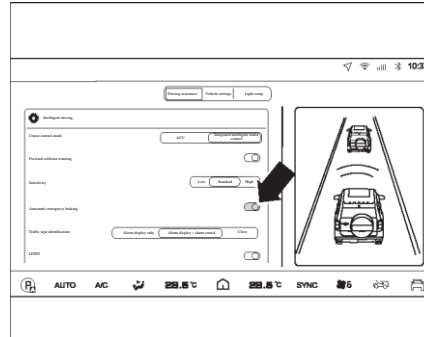
- There is a stationary obstacle ahead (e.g., vehicle at anchor).
- There is an oncoming vehicles coming.
- Failure of all brake lights, etc.

3

**i Hint**

The FCW must be shut down in the following cases:

- The vehicle is towed.
- The vehicle is on a drum test bench.
- The front camera has failed.

**AEB \*****Turn on/off automatic emergency braking**

Users can set the automatic emergency braking function on/off in the infotainment screen.

If a danger of collision with a vehicle or pedestrian ahead is detected and is very urgent, and if the driver has applied the brake but the braking force is insufficient, the brake system will provide the remaining braking force to achieve the optimum target braking force to avoid or mitigate the injuries caused by the collision; If the driver fails to apply the brake, the system will automatically apply braking force within its capabilities to avoid or mitigate the damage caused by a collision.

The AEB works at about 5 to 130 km/h for vehicle targets and 5 to 80 km/h for pedestrians and two-wheelers.

**⚠ Warning**

- **Improper retrofitted vehicle** (such as reducing the ground clearance, changing the front license plate of the vehicle, etc.) may degrade the AEB performance or increase the false triggering rate.
- **Improper maintenance** may cause misalignment of the sensor and affect the normal operation of the system.
- **In the event of an emergency alarm, the system will not continue to trigger the AEB if the driver is alerted** (e.g. the driver swings the turning wheel or applies the emergency brake).

 Warning

- Due to the inherent limitations of the system, the AEB may misidentify vehicle and pedestrians under some complex working conditions, causing unnecessary alarm and braking intervention. Please drive carefully.
- The AEB function is turned off when the ESC function is turned off or the indicator light is on.
- Automatic emergency braking is an auxiliary function for the driver. Do not take risks in driving with the extra convenience provided by the AEB. This function is not a substitute for the driver's attention to traffic. If the automatic emergency braking function issues an alarm, the driver must apply the brakes to reduce the speed or steer to avoid the obstacle, depending on the traffic situation.

 Warning

- The AEB cannot guarantee that collision will be avoided under all circumstances. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times and assume full responsibility for it.
- The AEB in the background working state will not be detected by the driver. If the front vehicle is detected by the system, it will not be displayed to the driver.
- Heavy rain, mist, ice or sludge may weaken the performance of the camera. Please keep the camera clean so as not to interfere with normal operation.
- During AEB braking, if the driver depresses the brake pedal, accelerates obviously or makes emergency turn the turning wheel, the AEB braking will be inhibited and exit.

 Warning

- If the camera is obscured by bird droppings, dirt, ice, insects, etc., the PAB may not work. Therefore, it is strictly prohibited to repair the windshield window near the camera (side mirror position). If there are cracks, the camera recognition effect will be affected, and the whole front windshield window must be replaced.
- It is always the driver's responsibility to apply the brake quickly and timely.
- When the system is affected by the environment (for example, underground stop parking, tunnels, bridges, tracks, construction areas, limited width and limited height doors, etc.), the detection will be disturbed, the AEB performance will be degraded or the false triggering rate will be increased.


 Warning

- If the AEB actively brakes to completely avoid the collision, the system will release the brake after stopping for about 1.5 seconds and the driver needs to take over control.
- AEB performance will be greatly limited for objects that cut into the target, objects detected only after the vehicle changes lanes, and objects detected in sharp turns.

 Warning

The automatic emergency braking is only a driver assistance function, and there is a risk that the following cannot be detected since the pedestrian cannot be recognized due to limitation of objective conditions

- Special targets such as non-moving pedestrians.
- Pedestrians being blocked, or in mild contrast with the environmental background, or in rainy, snowy, foggy and low illuminance environment.

 Warning

- Pedestrians carry large objects or wear clothes that make their outline unclear.
- When loading goods, do not exceed the fully loaded mass of the carriage and allow the front and rear axles to comply, otherwise it may cause damage to the vehicle or cause injury or death accidents.

 Warning

For pedestrians:

- When the system detects pedestrians by identifying the following accurate information: the pedestrian's head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body and the pedestrian's normal movement form. The outline of the body must be clearly visible and in contrast with the background.

 Hint

The AEB may not work when:

- When the AEB is turned off or the system fails.
- Severe brake by the driver.
- The system considers that the collision danger has been eliminated.
- Instability of vehicle.
- System initialization.
- Instrument failure.
- The gear position is not in D.
- The speed is beyond the operating speed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- Active turning by driver.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal sharply.
- The powertrain is shut down.



**i Hint**

- Manual shutdown of ESC or ESC fails.
- When the front camera is dirty or covered.
- Drive in snowy or rainstorm days.
- Drive with narrow vehicle (e.g. motorcycle) ahead.
- There are vehicles driving on both sides.
- In case of cross-running vehicle.
- There is a stationary obstacle ahead (e.g., vehicle at anchor).
- There is an oncoming vehicles coming.
- Failure of all brake lights, etc.



**i Hint**

**The AEB must be shut down in the following cases:**

- The vehicle is towed.
- The vehicle is on a drum test bench.
- The front camera has failed.

**Lane change decision aid \***

The LCA detects the moving vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle and other objects behind the adjacent lane through the two corner sensors installed at the rear of the vehicle. When the collision between the objects and the subject vehicle is detected in the area behind the adjacent lane, the LCA gives an alarm to the driver of the subject vehicle in order to reduce the occurrence of side collisions and other related accidents.

In the driving process (the vehicle speed exceeding 12 km/h), when the system detects targets in the warning area of adjacent lanes, e.g. vehicle, bicycle, etc., and risks of collision judged by the corner sensor, the side mirror indicator light on the corresponding side will  light up. If the turn signal lamp on the same side is turned on at this time, the side mirror indicator light  and instrument corner sensor indicator light will flash, accompanied by audible alarm, indicating that it is dangerous to change lanes at this time.

**i Hint**

- Do not rely too much on LCA to reduce lateral collision and other related accidents. The driver must be sure to follow the road conditions and control the vehicle.

**Turn on/off parallel assistance**

The LCA can be turned on/off through the infotainment screen.

**i Hint**

The LCA function is restricted in the following cases:

- Damage or obstruction of sensor caused by sludge, ice or snow.
- Winding roads.
- The speed is lower than 10 km/h.
- Non-D position.

**i Hint**

- Damaged bumper or miscalibrated sensor.
- It is affected by other equipment that generates co-channel interference.


**i Hint**

- The LCA uses a sensor to detect an area up to about 70 M behind the adjacent lane. Road and weather conditions may adversely affect the sensor detection area. Please driver that you must drive carefully.
- The LCA can only alert the driver of the parallel risk through the alarm, which cannot completely replace the driver to monitor the traffic situation. The driver shall always be alert to the surroundings and take over control of the vehicle.
- The LCA cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles by passing through them.

**i Hint**

- The LCA may issue a warning when there is no risk of collision. Please be alert and keep an eye on the traffic state so that you can predict if any action is required.
- When the vehicle behind moves too fast or too slow, the function may not be able to send an alarm in time.
- When the function of the LCA fails, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument is always on in red or flashes in red.

**SRPA\***

When the vehicle reverses at a low speed ( $\leq 15$  km/h), the SRPA detects that there are risk of collision such as vehicle and bicycles, and the side mirror indicator light  on the corresponding side will go on to remind you of the danger of reversing.

**Turn On/Off the SRPA**

The user can turn the SRPA on/off through the infotainment screen.

**i Hint**

**The SRPA system is limited in the following situations:**

- **Damage or obstruction of sensor caused by sludge, ice or snow.**
- **Winding roads.**
- **The reverse speed is higher than 15 km/h.**
- **A larger vehicle parks behind the vehicle, blocking the sensor detection area.**
- **Damaged bumper or miscalibrated sensor.**
- **It is affected by other equipment that generates co-channel interference.**

**i Hint**

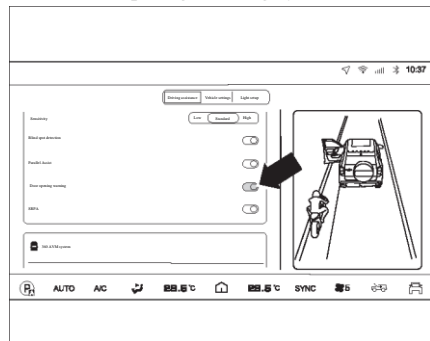
- **Road and weather conditions may adversely affect the sensor detection area. Please observe the surroundings of the vehicle during reverse.**
- **The SRPA system may issue a warning when there is no risk of collision. Please be alert and keep an eye on the traffic state so that you can predict if any action is required.**
- **The SRPA cannot detect objects behind it through other vehicle or obstacles.**
- **The SRPA can only risk of collision through the alert and collision cannot be avoided. The driver should always pay attention to the surroundings of the vehicle.**
- **When the move of the side rear target is too fast or too slow, the SRPA may not be able to give an alarm in time.**

## Open door warning \*

### Brief Introduction of the Open Door Warning system

The door opening warning system uses two sensors on the rear side to detect the rear of the vehicle at low speeds ( $\leq 3$  km/h) or in a stopped state and alert the driver, thus avoiding a collision accident due to the blind spot behind the vehicle during the opening of the door.

### Use of Door Opening Warning System



The door warning function can be turned on/off through the infotainment screen.

When the system detects approaching vehicle, bicycle or other objects in the lanes on both sides, if there is a risk of collision in the door opening, the corresponding side mirror indicator light  $\text{L}_{\text{DOW}}$  will go on. If you continue to open the door at this time, the side mirror indicator light  $\text{L}_{\text{DOW}}$  and instrument corner sensor indicator light will flash, accompanied by audible alarm, indicating that it is dangerous to open the door again.

#### **i** Hint

The door opening warning can work normally only under the following situations:

- The vehicle is in a stationary or low-speed state (speed  $\leq 3$  km/h).

#### **Eye** Note

- Obstacles recognized by the DOW function include: electromobile, tricycles, motorcycle, cars, SUVs, trucks, buses, vans and other moving objects.



#### **Eye** Note

- The obstacle speed in the DOW detection range ranges from 7.2 to 60 km/h, and the system recognition performance is limited when the speed is lower than 7.2 km/h or higher than 60 km/h.
- The system detection is limited and the target cannot be detected normally under the following conditions:
  - Damage or obstruction of sensor caused by sludge, ice or snow.
  - Winding roads.
  - The vehicle has been powered off for more than 3 minutes.
  - A larger vehicle parks behind the vehicle, blocking the sensor detection area.
- Damaged bumper or miscalibrated sensor.
- It is affected by other equipment that generates co-channel interference.

 **Warning**

- **Road and weather conditions may adversely affect the sensor detection area. The driver shall look around the vehicle before opening the door and getting off.**
- **The open door warning against collision system can only indicate risk of collision by alerts rather than avoid collision accident. The driver should always be careful about the surroundings of the vehicle.**
- **The door opening collision warning system cannot detect the objects behind it through other vehicle or obstacle.**
- **The door opening collision warning system may give warning when there is no risk of collision. Please be alert and always pay attention to the traffic situation in order to predict whether any action is required.**
- **When the rear target moves too fast or too slow, the anti-collision warning function may not give an alarm in time.**

**Blind spot monitoring \***

During driving (speed greater than 12 km/h), when the system detects a vehicle, bicycle, etc. in the blind spot of the side mirror, the corresponding side mirror indicator light  goes on. If the turn signal lamp on the same side is turned on at this time, the side mirror indicator light  and instrument corner sensor indicator light will flash, accompanied by audible alarm, indicating that it is dangerous to change lanes at this time.

 **Hint**

- **Do not rely too much on blind spot monitoring system to reduce lateral collision and other related accidents. The driver must be sure to follow the road conditions and control the vehicle.**

**Turn On/Off BSD**

Users can turn on/off the blind spot monitoring function through the infotainment screen.

 **Hint**

**The blind spot monitoring system function is restricted in the following situations:**

- **Damage or obstruction of sensor caused by sludge, ice or snow.**
- **Winding roads.**
- **The speed is lower than 10 km/h.**
- **Non-D position.**
- **Damaged bumper or miscalibrated sensor.**
- **It is affected by other equipment that generates co-channel interference.**

 **Hint**

- **The blind spot monitoring system uses a sensor to detect an area of up to 5 m behind the adjacent lane. Road and weather conditions may adversely affect the sensor detection area. Please driver that you must drive carefully.**

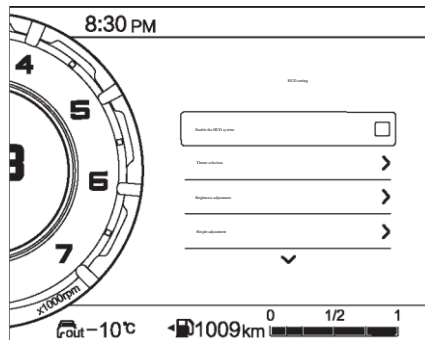
### **i** Hint

- The blind spot monitoring system can only alert the driver of the blind spot risk through alarm. It cannot completely replace the driver to monitor the traffic state. The driver should always be alert to the surroundings and take over the control vehicle in time.
- The blind spot monitoring system cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- The blind spot monitoring system may send warnings for nonexistent risk of collision. Please be alert and always focus on the traffic conditions so as to predict if any measure should be taken.
- When the vehicle behind moves too fast or too slow, the function may not be able to send an alarm in time.
- When the blind spot monitoring system fails, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument is always on in red or flashes in red.

## HUD\*

The HUD displays include basic information, ADAS information, 2D navigation information, telephone information and navigation information.

### Instructions for use of HUD



Through the instrument, you can turn on/off the HUD display, select the HUD theme (full display theme, compact theme, off-road theme); Select the color mode: dark mode (snow mode) or light mode (normal mode); Adjust the display brightness; Adjust the display height.

### **i** Hint

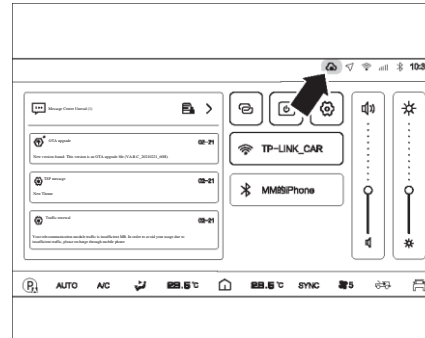
- The light-transmitting area of HUD is the image output port. If blocked by foreign objects, the clarity and integrity of HUD image may be affected.
- Do not place any foreign objects on the HUD transparent cover, or it may be damaged.
- Do not touch the HUD transparent cover by hand.
- If there are particles such as sand on the upper surface of the HUD transparent cover, use a vacuum cleaner to remove the particles before cleaning.
- When using the dust remover, ensure that the dust remover does not collide with the HUD transparent cover, which may cause transparent cover scratches.

### **i** Hint

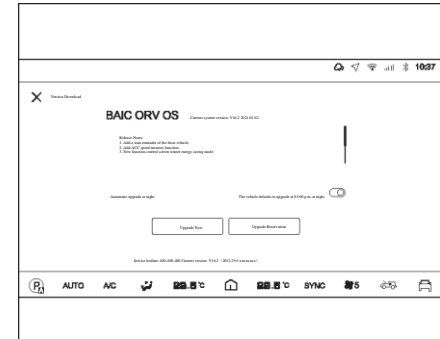
- To clean the HUD transparent cover, gently wipe it with a soft brush or glasses cloth first, or gently wipe it with neutral cleaning agent drops if necessary; Do not pour cleaning agent directly onto the HUD transparent cover.
- Do not use corrosive cleaning agent.
- Do not pour or spray water directly on the light-transmitting area of the HUD for cleaning.
- HUD is a precision optical device. If you have any other problems, please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV. Unauthorized personnel are not allowed to disassemble, assemble or repair the HUD.

## Software upgrade (OTA)

Vehicle can upgrade their software to get the most up-to-date features via mobile network. We recommend that you upgrade your vehicle as soon as possible. During the upgrade, some features of the vehicle may not work properly, and some upgrades may take a long time. Before upgrading, it is necessary to carefully read the precautions for upgrading and make a vehicle use plan.



Upgrade icons appear in the state bar of infotainment screen when a new version is available for upgrade. Click the special icon to quickly enter the upgrade operation interface.



You can choose the following upgrade methods. It is recommended to use reservation upgrade to reduce your waiting time.

- Reservation for upgrade: click the button of reservation for upgrade, and the vehicle will start upgrading when the reservation time arrives for the upgrade.
- Upgrade now: The upgrade can be performed immediately on the infotainment screen, and the upgrade automatically starts when the countdown ends.

Display the progress of the upgrade during the upgrade:

After a successful upgrade, the upgrade success interface is displayed and the whole vehicle is automatically powered off.

**Precautions for upgrade:**

Before upgrading, ensure that the vehicle:

- Park in a safe area (vehicle should not be upgraded while waiting for traffic lights or on sites such as emergency exits)
- The vehicle power supply is in OFF position;
- The vehicle gear position is in P position;
- Turn off the remote control function.

During the upgrade, the following phenomena may occur. Please wait in patience:

- The infotainment screen may restart and appear black screen;
- The door cannot be locked or unlocked;
- The A/C cannot be turned on;
- The window cannot be raised or lowered;
- Automatic adjustment of seat and turning wheel;
- Unadjustable wiper, etc.

Emergency measures:

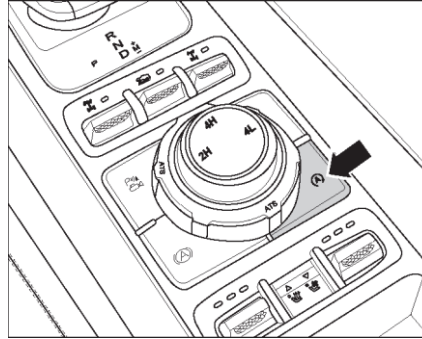
If the software update is abnormal, please contact the authorized BAIC dealership with customer service hotline: 4008108177.








## Idle start-stop system \*


Using Idle Stop/Start function can save fuel. When the vehicle stops or the engine runs at idle speed (e.g., waiting for a red light, stopping for a short time, etc.), the IST will automatically shut down the engine under certain conditions. When starting again, the starter automatically runs and drives the engine to start quickly.

### Idle Start/Stop on/off



When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode, the Idle Stop/Start is turned on by default. After the vehicle shuts down automatically,  is on; after the vehicle starts up automatically,  is off. To turn off the Idle Stop/Start, just press down the Idle Stop/Start switch on the multi-function switch panel , and the Idle Stop/Start Off/Indicator light on the instrument  goes on.

Press the Idle Start/Stop switch again, so that the idle stop/start function will be turned on again, and the idle Start/Stop indicator light  goes out.

In the state of Idle Stop/Start ON, if the system is faulty, the instrument cluster Idle Stop/Start off/indicator light  flashes 20 times and then stays on, the system cannot achieve Idle Stop/Start; The engine cannot be restarted after shutdown, and the system fault is detected at the same time, it flashes 30 times and then stays on.

#### Preconditions for automatic shutdown

1. The Idle Stop/Start is in the ON state;
2. The engine compartment hood is in the closed state;
3. The driver door is closed;
4. The driver side seat belt is fastened;
5. The A/C compressor is not in operating state;
6. The battery capacity and voltage shall be normal, and the temperature shall be between 0°C and 60°C;
7. The coolant temperature is between 60°C and 105°C;
8. The vacuum degree of the brake vacuum assist is sufficient;
9. The altitude is less than 3,200 m;

10. The vehicle has had a start exceeding 10 km/h;
11. There is no abnormality in engine self-learning, emission control and fault diagnosis;
12. The starter does not enter the overheat protection;
13. Shutdown is allowed for TCU;
14. The uphill gradient is less than 4%, and the downhill gradient is less than 10% (only for model with ESC);
15. The turning wheel is set right.

#### Idle start-stop operation method

After the vehicle meets the Idle Stop/Start conditions:

Place the gear position in the "D" position, press the brake pedal and hold, and after the vehicle stops stably, the engine will automatically stall; When preparing to pull away again, just release the brake pedal to automatically start the engine. After an automatic flameout of the engine occurs, shift the gear position out of "D" position, and the engine will also start.



#### Note

**When the engine is in an idle stop state, once the following situations occur, the engine will automatically start.**

- **Press the Idle Stop/Start switch;**
- **Open the driver door;**
- **Release the driver side seat belt;**
- **Start the A/C compressor;**
- **Turn on the rear windshield defrosting and defogging;**
- **Insufficient battery capacity and voltage;**
- **Insufficient vacuum of vacuum booster;**
- **The TCU state does not allow shutdown;**
- **Turn the turning wheel;**
- **The vehicle experiences forward or backward "rolling", and the speed is greater than 1.1 km/h.**

## Driving Skills

### Driving hint

#### Driving on Paved Road Surfaces

Compared with ordinary cars, this car has a large ground clearance, so as to adapt to driving on off-road surfaces. The special design means that the vehicle is taller than ordinary cars. While driving this car, try to avoid abruptly turning to prevent the vehicle from going out of control or even overturning.

#### Driving on Off-Road Surfaces

For more traction force at low speeds and better handling on slippery or difficult roads, drive with transfer case at low gear.

On roads covered with thick snow, when towing is required or the vehicle should be controlled at a low speed, switch the transmission to the low gear and the transfer case to the low gear as required. However, do not drive the vehicle in too low gears, which will cause the wheel to skid.

Do not use excessively low gear positions when driving on icy or wet and slippery roads, because the brake function of the engine may cause the wheel to slip or get out of control. For vehicles equipped with limited slip differentials, the speed shall be lower than the vehicles with normal differentials when turning, as turning at high speed under the limited-slip effect may cause wheel spin or loss of control.

When the vehicle equipped with a limited slip differential slips on one wheel, the wheel may rapidly impact and rotate. This is caused by the structure of the limited slip differential, which is normal.

#### Note

**Despite the off-road functions of this car, the driver still needs to pay attention and watch the road conditions so as to prevent accidents and personal injury.**

## Preparation before driving

It is best to carry out safety checks before driving. Spending just a few minutes checking will help you drive safely and enjoy your driving. You can make the check as long as you are basically familiar with the various parts of the vehicle.

#### Warning

**Drunk driving is one of the most common causes of accidents. One's driving ability falls significantly with the rise in alcoholic content in the driver's blood. Do not drive after drinking. Passengers should travel in cars driven by people who have not consumed alcohol. Instead, they may take a taxi or other public transport instead. After drinking alcohol, even coffee or cold shower will not keep you alert. Similarly, some prescription or non-prescription drugs will affect people's alertness, sensory sharpness and reaction time. Before driving under the impact of these drugs, please consult with the doctor or druggist.**

## Before Starting the Engine

**Tire:** check tire pressure, and whether there are nicks, damage, or excessive wear.

**Wheel nut:** Make sure no nut is missing or loose.

**Lights:** make sure the headlamp, brake lamp, high-mounted brake lamp, taillights, turn signal lamp and other lights are all working properly. Check light direction of the headlamp.

**Seat belt:** make sure you and other passengers are seated and have fastened their seat belt (children in rear seat, use special safety seat).

Move the driver's seat backwards as far as possible, and at the same time, you must ensure a good line of sight and effectively control the turning wheel, brake pedal, accelerator pedal and other control components that will be used during normal driving. Check whether there is any display of faults on the instrument panel.

Move the front passenger's seat backwards as much as possible.

Ensure that infants and children are properly placed in accordance with regulations to ensure that they are protected to the maximum extent in case of an accident.

**Instrument and controller:** especially ensure that the instrument indicator lights and defroster are working properly.

**Brake pedal:** make sure the pedal has enough free space.

**Level of all fluid:** Ensure that all fluid are at the correct level.

**12V battery and cables:** check the 12V battery according to the color of the indication. Check for corrosion or looseness on the blocks or cracks on the casing. Check that the cables are well connected.

## After Starting the Engine

**Fuel Leaks:** After the vehicle has been parked for a moment, check for fuel, engine oil, water, or other fluid leaks under the vehicle. After use, there may be water drops from the air conditioner. This is a normal occurrence.

## While driving

**Instrument:** Confirm that the instrument is working properly.

**Brake:** On the safe road, checking and verifying the brake will not cause the vehicle to toward to either side.

**Other abnormal phenomena:** Check the components and parts for looseness and leakage, and listen for abnormal noise.

## Driving During Run-In Period

To ensure the service life of the vehicle, a run-in period is needed in the early stages after the vehicle is put into use. Only after the run-in period has completed can the vehicle be put into normal use. Provisions on the Run-In Period:

- Choose a better road and drive at reduced load and limited speed.
- Do not drive at full throttle or rapid acceleration.
- Avoid emergency brake.
- Strictly follow the operating procedures and keep the engine at the normal operating temperature. Before regular maintenance, do NOT replace the engine oil.
- Carefully carry out the routine maintenance of the vehicle, check and tighten the external bolts and nut frequently, pay attention to the sound and temperature changes of the assemblies during operation, and adjust them in time.

### Running-in for the engine

The new engine must be subject to a running-in of 1500km.

Within the first 160 km, the speed shall be lower than 80 km/h, and within the first 800 km, the speed shall be lower than 90 km/h.

During the running-in period, the following items shall be observed:

- After the cold vehicle starts, run the engine for 15 s before start.
- During the initial driving period, it is necessary to avoid driving for a long time at full throttle or at the maximum speed. It is also necessary to avoid driving under the same speed or driving at the same speed for a long time or running at a high idle speed for a long time.
- It is generally not necessary to adjust the engine during the initial drive.
- Unless the load is very heavy, it is not necessary to replace the engine oil or engine oil filter before the specified first service cycle.
- Antifriction additives shall not be added to the engine oil during the initial driving, as these additives will affect the running-in of the piston ring.

In the early period of wearing in, the inner frictional resistance of the engine is much bigger than after the wearing-in. Only after wearing it in can all the moving parts of the engine reach the best coordinated state.

After wearing it in according to the above requirements, the engine will have both a prolonged service life and reduced fuel consumption.

### Running-in tires and brake pad

Within the first 500 km, drive at a moderate speed and for good running-in new tires.

If the new brake pads cannot reach the optimum friction state within the first 200 km, careful running-in shall be conducted.

 Warning

- **Unrunning-in new tires and brake pad do not have the best adhesion and friction. Therefore, it is necessary to drive carefully for tire running-in and beware of accidents during the first 500 km.**
- **The replaced new brake pads must also conduct running-in in accordance with the above requirements.**
- **Keep a proper distance from other vehicles when driving, and beware of any situation requiring emergency brake. Because in such situations, the new tires and braking pads have not been worn in and could easily cause traffic accidents.**
- **The braking effect will decrease if the brake is wet or icy, or if the vehicle travels on a salted road.**

 Warning

- **When driving downhill, the brake load is high and it is easy to overheat. It is recommended to shift into a low gear before driving downhill, reduce speed, make full use of the braking effect of the engine and reduce the brake load.**
- **The brake shall be applied according to the road and traffic conditions. Do not press the brake pedal unnecessarily, which will overheat the brake, resulting in long braking distance and excessive wear of the brake.**
- **Do not turn off the engine and let the vehicle slide, as the brake booster will not work and the braking distance will be greatly increased, which is very easy to cause accidents.**
- **The brake fluid shall not be used for too long, and the brake fluid must be replaced according to the specified period.**

## Driving Essentials in Different Situations

- Always drive at low speed in side gusts to control the vehicle.
- Keep the correct angle and avoid driving on high or sharp objects or other road obstacles. Otherwise, serious damage such as tire burst may occur.
- Reduce the speed when driving on bumpy or uneven roads, otherwise the corresponding impact and scraping will cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- The brake may get wet when cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water. Look around to see whether it is safe and lightly depress the brake pedal. If you cannot sense the normal braking force, the brake may have become wet. To make it dry, drive the vehicle at a low speed while ensuring safety. Meanwhile, lightly depress the brake pedal. Drive your vehicle carefully. If the brake still fails to operate safely, pull over and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for assistance.

 Warning

- Before driving, make sure that the parking brake is completely deactivated.
- Do not put your feet on the brake pedal when driving; otherwise, the brake pad will be overheated, and unnecessary wear and waste of fuel will be caused.
- Slow down and gear down when driving down a long and steep slope. Remember that excessive use of the brakes will make them overheat and be unable to work normally.
- Be careful when accelerating, upshifting, downshifting or braking when driving on smooth roads. Sudden acceleration or engine braking may cause the vehicle to slide or the wheels to run in idle.
- If the brake is wet, the braking distance will take longer than normal state, and the vehicle may lean to one side and the parking brake will not be able to brake the vehicle firmly.

## Driving in the rain

### When driving on slippery roads

When there is rain, please drive carefully because the visibility is low, the vehicle windows are foggy, and the road is very slippery.

- When it starts to rain, drive carefully as the road surface becomes slippery.
- Do not drive at high speed on the expressway when it is raining, because a film of moisture forms between the tire and the road, which can hinder the normal operation of the turning and brake system.

### Driving on the mud road

After travelling on the mud road, the vehicle requires cleaning up the mud attached on the vehicle chassis. Special attention should be paid to the front and rear axle vent plugs. If the mud is not cleaned in time, the vent plug will stick to the vent plug cover after drying, which will cause the vent plug to be unable to open normally and finally cause the leakage of the drive axle.

 Warning

- When driving on slippery roads, emergency brake, acceleration and turning may cause the tire to slip and reduce the handling performance of the vehicle, thus causing accidents.
- Rapid changes in engine RPM, such as emergency engine brake, may cause the vehicle to skid and thus cause accidents.
- Please step on the brake pedal gently after driving over a puddle to ensure that the brake functions normally. The wet brake pad cannot brake normally. If only one side of the brake becomes wet and does not work properly, turning control may be impacted and an accident may occur. Do NOT drive on road surfaces full of standing water after heavy rains. This may cause serious damage to the vehicle.

## Driving in water

Although your vehicle can travel by wading, there are a few precautions you must consider before wading:



Note

**When wading, the speed should not exceed 8 km/h. As a preventive measure, make sure to ascertain the water depth before driving in the water, and check all fluids after the driving. Damages which may be caused by driving in water are beyond the warranty of new car.**

Take care when driving in water to ensure safety and to prevent damage to your car. If the car has to drive in water, before that, try to determine the water depth and conditions in water (as well as position of obstacle). Drive carefully in deep water and keep a steady speed under control below 8 km/h, so as to reduce the impact of water waves.

In addition to keeping the speed low during vehicle wading, try not to stop, not to gear shifting, not to retract the accelerator, or not to accelerate. It should pass at a constant speed with medium and high throttle in low gear position, rather than splashing at high speed.

After leaving the road with surface water, the car must be driven at slow speed, and lightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the moisture on the brake pad.

When the vehicle stalls in the water, do not start the engine immediately, but as soon as possible put the vehicle into N gear and tow it to a safe place with little water.

### Running water

If the water is flowing and the water level is rising (e.g. in a storm), it shall be avoided to cross and wait for the water level to recede and/or the flow speed to decrease before driving. If wading is inevitable, be sure not to drive in a current of 20 cm deep. Running water will erode the river bed, which will make the vehicle trapped in deeper water. Determine the entry point and the exit point in advance.

### Still water

Avoid driving in still water deeper than 50 cm. When driving in water below 50 cm deep, the maximum speed shall not be higher than 8 km/h to reduce the impact of water waves.

### Maintenance

After driving in water, check your car for its working fluid and lubricants (engine oil, transmission oil, axle and transfer case) to ensure that the fluids are not contaminated. The contaminated liquids (milky, foamy appearance) shall be washed/replaced as soon as possible to prevent damage to components.



Warning

- **Water ingress of the engine is a very serious problem. Attempting to start the engine at this time will result in damage to the engine.**
- **After wading, remove the water in the brake in time. Otherwise, serious danger or accident may be caused due to loss of braking.**



## Driving essentials in winter

Be sure to fully warm up the engine. After starting the engine, pre-heat it for a while so that the engine oil fully lubricates the various cylinders, and then drive the vehicle slowly. Drive off at low speed. This will give a sufficient time for the lubrication oil of the transmission, the transfer case and the rear axle to lubricate the various lubrication positions.

### Check the Condition of the Battery and Power Cables

Check the battery, including its joints and electric wire. Extremely cold weather will affect the battery. This is because more energy is needed to start and drive the vehicle and the battery capacity will fall. Before driving the vehicle, check whether the engine speed is normal. Check whether the headlights are as bright as usual. If necessary, charge or replace the battery. In particularly cold weather, very low-capacity battery may freeze, causing it to be unable to start the vehicle normally.

### Make sure the viscosity of the engine oil suits driving in cold weather

In winter, a lot of summer-used engine oil remaining inside the engine may make the vehicle difficult to start. If you are unsure which engine oil to use, contact your authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for assistance.

### Check Engine Coolant

Be sure to use a coolant that is recognized by the Company.

If the engine coolant is found to be insufficient, please replenish the coolant in time.

If the coolant of the intercooling system is insufficient, please replenish the coolant in time.

### Avoid the freezing of door locks

Spray some de-icer or glycerol into the door lock holes to prevent them from being frozen.

### Use window cleaning fluids containing antifreeze

This product is available in authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

### Prevent snow or ice from accumulating in fender.

When snow or ice accumulates in the fender, it will make steering difficult. When driving in cold weather, be sure to frequently stop the car and check whether snow or ice has accumulated in the fender.

Depending on the driving destination, BAIC ORV recommends carrying some necessary emergency supplies.

Items that may need to be put in the car include: tire anti-skid chains, vehicle window scrapers, sandbags or salt bags, signal flash devices, small shovels, jumper cables, etc.

## Efficient use of vehicle

- Maintain the correct tire pressure. Insufficient air pressure will cause tire wear and waste fuel.
- The wheel alignment should be accurate, otherwise it will cause the tire to wear too fast, and will increase the engine load and waste fuel.
- Do not load the vehicle with unnecessary weights. Overly heavy loads will increase the burden of the engine load and consume a lot of fuel.
- Accelerate slowly and smoothly to avoid rapid start. Shift to high speed gear to drive as soon as possible.
- Avoid heavy traffic or traffic jams. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving is not good for fuel economy.
- Avoid unnecessary stop and brake and keep a smooth speed. Drive with traffic lights to minimize stop, or drive on a thoroughfare without traffic lights. Keep a suitable driving distance from other vehicles so as to avoid emergency braking. This will also reduce brake wear.

- Do not put your feet on the brake pedal. This will cause the brake pad to wear excessively, overheat and waste fuel.
- Avoid collision to the shoulder of the road when driving on the vehicle. Be sure to lower vehicle speed when driving on uneven road surfaces.
- Avoid vehicle chassis with dirt, etc., which can not only reduce the dead weight of the vehicle, but also prevent corrosion.
- Adjust vehicle and maintain optimum state. Dirty air filters, unsuitable valve clearances, dirty spark plugs, dirty engine oil and grease will all reduce engine performances and waste fuel. To prolong the service life of all parts and lower operating expenses, be sure to carry out regular maintenance. When frequently driving in harsh conditions, be sure to maintain the vehicle more frequently.

## Economy of fuel

Fuel economy is related to many factors. Personal driving habits have a major impact on fuel consumption. The recommendations below will help to achieve the best fuel economy:

- Drive slowly for a few minutes after starting at low temperature, and then accelerate after the engine warms up.
- Remove unnecessary items before driving.
- Maintain proper tire pressure.
- Choose to drive on good roads.
- Do not drive too hard, please refuel slowly, and do not forcefully press the accelerator when starting or forcefully press the brake when stopping.
- Do not open the window in driving at a high speed.
- Reasonably use the A/C and sound system.
- Turn off unnecessary switches.
- When stop for a long time, turn off the engine to avoid long run it at idle speed of engine.
- Drive on a flat road at an economical speed.

- Select the appropriate gear position according to the speed. Do not drive in a low gear at a high speed.
- Do regular service according to maintenance requirements.
- Accelerate slowly and evenly when starting again after the vehicle stops at a signal light or stop sign.
- Plan your driving route to avoid unnecessary stop.
- Keep the tire pressure at the recommended pressure.
- Keep the air filter clean and maintain the vehicle as recommended in the user manual.
- Keep the vehicle state properly adjusted. Improper adjustment of the engine will waste fuel and increase costs.

---

## 4 Maintenance

Safety and Maintenance.....	251
Fuel system.....	253
Remote communication module .....	255
Internal Maintenance.....	256
External Maintenance .....	258
Engine Compartment .....	264
Engine oil .....	268
Coolant .....	274
Brake fluid.....	278
Urea system* .....	281
Battery .....	283
Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade.....	286
Tire .....	290
Recovery and environmental protection .....	297

## Safety and Maintenance

Service items not mentioned in this chapter should all be performed by accredited or other qualified technicians.

### Safety Precautions

To avoid potential dangers, before starting maintenance, please read the contents of this section and confirm that you have the needed tools and techniques.

- Park the vehicle on a flat ground, turn off the engine, and apply parking brake.
- When cleaning the components and parts, use the degreasing or cleaning agents on the market, and do not use gasoline.
- It is prohibited for lit cigarettes, spark or open flames to approach the battery and all related parts of the fuel system.
- Wear goggles and protective clothing when working with battery or compressed air.

#### Warning

**Incorrect vehicle maintenance or driving problematic vehicles may cause traffic accidents, serious injury or even death.**

### Potential Vehicle Hazards

- Carbon monoxide: carbon monoxide in engine exhaust is a toxic gas and it is important that the engine is operated in a well-ventilated area.
- Scalding: engine, cooling system and exhaust system will generate high temperatures during operation, which easily cause scalding. Therefore, wait for at least 30 minutes with the closed state of the vehicle, and do not touch the components and parts until the engine, cooling system and exhaust system cool down.

#### Note

**Only some important safety precautions are listed in this section. We are unable to list all of the dangers which you may come across during your maintenance operations.**

## Routine maintenance

The vehicle's safety, reliability and good performance depend on how you maintain it.

Since maintenance is the responsibility of the vehicle owner, you must follow the advice of BAIC for routine maintenance of the vehicle, oil change, routine inspection and replacement of brake fluid and coolant.

## Maintenance record

The Warranty Manual includes maintenance record pages, which you can use to record information on the engine oil replacements and inspections which have been made for your vehicle. The authorized dealership of BAIC ORV will also use the maintenance record pages to record information such as replacement of brake fluid, safety airbag modules and seat belt tensioning devices.

After each engine oil replacement and inspection, you must have the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV sign and seal on the maintenance sheet.

## Exhaust emission control

Your vehicle has been equipped with exhaust emission and evaporation devices which comply with the State and legal provisions. You should be aware that: all unauthorized replacements, refitting and adjustments of these devices by the car owner him/herself or vehicle repair personnel are unlawful and the car owner him/herself or vehicle repair personnel shall be responsible for any consequences thus caused.

Also, you can't make any adjustments to the engine settings. The purpose of formulating these provisions is to ensure that your vehicle complies with the strict laws and regulations on exhaust emission. Incorrect engine settings will have a negative impact on exhaust emission, engine performance and fuel consumption and generate high temperatures, thus causing damage to the three-way catalytic converter and the engine.

## Maintenance by the owner

1. Inspection of the coolant level
2. Check the brake fluid level
3. Check the level of power turning fluid
4. Check the level of the windshield cleaning agent
5. Check tire pressure and state
6. Check the effect of A/C

## Special operating state

If your vehicle is often driven in dusty conditions, or in extreme climates with extremely high or low ambient temperature, it is advisable for you to pay extra attention to maintenance. Please consult your authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for details.

## Safety during maintenance of the vehicle

After the engine stops running, the cooling fan may continue to run for some time. When working on the engine compartment, be sure to keep a distance from the fan.

If maintenance of the vehicle is required, the following precautions shall be observed:

1. Keep your hands, clothes at a safe distance from the drive belt and pulley.
2. If the vehicle has just been used, do not touch the exhaust and cooling system parts until the engine has cooled completely.
3. Do not touch wires or electrical components when the engine is running or the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" mode.
4. Do not allow the engine to run in a poorly ventilated place, because the exhaust is toxic and extremely dangerous.
5. Do not work under a vehicle that is only supported by the jack for replacing wheels.

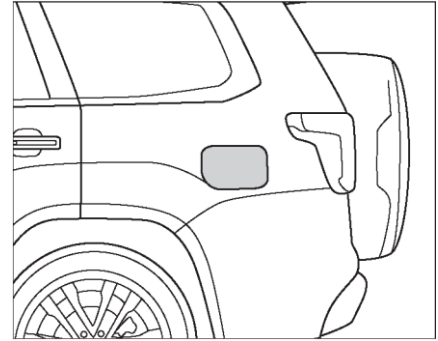
6. Keep spark away from engine compartment.

7. Wear protective clothes during the work. If possible, wear gloves that are made of impermeable materials.

8. Take off your watch and jewelry when working in the engine compartment.

9. Do not let the parts of tools or vehicle come into contact with the battery terminals.

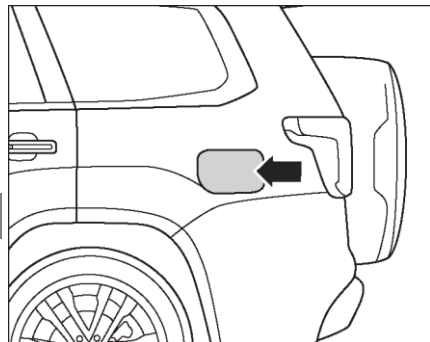
## Fuel system



The fuel filler is located on the left rear enclosing board.

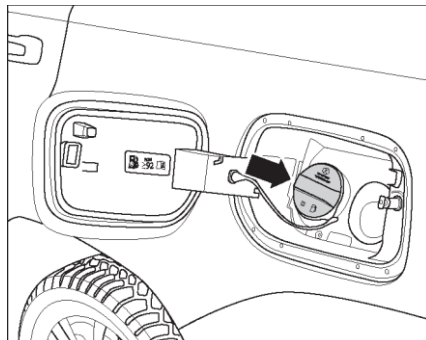
### Adding Fuel

Before adding fuel, please turn off the engine first. Then, follow the steps below:

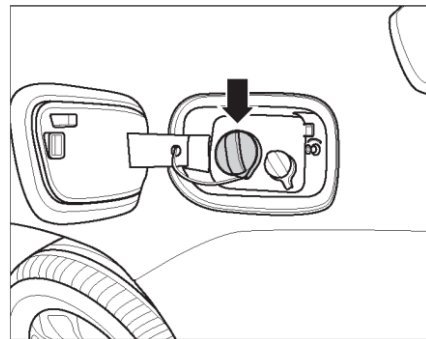


1. After unlocking the central control, press the arrow indicating area.

Gasoline model:



Diesel models:




2. When the fuel tank door pops up, open the filler cap for fuel filling.
3. When filling fuel, pay attention to the way in which the fuel nozzle is held: do not make the fuel nozzle skew. Insert the fuelling gun into the depth of the fuelling pipe of the fuel tank as much as possible.
4. When the filling gun automatically stops, continue filling at a lower filling speed. When the filling gun stops for the second time, do not attempt to continue filling.
5. Close the filler cap and turn it slowly clockwise until you hear three clicks.
6. After closing the filler cap, close the fuel tank door.
7. When the door lock is locked, the fuel tank door is locked.

#### Warning

- When refueling, do not smoke and avoid spark or open flame, because fuel vapor is very flammable.



 **Warning**

- **Do not take off the fuel tank cover immediately when opening it. If the fuel filler cover is suddenly removed in hot summer, high pressure gas will spurt out from the filler and cause personal injury.**
- **Ensure that the fuel filler cap is tightened to prevent fuel spillage in case of accident.**
- **As long as the above instructions are followed, the fuel tank is "full" after the second automatic stop of the refueling gun, and there is no need to refuel, otherwise the expansion space in the fuel tank will be filled - fuel may overflow when heated.**
- **Wipe off spilled fuel on the body paint immediately.**
- **It is not advisable to use up fuel on models equipped with catalytic converters. Irregular fuel supply will result in misfires, causing un-ignited fuel to enter the exhaust device and damage the catalytic purifier due to overheating.**

## Fuel

To ensure performance, it is necessary to use fuel according to the grade designation (see technical data section for details).

Use of low-grade or poor-quality gasoline will shorten the life of the engine.

 **Note**

- **If the gasoline octane number (RON) used in an emergency is lower than the octane number required by the engine, the engine can only be operated at moderate RPM and low load. Large loads or high speeds when the accelerator is fully depressed will damage the engine. Add fuels that meet the required RON as much as possible.**
- **Only unleaded gasoline can be used for vehicle equipped with catalytic converters. As long as leaded gasoline is filled once, the catalytic purifier will be damaged.**

## Remote communication module

Remote communication module replacement: The remote communication module is a components and parts in the vehicle involving remote control, condition query, electronic fence, etc. It contains battery. When the "remote control" function fails, go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to replace the remote communication module. The battery shall be replaced in time at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

## Internal Maintenance

### Note

- Do not clean dashboard and airbag modules with solvent-containing cleaning agent.
- Solvent-containing cleaning agent can penetrate the surface of the cleaning parts, causing the surface to become porous, resulting in loose parts. When an airbag is released, such loose plastic parts will markedly increase the risk of injury!
- Do not treat leather with solvents (such as gasoline, turpentine), floor wax, shoe polish or similar items.
- Avoid exposing your vehicle to strong sunlight for a long time to prevent leather or similar articles from fading. If you have to park your vehicle outdoors for a long period of time, please cover the leather of the vehicle so as to prevent it from coming into direct contact with sunlight.
- Do not remove the seat belt when cleaning the seat belt.

### Note

- Items with sharp edges on the clothes, such as zipper buckles, rivets, etc., may leave permanent scratches or scuff marks on the leather surface.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belt which may damage the fabrics.
- The seat belt should not be exposed to corrosive fluids.
- Regularly check the condition of the seat belt. If damage is found to the seat belt fabric, seat belt connection device, automatic retractor, and seat belt locking element, it must be repaired at an authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

### Cleaning and maintenance of instrument and plastic parts

Use a dry, clean and soft cloth and water to clean the surfaces of instruments and plastic parts.

If the surfaces cannot be cleaned, use solvent-free plastic cleaning agents to clean them.

### Warning

Cabin spray agents or solvent-containing cleaning agents must not be used to clean the surfaces of the dashboard and the airbag module. They may loosen the surface, trigger the airbags, and cause serious injury to passengers.

### Cleaning and Maintenance of Carpet

Frequently use a vacuum cleaner to suck dust up from the carpet.

Regularly wash with detergents and keep the carpet clean.

### Note

- Strictly follow the instructions of cleaning agent for cleaning operations.
- It is forbidden to add water to the foam cleaning agent, and the carpet should be kept as dry as possible.

## Cleaning and maintenance of leather

1. Use a vacuum cleaner to suck dust.
2. Clean the leather with clean soft cloth and water.
3. Use another piece of dry soft cloth to wipe it dry.
4. If stains cannot be cleaned with the above operation, special leather soap or detergent can be used in conjunction for cleaning.

### Note

- After wiping it with leather detergent, dry it with soft dry cloth as soon as possible.
- Do not place the soft cloth soaked with detergent on any part of the interior for a long time, otherwise the resin or fiber of the interior fabric will fade or break.

## Cleaning and maintenance of seat belt

1. Pull out the seat belt slowly and keep it at the pull-out state.
2. Remove dirt from the seat belt with a soft brush and neutral soapy water.
3. Wait until the seat belt is completely dry, and then wind up the seat belt.

### Warning

- It is prohibited to clean the seat belt with chemical cleaning agent to avoid damage to the seat belt and impair its function.
- When replacing the seat belt, a new seat belt of the same model and structure must be used for replacement.
- Prevent foreign bodies or fluids from entering the seat belt buckle, causing the buckle and seat belt to fail to function properly.
- It is forbidden to dismantle and retrofitting the seat belt without permission.

### Warning

- The condition of all seat belts in the vehicle must be checked regularly. In the event of damage to the seat belt base, connecting devices, retractor or buckle, it must be repaired and replaced by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible.

### Note

- Do not rewind the seat belt until it is completely dry; otherwise, the retractor of the seat belt may be damaged.
- Regularly check all interior seat belts to ensure the cleanliness of the seat belts so as not to interfere with the normal operation of the seat belts.

## External Maintenance

### Note

- Wet or icy brake can affect brake function.
- When you clean the bottom of the vehicle and the underside of the fender
- When handling (wheel trim) and wheel cover, please operate with caution to prevent your hands from being scratched by sharp metal edges.
- If an automatic washer is used, the transmission must be shifted into "N" position. Be careful not to turn off the engine at this time.
- Do not clean the vehicle with rough sponge or corrosive cleaning products - risk of damage to the paint!
- Do not clean the tire with a cluster nozzle! Even if you are far away and do not wash them for long, it will still cause damage

### Note

- It is recommended that the new vehicle be waxing only after it has been used for 6 months.
- Do not wax the window.
- Do not clean the headlamp surface with any sharp object. This may damage the protective paint surface and form cracks on the headlamp.
- Attention shall be paid when cleaning the wheels: moisture, icing and sprinkled/sprayed salt can affect the braking effect.
- Do not install protective plates or apply anti-corrosion materials around high-temperature parts such as exhaust muffler, exhaust pipes and catalytic converter, which may cause fire when the vehicle is moving.

## Wash the vehicle

Frequent vehicle washing helps maintain the appearance of the vehicle.

The vehicle should be washed in a cool place. Do NOT wash the vehicle in direct sunlight. If the vehicle has been placed in sun light for a long period of time, be sure to wait for the surface of the vehicle body to cool down before washing it.

When washing the vehicle using an automatic washing machine, please be sure to follow the instructions of the machine operator

### Note

- The body paint is strong enough to withstand the washing of the automatic vehicle washer, but care must be taken to the paint. When the structure, cleaning agent used, the filtering state of water or type of wax solvent of the vehicle washing machine does not meet the relevant requirement, it may cause damage to the paint surface.

 Note

- **If an automatic washer is used, the transmission must be shifted into "N" position. Be careful not to turn off the engine at this time.**

### The Automatic Vehicle Washing Device

The vehicle paint possesses certain durability. Usually, washing the car inside an automatic washing device will not affect the state of the vehicle paint. The impact on the body paint depends to a great extent on the structure of the vehicle washing equipment, the water filter used for vehicle washing and the type of cleaning agent and maintenance agent used. If the body paint has no gloss or has scratches after the vehicle is washed, be sure to immediately point it out to the washing equipment operator.

When using the automatic washing device, the transmission must be engaged in the "N" position, and care shall be taken not to turn off the engine. If you need to move the vehicle with the engine in the off state, be sure to forcibly unlock the transmission and shift it to "N" position through the "P" position emergency unlock mechanism (see "Transmission P Emergency Unlock" on Page 181). After washing the vehicle, the "P" position emergency unlock mechanism shall be released, the transmission shall be shifted into "P" position, and then start the engine.

### Clean the vehicle manually

1. Rinse the vehicle with clean water to remove floating dust.
2. Prepare a bucket of water and mix it with the vehicle wash cleaning agent.
3. Gently scrub the vehicle with a soft cloth, sponge or soft brush, and rinse the vehicle multiple times from top to bottom.
4. The wheel, threshold and other parts should be rinsed finally, and the sponge or soft cloth should be replaced during cleaning.
5. After scrubbing, wash the vehicle thoroughly.
6. After cleaning, carefully dry the vehicle paint with a soft towel or fur.

 Note

**When there is asphalt or dirt on the vehicle body, be sure to use a special cleaning agent to clean it and then wash it with water so as to prevent damage to the finish of the vehicle body. While wiping dry the vehicle body, be sure to check whether there is chipped paint or scratches on the vehicle body. If it is found, it should be repaired at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**

Extra care should be exercised when washing the vehicle with a pressure washer. Be sure to perform the washing operation in accordance with the usage instructions and requirements of the pressure washer. Special attention should be paid to the working pressure and the spraying distance.

 Warning

**If there is water, ice or anti-skid salt inside the braking system, it will make the brake slow to react and increase braking distance, thus increasing risk of traffic accidents.**

- **Press the brake pedal gently before driving to test the brake.**

**Warning**

- It is advisable to avoid sharp braking as much as possible before removing the ice or deicing salt attached to the brake, and special caution should also be exercised during braking to prevent traffic accidents.
- Ensure that relevant information and warnings have been carefully read through and followed before use.
- When wash the vehicle, pay special attention to the bottom of the vehicle and the inside of the wheel cover to avoid hurting your hands and arms by sharp parts.
- Do not clean the vehicle directly into the engine compartment, otherwise it will affect the service life of various components and parts in the engine compartment.

## Waxing

Regular waxing can protect the body paint and keep the vehicle body clean.

Only after the whole vehicle is wiped dry can the waxing operation start.

A superior quality paint protection wax should be selected.

To effectively protect the body paint, it is suggested that a superior quality hard wax should be applied once a year so as to protect the paint surface from erosion by adverse external environment and protect it from light mechanical scratches.

### High quality wax type

Body wax:Wax which is used to protect the paint surface from sunlight, air pollution and other adverse external environments. It is usually used on new vehicles.

Polish wax:It can restore gloss to those paint surfaces which have been oxidized or have lost gloss. Mainly used to restore the gloss of the paint surface.

**Note**

**Do NOT wax in a dusty environment.**

## Glazing

Polishing is needed only when the body paint becomes unsightly and even waxing materials cannot deliver good gloss. If the polishing agent used does not contain an anti-corrosive ingredient, waxing treatment must be performed.

**Note**

**Lusterless parts and plastics cannot be treated with polishing agents or hard wax.**

## Body Paint Damage

Minor body paint damage (such as scratches, scrapes or stone striking marks) should be covered with body paint before they start to rust.

If they have already rusted, the rust must be thoroughly removed. In addition, the rusted portion must have an anti-corrosive base paint and a covering paint spread over it. The work shall be done in the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

## Cleaning and maintenance of exterior plastic

Usually, exterior plastic parts can be cleaned using water, a soft cloth and a soft brush. If not, use a special solvent-containing cleaning agent for plastic parts.

### Note

**When cleaning plastic parts, do NOT use solvent-containing washing materials. This could easily damage the plastic parts.**

## Maintenance of Chromium-Plated Parts

Chromium-plated parts may be cleaned using a wet cloth and then wiped dry with a soft, dry cloth. If the cleaning effect is not good enough, a chrome maintenance agent can be used.

Stains and the dirt layer on chromium-plated parts can be cleaned using a chrome maintenance agent. Regularly using a chrome maintenance agent can prevent the formation of a dirt layer on the surface. When a chrome maintenance agent is used, be sure to cover the entire surface.

## Cleaning of Window and Side Mirror

Use an alcohol-containing glass cleaning agent to clean the window glass and the rearview mirror of the vehicle and then use a clean, soft and lint-free soft cloth or shammy to wipe the glass surface dry.

### Note

- **Do not wipe the window and side mirror with fur that has been wiped with body paint surface. Otherwise, the residual wax on the fur will cause the window surface to become blurred.**
- **If there are residual rubber, grease and silicone on the window, they must be removed with special window cleaning agent or silicone cleaning agent.**

After the car body surface is maintained, the wax remaining on the window should be removed with special cleaning agent and cleaning cloth to avoid scratching the wiper blade.

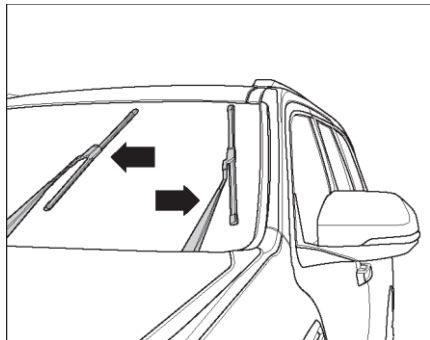
A small brush may be used to clear the snow that has accumulated on the windows and the rearview mirror of the vehicle.

An ice-removing spray agent or an ice scraper may be used to clear accumulated ice. But, special care should be exercised so as to prevent damaging the parts.

### Note

- **Do not scratch the window and side mirror back and forth.**
- **It is prohibited to use warm or hot water to remove ice and snow from the window and side mirror; otherwise it may cause the window to burst.**

## Cleaning of Front Windshield Wiper Blade



### The Cleaning Operation:

1. Turn on the wiper inspection and repair mode through the infotainment screen.
2. Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield.
3. Only hold the wiper blade holder.
4. Carefully wipe off the dust and dirt on the wiper blade with a soft cloth.
5. After cleaning, gently replace the wiper arm.

6. Turn off the front wiper inspection and repair mode.

### Note

- **Replace the damaged wiper blade in time.**
- **The new wiper blade is coated with graphite, which can make the scraping smooth and avoid scratching noise. Damage to the graphite layer will increase wiping noise. The wiper blade should therefore be promptly replaced if this occurs.**
- **In winter or cold conditions, be sure to check whether the wiper blade is frozen with the windshield before using the wiper. If it is, clear the ice first. Otherwise, it will damage the wiper blade and the wiper motor.**

## Maintenance of Sealing Strip

Proper regular maintenance of the rubber strips on the vehicle doors and windows can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. It can also improve their sealing performance, make the vehicle doors easy to open and reduce the impact sound of door closing. It also makes it more difficult for the vehicle doors to freeze.

### Maintenance operation:

1. Remove dust and dirt from the sealing strip with soft cloth.
2. Regularly apply the special protective agent on the sealing strip.

### Note

On both sides of the front top cover are designed for drainage channel outlet, where there might be a little ponding after the rain. When the front door is open, a small amount of ponding may spray into the vehicle.

## Cleaning and Maintenance of Wheels

Regular maintenance will keep the wheels pleasing to the eye. It is also necessary to regularly clear anti-skid salt and braking scraps from the wheels so as to keep the polish on the surfaces of the wheels and prolong their service life.



**Regular operations:****Every two weeks**

Clear anti-skid salt and braking scraps from the wheels.

Use an acid-free cleaning agent to clean the wheels.

**Every three months**

Apply quality hard wax on the alloy wheels.

**Warning**

- **The wheel must be cleaned with acid-free cleaning agent.**
- **Do not treat the wheel surface with the vehicle polish or other abrasives.**
- **The wheel with damaged protective coating must be repaired in time.**
- **The use of high-pressure cleaner may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheel, resulting in serious casualties.**

**Warning**

- **It is prohibited to clean tires with cluster nozzles. Even if you are far away and do not wash them for long time, it will still cause damage to the tires and cause traffic accidents.**

**Protection of base plate**

The bottom of the vehicle has undergone protective treatment which can reduce the degree of chemical and mechanical damage. However, in vehicle driving, damage to the protective coating is inevitable, so it is recommended that the protective coating of the vehicle bottom and chassis should be checked at regular intervals, preferably before winter and in spring, and repaired if necessary. The authorized dealership of BAIC ORV is able to provide a suitable service.

**Warning**

- **Please go to the nearby authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair if the user has an accidental bottoming out of the vehicle during use**

**Description of catalytic exhaust purifier**

Since exhaust emissions will generate high temperatures after burning, additional insulation boards are installed in the catalytic exhaust purifier area.

Do NOT use any floor protection layer on these insulation boards, the catalytic purifier or the exhaust pipes. Do NOT remove the insulation boards.

**Cavity anti-corrosion treatment**

All vehicle cavities that are susceptible to corrosion have been durably protected by BAIC ORV. Anti-corrosive treatment needs neither checks nor follow-up treatment. If hard wax falls off from a cavity due to high temperature outside, it can be cleared using a plastic scraper or cleaning gasoline.

## Engine Compartment

### Work Safety Instructions for the Engine Compartment

When working on the engine or the engine compartment, such as checking or adding engine fluids, scalding or other injuries may occur. There is also a risk of accident and fire!

Therefore, it is necessary to pay attention to the following warning instructions and basic safety provisions.

When adding the engine fluids, be sure to NOT mix up the engine fluids. Otherwise, serious functional faults will be caused.

#### Warning

- If you notice steam or coolant escaping, do not turn on the engine compartment hood - risk of scalding! The engine compartment cover can only be opened when no steam or coolant overflows and the engine has cooled down.

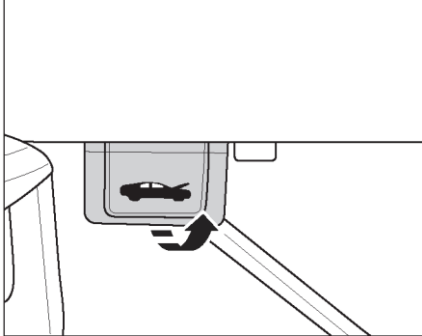
#### Warning

- Do not leak the working fluid on the hot engine or exhaust device, which may cause the risk of fire!
- Do not touch the cooling fan, which is temperature-controlled and may be automatically switched on after the vehicle is shut down.
- For safety reasons, the engine compartment hood must be locked during driving. Therefore, after the engine compartment cover is closed, it is necessary to check whether the locking device has been engaged. If the locking device has indeed been engaged, the engine compartment cover should be level with the parts around the vehicle body.
- To protect your face, hands and arms from high temperature steam and coolant, cover the locking cover with a wide thick cotton cloth when opening it.
- Do not leave objects such as cleaning cloth or tools in the engine compartment.

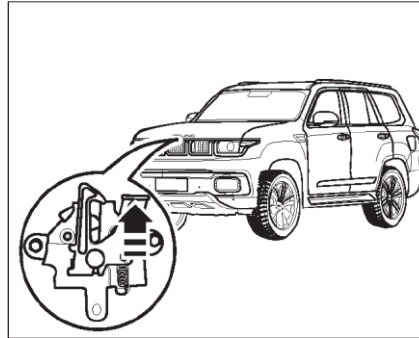
#### Warning

- When working under a vehicle, it shall be ensured that the vehicle does not move and supported in place with suitable brackets. A vehicle jack alone is not enough, and may lead to injury!

## Engine compartment hood ON/OFF



Park the vehicle, apply parking brake, and pull the release handle of the engine cover lock from the inside of the vehicle. At this time, the main engine cover lock is unlocked, and the engine cover will spring up slightly.



Lift up the engine compartment hood slightly, press the opening handle of the secondary engine compartment hood upward with your fingers, and lift up the handle.

To close the engine compartment hood, press it firmly and quickly at an appropriate high point from the engine compartment hood and close it completely.

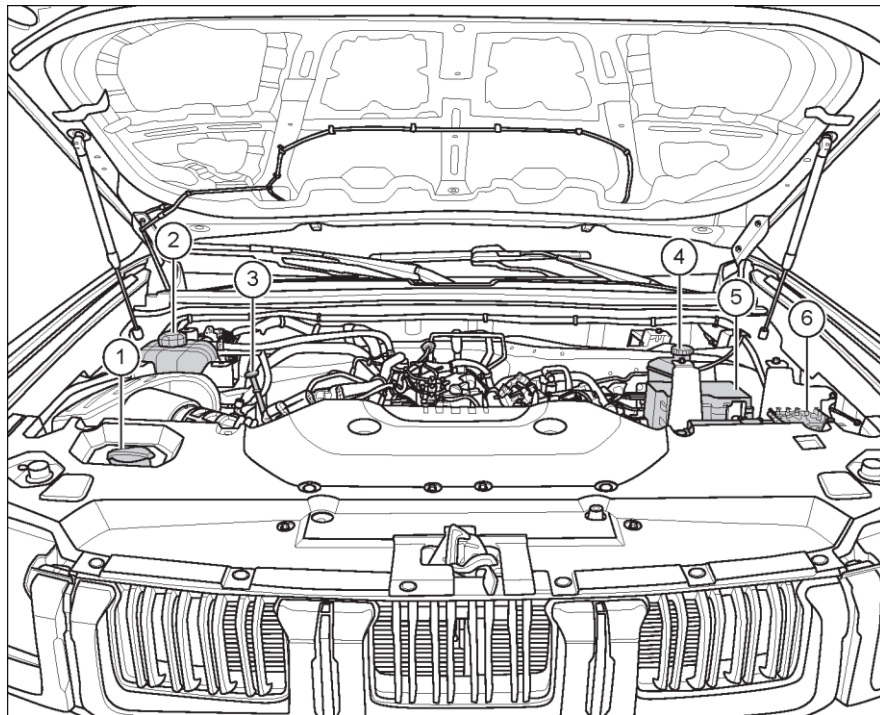
After the engine compartment cover is closed, be sure to check that the lock catch has been firmly locked.



Warning

**If the engine compartment cover is not tightly closed, do NOT drive the vehicle.**

## Arrangement of engine compartment (gasoline model)

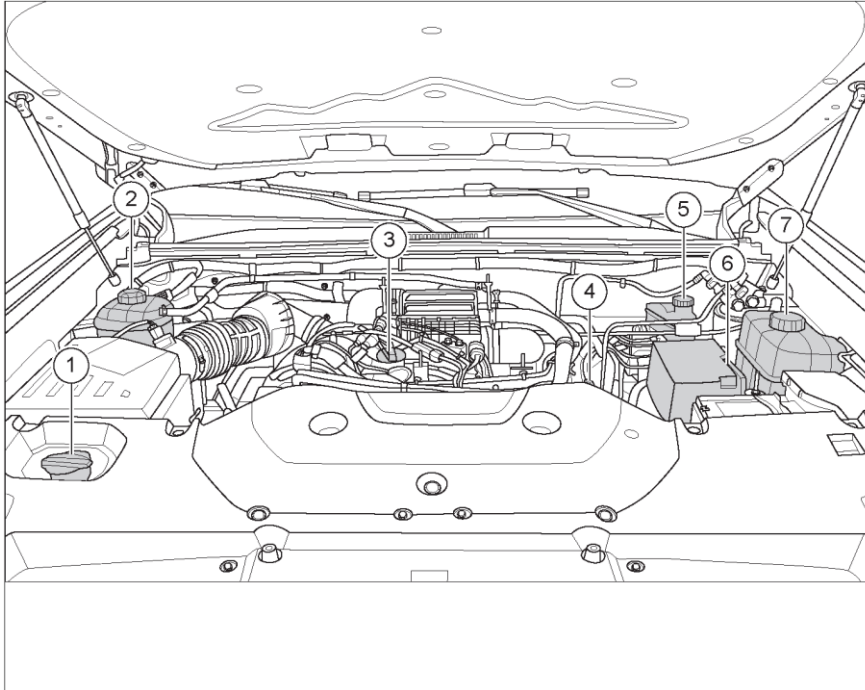


1. Windshield washing liquid storage tank
2. Coolant expansion tank
3. Dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Battery
6. Fuse (under the covering board)

### Note

- The figure shows the view with the engine compartment trim panel removed.

## Engine compartment layout (diesel models)



1. Windshield washing liquid storage tank
2. Expansion tank of engine coolant
3. Oil filler cap
4. Dipstick
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Fuse (under the covering board)
7. Coolant expansion tank of air cooling in water

### Note


- The figure shows the view with the engine compartment trim panel removed.

## Engine oil

Each week, check the engine oil level. If it is below the lower limit mark, then you need to promptly park the vehicle on flat ground. When the engine is in a cold state, it is the ideal time for checking the engine oil level. If the engine is running and the engine is warmed up, turn off the engine and wait at least 15 minutes before checking the engine oil level.

### Engine oil pressure indicator light

The engine oil pressure warning light is located in the message center display screen. When the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position (the engine is not started), the vehicles will self-check and the engine oil pressure warning light will come on. When the engine is started, the warning light will go out.

If the warning light  flashes during driving, turn off the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add engine oil if necessary.

If the oil level is normal but the warning light is still flashing, do not continue driving or run the engine at idle speed. Contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible for inspection and repair for the system.

#### Warning

**Ignoring the warning light or the relevant warning instructions may cause serious accidents.**

### Inspection of Engine Oil Level

If the warning light on the display screen of the information center is lit, you should immediately check the engine oil level and add engine oil as needed.

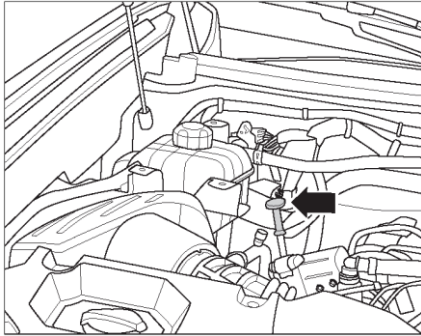
Using a dip stick to check the engine oil level.

- Too little engine oil may damage the engine.
- Too much engine oil may damage the three-way catalytic converter.

#### Note

**To check the engine oil level when the engine is in a hot state, you should turn off the engine and wait for at least 15 minutes until all the engine oil has flowed into the oil pan before checking the engine oil level. Check the oil level immediately when the engine is in cold state.**

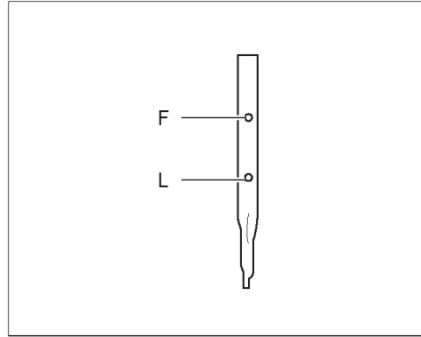
Gasoline model:



The specific steps are as follows:

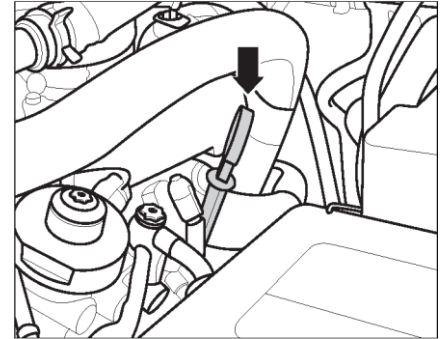
1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and open the engine compartment hood.
2. Pull out the dipstick by placing a piece of rag under the end of the dipstick.
3. Wipe off the grease on the dipstick with clean rag.
4. Reinsert the dipstick completely.
5. Place a piece of rag under the end of the dipstick. Pull out the dipstick and check the oil level.

6. It is recommended that the number of consecutive tests should not exceed 3. If the oil level at both ends of the dipstick are not the same, the lower oil level shall prevail.



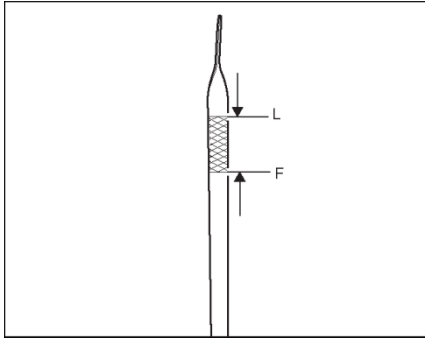
- The position indicated by the arrow -F- in the figure is the engine oil maximum mark.
- The position indicated by the arrow -L- in the figure is the engine oil minimum mark.
- The oil level shall be located between maximum mark -F- and minimum mark -L- in the illustration.

Diesel models:



The specific steps are as follows:

1. Park the vehicle in a horizontal position.
2. If the engine stops running, wait for 15 minutes, pull out the dipstick, wipe it over with clean cotton cloth, and then insert it back completely.



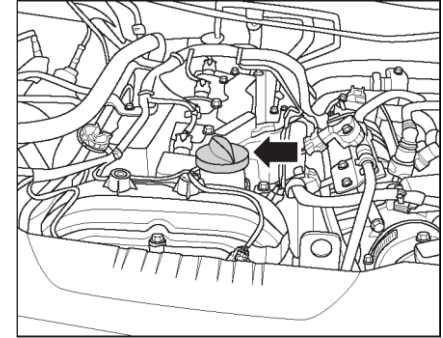
3. Pull out the oil dipstick to check the oil level, which shall be in the corrugated area. If the level is lower than the minimum mark, add engine oil until the level reaches the upper middle of the scale.
4. After filling the engine oil, keep the engine idling for 2 minutes, and then stop it for 15 minutes to view the oil level and check whether it meets the requirements.
  - -F- is the engine oil maximum mark.
  - -L- is the minimum mark for engine oil.
  - The oil level should be located between the maximum mark and minimum mark, otherwise the engine might be damaged.

Engine running will consume a certain amount of engine oil. The amount of engine oil consumed depends on the driving style and vehicle use. Therefore, it is necessary to regularly check the engine oil level. Before adding fuel and driving long distances, it is advisable to check the engine oil level.

When the vehicle runs long distances on the expressway in summer, or towing a trailer, or climbing along a mountain road, the engine runs under harsh conditions, and the oil level must not exceed the maximum mark -F-.

## Engine Oil Refilling (Gasoline Models)

Engine oil should be added by a small amount over several times.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Turn on the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and turn it counterclockwise to open the oil filler cap.
4. To avoid filling excessive engine oil, fill a small amount of engine oil each time, check the oil level, and refill as oil level requires.



5. Once the oil level is close to the maximum mark, please stop refueling immediately and install and tighten the oil filler cap.

**Warning**

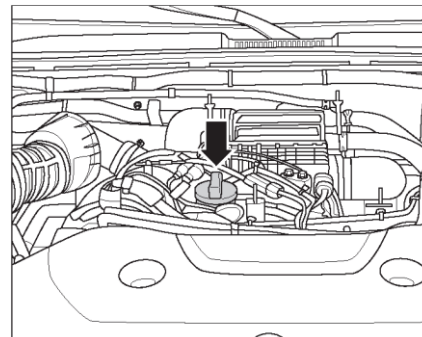
- Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant warnings before starting work.
- The engine oil is highly flammable. While adding engine oil, be sure to exercise care. Be careful to NOT spray engine oil onto any engine part or the exhaust system.
- The engine oil filler cap must always be in the tightening state to prevent the engine from splashing and causing a fire when it is running.
- Be sure to use the engine oil that is appropriate for the engine of the vehicle you purchased.
- If a different specification of engine oil is used, the engine may be damaged and this may lead to an accident.

**Note**

- If the oil level exceeds the maximum mark, do not start the engine; otherwise, the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.
- Engine oil that meets SP grade or higher in API grade shall be filled.
- The engine of the vehicle is filled with high quality engine oil at the factory and can be used all year round, except in extreme cold weather.
- Do not mix engine oil of different grades.

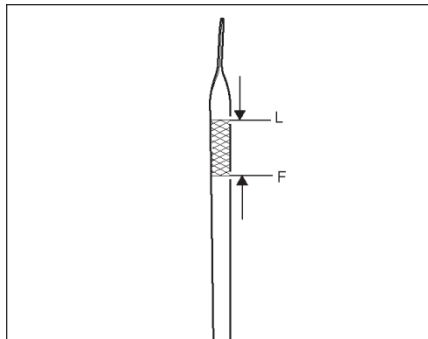
## Engine oil replenishment (diesel models)

Engine oil should be added by a small amount over several times.



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Turn on the engine compartment hood.
3. Press the oil filler cap and turn it counterclockwise to open the oil filler cap.
4. To avoid filling excessive engine oil, fill a small amount of engine oil each time, check the oil level, and refill as oil level requires.

5. Once the oil level is close to the maximum mark, please stop refueling immediately and install and tighten the oil filler cap.



 **Warning**

- Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant warnings before starting work.
- The engine oil is highly flammable. While adding engine oil, be sure to exercise care. Be careful to NOT spray engine oil onto any engine part or the exhaust system.

 **Warning**

- The engine oil filler cap must always be in the tightening state to prevent the engine from splashing and causing a fire when it is running.
- Be sure to use the engine oil that is appropriate for the engine of the vehicle you purchased.
- If a different specification of engine oil is used, the engine may be damaged and this may lead to an accident.

 **Note**

- If the oil level exceeds the maximum mark, do not start the engine; otherwise, the catalytic converter and engine may be damaged.
- Select the engine oil with different viscosity grades (grades) according to the following table for different ambient temperatures.

 **Note**

- Use ACEA normal C3 grade or higher special engine oil for diesel engines. GS Kixx D1 C3 5W-30 and PAO1 0W-30 are recommended. For extreme temperatures, engine should select the appropriate engine oil according to the outside temperature.
- The engine of the vehicle is filled with high quality engine oil at the factory and can be used all year round, except in extreme cold weather.
- Do not mix engine oil of different grades.

## Change of engine oil

Replace the engine oil by the cycle which is specified in BAIC's Warranty Manual. The service life of the engine can only be guaranteed if it is maintained and the engine oil is replaced in accordance with the provisions.

Change the engine oil in the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

If the vehicle needs to be driven under harsh conditions, or using high sulfur fuel, or frequently driving short distances, or idling for a long time (such as taxis), or driving in high dust areas, or frequently towing trailers, or driving in cold areas, it is necessary to increase the number of maintenance items or shorten the maintenance interval between regular service.

Additives in the engine oil may cause the color of the new engine oil to fade quickly. This is normal. It is not necessary to change the engine oil in advance.

### Warning

**If you have no relevant professional knowledge, do NOT replace the engine oil on your own.**

- **Be sure to wait for the engine cools down before operating to avoid being scalded by hot engine oil.**
- **Keep the arm horizontal when unscrewing the engine oil drain plug to avoid engine oil flowing along the arm.**
- **If the skin is stained with engine oil, it must be thoroughly rinsed.**
- **The discharged waste oil shall be contained in a special container large enough to hold all the waste oil.**
- **Do not store waste oil in containers that have been filled with food or other non-original containers to avoid confusion and poisoning by ingestion.**
- **As the engine oil is toxic, the waste oil must be stored in a safe place before handling it. Keep it out of reach of children.**

### Note

- **Do not add any lubricant to the engine oil. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged. Failures caused by adding lubricant are not covered by the warranty.**
- **If the vehicle is parked in the area below -30°C for a long time or usually moves around there, it is recommended to change the engine oil type which is more suitable for the area (pay attention to cleaning the oil circuit during oil change), so as to reduce the difficulty of cold start and damages to the engine.**

### Hint

- **Dealing with waste oil is a highly specialized job, which requires appropriate expertise and necessary special tools. Therefore, it is recommended that the operation shall be carried out by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.**
- **Waste oil is extremely harmful to the environment and water. Therefore, do not casually pour waste oil into sewer pipes or on the ground. In addition, it is extremely expensive to treat oils which have absorbed waste engine oil.**

## Coolant

### Role of Coolant

Correctly using coolant can play the role of protection against corrosion, cavitation leakage, radiator boiling, water scale and freezing. It can keep the cooling system constantly its best working state and ensure the normal working temperature of the engine.

When this car left the factory, glycol-based antifreeze should have been added into the cooling system.

#### Hint

Regardless of whether anti-freeze is needed or not, a coolant that meets the specifications should be used throughout the year.

To improve the anti-freeze ability of the coolant in cold seasons, please change to a coolant which suits use in the lowest local air temperature.

#### Warning

- The coolant must be kept in a closed container and kept out of reach of children.
- Do not pack coolant in food containers or other non-original containers to avoid confusion and possible poisoning by ingestion. The discharged waste coolant shall also be disposed of accordingly.
- In severe cold weather, to ensure the anti-freezing ability of the coolant, replace the coolant according to the ambient temperature. Otherwise, the coolant may freeze, causing damage to the vehicle. At the same time, the heating system does not work, exposing the driver and passengers to the cold and the risk of frostbite.

#### Note

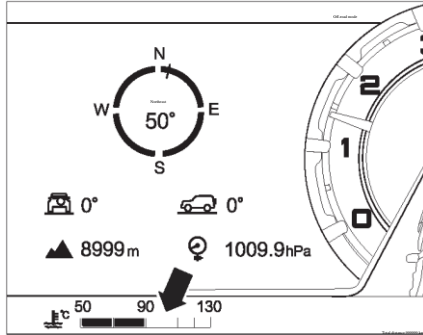
Do NOT add into the coolant the coolant of another manufacturer.

- The coolant shall not be mixed with any other coolant not approved by our company, otherwise the engine and cooling system may be seriously damaged.
- If the coolant in the coolant expansion tank is discolored and there is no other colored coolant mixed in, replace the coolant regularly as required.

#### Hint

Waste brake fluid must be collected and disposed of in accordance with the environmental protection laws and regulations.

## Coolant Temperature



When the Start/Stop button is on the "RUN" position, the coolant temperature instrument shows the engine coolant temperature. Under normal driving conditions, the instrument scale should be in the middle position approximately  $90^{\circ}$ . When the engine runs under a high load and the ambient temperature is very high, the coolant temperature will rise and the corresponding scale reading will also increase. When the coolant temperature is too high, the blue band of the thermometer extends to the right and the engine coolant indicator light goes on, it indicates that the vehicle is faulty. At this time, be sure to immediately stop the car if it is safe to do so, turn off the engine, wait for the coolant to cool down and then check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is normal, the system may be overheated due to faulty radiator fan. Check whether the radiator fan fuse is blown and replace the fuse as appropriate.

If the coolant temperature indicator light goes on again after a short drive, you must immediately stop the vehicle at a safe place, shut down the engine, and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible for system inspection and repair.

### Warning

**When performing maintenance on the engine compartment, be sure to exercise extra care.**

- **Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant warnings before starting work.**
- **The engine compartment is a high-risk area. Be sure to carefully read and follow the relevant warnings before opening the engine compartment hood.**
- **If you see steam or coolant overflowing engine compartment, do not open the engine compartment hood to avoid scalding. Wait until no steam or coolant overflows and then open the engine compartment cover.**

## Checking Coolant Level and Adding Coolant

A normal coolant level is vitally important for the engine cooling system to work normally.

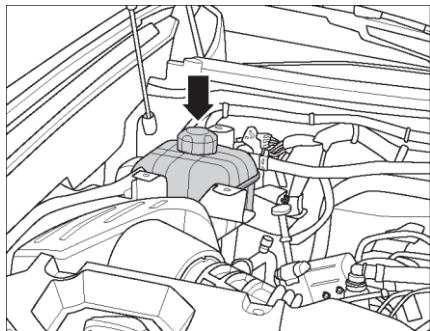
Before opening the engine compartment cover, be sure to park the vehicle on a flat road surface. Also be sure to carefully read and follow the relevant warning instructions.

### **i** Hint

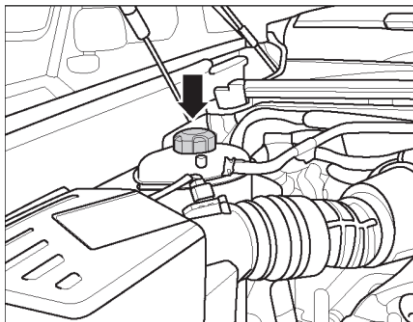
Coolant Specification: Glycol-based antifreeze

4

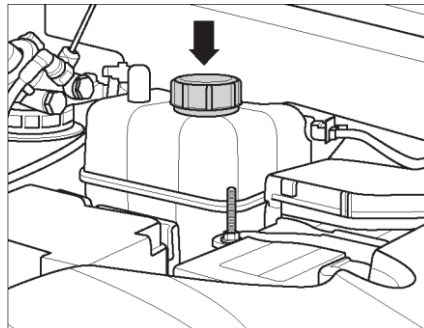
### Engine coolant expansion tank (gasoline model)



### Engine coolant expansion tank (diesel models)



### Water-air intercooler coolant expansion tank (diesel model)

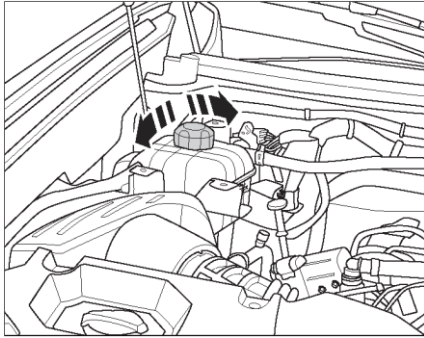


When the engine is in cold state, it is the best time to check whether the coolant level is within the mark on the side of expansion tank.

- "MAX" means the coolant maximum mark.
- "MIN" is the minimum mark of coolant.
- The coolant level shall be located between the maximum mark and the minimum mark.

If the level is below the "LOW" mark, then coolant must be added.

**Open the cover of the engine coolant expansion tank (take the engine coolant expansion tank as an example)**



The engine must not be running.

To avoid burnt, wrap the coolant recovery reservoir cover with a piece of large and thick cloth, and uncover it counterclockwise as indicated by the Arrow.

**i Hint**

The coolant expansion tank cover should be opened when the engine is in a cold state.

## Filling of Coolant

Only new coolant can be added.

After filling, the coolant level must be located between "MIN" line and "MAX" line.

**i Note**

The fluid level must not exceed the upper mark line of "MAX".

## Closing the Coolant Expansion Tank Cover

Mount and tighten the expansion tank cover.

**i Hint**

When the engine is in a hot state, the coolant level may be slightly higher than the upper limit mark.

**i Note**

- It is recommended to fill coolant when the engine is cold state, but the coolant level shall not exceed the maximum mark, otherwise excess coolant will overflow when the engine is hot state.
- Only new coolant can be filled when adding coolant. The coolant must comply with the provisions of this Manual. If suitable coolant cannot be purchased at this time, no other coolant may be added. If necessary, pure water may be temporarily added. However, coolant must be added as soon as possible in accordance with the provisions.
- If the coolant loses much, the cold state coolant shall not be added until the engine cools down. Otherwise the engine may be damaged. If there is a large loss of coolant, it indicates a leakage fault in the cooling system. At this time, it is necessary to go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to inspect the cooling system as soon as possible, so as not to damage the engine.

## Brake fluid

### The Function of Brake Fluid

Brake fluid are used to transmit power in vehicle hydraulic brake system.

#### Warning

- The brake fluid is corrosive - please keep container tightly sealed and out of reach of children. In case of accidental ingestion of brake fluid, seek medical advice immediately.
- Avoid contact of skin or eyes with brake fluid. In case of contact, rinse immediately with plenty of water.
- Do not splash brake fluid on hot engine; otherwise, a fire may occur.

When in use, the liquid level of the brake liquid tank may slightly drop due to the wear of the brake lining. If this does occur, you may decide whether to immediately add any brake fluid based on the brake fluid level. If the brake pedal stroke unexpectedly lengthens or the brake fluid level drops significantly, contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV immediately. If the brake fluid level is below the minimum mark of the storage tank, do NOT drive the vehicle.

#### Note

**Brake fluid must be completely replaced every two years.**

#### Warning

**Failure to change the brake fluid according to the specified time may cause the brake system to fail, causing serious accidents and personal injuries.**

## Brake fluid level

The brake fluid level must be checked according to the cycle as specified in the Warranty Manual.



When the engine is not running is the best time to check whether the brake fluid level is within the marked range on the side of the storage tank.

- "MAX" means brake fluid maximum mark.
- "MIN" is the minimum mark for the brake fluid.
- The brake fluid level shall be located between the maximum mark and the minimum mark.



If the level is below the "MIN" mark, brake fluid must be added.

Before opening the engine compartment cover, be sure to carefully read and follow the relevant warning instructions.

The brake fluid storage tank of the vehicle is located inside the engine compartment.

Due to the wear of the brake lining, the braking system of the vehicle will automatically adjust the braking pads. As a result, the brake fluid level will slightly drop. This is a normal occurrence. There is no need to worry about it.

If the brake fluid level falls markedly over a short period of time, then it indicates that the braking system may have a leak. In this case, you must stop immediately and do not continue driving. Contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible for a thorough check on the brake system.

### Warning

- **Be sure to read and observe the relevant warnings carefully before opening the engine compartment hood.**
- **If the brake system warning light does not go out or lights up during driving, the brake fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir may be too low. In order to avoid accidents, you must stop immediately, do not continue driving, and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible.**

## Replacement of brake fluid

The brake fluid is absorbent and can absorb the moisture in the surrounding air. If the brake fluid contains too much moisture, it will corrode the brake system, which will greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid and cause the braking effect to drop.

The brake fluid used in this brake system is specially developed by BAIC ORV for this vehicle. To ensure that the brake system works properly, it is recommended that the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV replace the brake fluid with a normal one.

### Hint

**Specification of brake fluid: DOT4.**

 Warning

- Incorrect maintenance will cause brake failure and injury.
- Before filling the brake fluid, it is necessary to remove grease and dust from the reservoir. Contaminated brake fluid may cause braking failure and thus serious accidents.
- Only use conforming brake fluid. Brake fluids of different brands contain different additives, which may have chemical reactions between them. Do not mix and use brake fluids of different brands.
- The container in which the brake fluid is stored must be clean. Mixing any small amount of other liquid or impurities may cause the brake to malfunction.
- The brake fluid surface shall not drop quickly after the normal maintenance and inspection. Otherwise, go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for inspection and repair immediately.

 Warning

Using used brake fluid or brake fluid that are not suitable for this vehicle will greatly reduce the braking effect and even lead to brake system failure.

- Brake fluid containers are marked with brake fluid specifications, and the correct brake fluid must be used.
- Brake fluid is toxic.
- Never pack brake fluid in food containers or other non-original containers to avoid confusion and poisoning. The brake fluid must be stored in the original sealed the container and the container should be put in a safe place. Be careful to prevent children from touching it. Otherwise, they may be accidentally poisoned.

 Note

The brake fluid is corrosive to the body paint, so the brake fluid splashed on the paint shall be removed in time.

 Hint

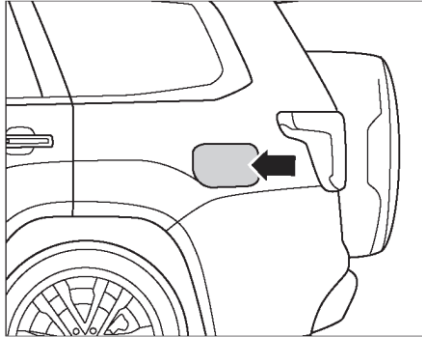
Waste brake fluid must be collected and disposed of in accordance with the environmental protection laws and regulations.

 Warning

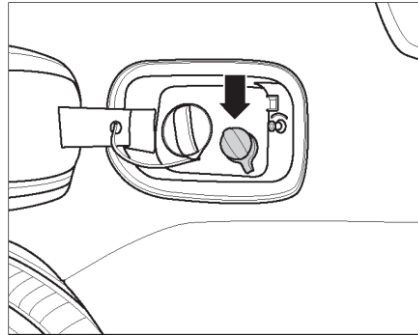
The brake fluid must be replaced according to the cycle as specified in the Warranty Manual. If the brake fluid stays in the system for too long, air resistance will be caused inside the pipeline of the system when the brake is applied. This will reduce the braking effect and driving safety, or even cause the braking system to be completely ineffective, thus resulting in accidents.

## Urea system\*

Turn off the engine before filling. Then, follow the steps below:



1. After unlocking the central control, press the arrow indicating area.



2. Turn the cap counterclockwise and unscrew the urea filler cap;
3. Automatic filling: put the fuel nozzle into the filling port, pay attention to the way of holding the fuel nozzle, do not make the fuel nozzle skew, and try to insert the fuel nozzle into the depth of the urea tank filling pipe as far as possible. When the gun jumps, it is fully filled and automatic filling is completed;
4. Manual filling: pour the AdBlue into the tank along the filling port and filling pipe. When the AdBlue level reaches the filling port, the tank is filled up, and manual filling is completed;

5. After filling the AdBlue, tighten the AdBlue tank cap clockwise immediately until you hear a click sound.
6. After closing the urea tank cap, close the fuel tank door.
7. When the door lock is locked, the fuel tank door is locked.

### Note

- **Do not refill after manual filling, otherwise in low temperature environment, excessive AdBlue will affect the normal operation of the AdBlue system.**
- **The urea shall not be sprinkled outside the fill port. Wipe clean any overflow as possible.**
- **Please keep the AdBlue filler, filling equipment (funnel, filling pipe, etc.) and adjacent parts clean to prevent impurities from entering and causing malfunction of the AdBlue system parts.**

## Reactant

To ensure performance, it is necessary use an aqueous automotive urea solution (AUS 32) that meets the standard. It is strictly prohibited to use low-quality urea or other liquids, otherwise it may cause damage to the components and parts of the urea system

### Note

- When filling the AdBlue, if the AdBlue is splashed on the paint or aluminum surface by accident, rinse it with clean water immediately to prevent corrosion.
- Keep AdBlue away from children.
- Avoid AdBlue splashing on skin, eyes or clothes. When the solution splashes into the eyes, wash the eyes with a large amount of clean water immediately for at least 15 minutes. When the solution splashes onto the skin, wash the skin with clean water and soap in time, and seek medical advice in time if necessary.
- Do not swallow AdBlue. If so, rinse your mouth with water and drink plenty of water. See a doctor if necessary.

### Note






- After the urea filler cap is opened, ammonia vapor may escape if the internal temperature is high. Ammonia vapor emits a pungent odor that can cause significant irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs. It is necessary to avoid inhaling ammonia vapor. If the concentration of ammonia vapor is high and the time is long, it may burn the eyes, nose, and throat, causing coughing and tearing.
- Containers made of aluminum, copper, copper, unalloyed, or galvanized steel are not suitable for storing AdBlue. If these containers are used, the AdBlue may cause breakdown of the metallic components and cause irreparable damage to the urea system.

### Hint

- The AdBlue consumption depends on the driving conditions and vehicle usage. The filling amount of the AdBlue will vary from case to case. In case of low temperature environment, conduct filling by strictly following the specified requirements.
- AdBlue will freeze under low temperature environment. If the AdBlue cannot be filled, move the vehicle to a warm place to thaw it naturally. In case of abnormal AdBlue system, contact the dealership of BAIC Motor as soon as possible for system inspection and repair.

# Battery

## Battery Operation Warning Symbols and Their Explanations

	1. Be sure to wear goggles during maintenance!
	2. As the battery electrolyte is highly corrosive, protective gloves and goggles must be worn during operation!
	3. Open flame, spark, no shade lamps and smoking are prohibited in the workplace!
	4. Explosive gas mixture will be generated during battery charging!
	5. Keep children away from electrolyte and battery!

If you are unfamiliar with the repair processes or have no required tools, be sure to NOT perform any maintenance on the electrical system of the vehicle. Without absolute certainty, the work should be carried out by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

⚠ Warning
<p>There is a danger of injury, corrosion, accident or fire in the maintenance of vehicle batteries and electrical parts!</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not allow acidic or lead-containing particles to fall into your eyes, on your skin or on your clothes.</li> <li>• The acid in the battery is strongly corrosive, and it is necessary to wear protective gloves and glasses. Do NOT turn batteries. Otherwise, the acid inside will flow out of their exhaust hole. If acid splashes into the eyes, rinse immediately with a large amount of clean water and see a doctor immediately. If battery acid is splashed onto the skin or clothes, be sure to immediately use a dense soap liquid to neutralize it and then use a large amount of water to wash it. If the acid is swallowed by mistake, be sure to immediately go to see a doctor.</li> <li>• The battery will produce explosive gas mixtures during charging. Therefore, the battery shall be stored in a well-ventilated place during charging.</li> </ul>

⚠ Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No open flame, spark, bright light and smoking. When handling power cables and electrical equipment and removing static loads, it is necessary to prevent sparks from being generated. Do NOT make the battery terminals short-circuit. Otherwise, the high-energy sparks generated in the short-circuit may harm the maintenance personnel.</li> <li>• When removing the battery, first remove cables on the cathode, and then the anode.</li> <li>• Keep children away from acid and battery.</li> <li>• Turn off all electrical devices before switching on the battery again. Connect the positive cable first and then the negative cable. Do NOT connect the power cables in the wrong way. This may cause fire!</li> <li>• Do not remove or install the battery without permission. In some cases, this will cause serious damage to the battery and fuse box. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if necessary.</li> </ul>

## Inspection of battery power

1. Check if the battery is fixed properly.
2. Check the positive and negative cables connectors of battery or looseness and corrosion.
3. Check the battery positive and negative cables insulation for damage.
4. Keep the battery dry and clean to prevent blockage of battery vents.

In the event of the following usage conditions or situations, be sure to regularly check battery power:

- High distance vehicle.
- Driving in hot countries or regions.
- The battery is too aged.
- Drive in countries and regions of cold weathers.



Warning

- **Be sure to carefully read and observe the safety warnings related to battery operation before starting work.**
- **Never disassemble the battery to prevent chemical burns and battery explosion.**
- **Do not connect to damaged or leaking battery, which must be recycled and disposed of according to environmental protection regulations.**
- **Open flame, spark, unshaded lamps and smoking are prohibited in the workplace. When operating the cables and electrical devices, attention must be paid to prevent electric sparks and static electricity. Do not short circuit the battery terminals, otherwise the high-energy sparks generated by the short-circuit may injure the operator.**

## Winter Work

There are especially strict requirements for on-board batteries in winter, because the starting power which they can provide at low temperatures is only part of the starting power in room temperature. Therefore, we recommend that before the cold season begins, it is best to check the vehicle battery at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV and charge it in time if necessary.

If your vehicle is not driven for several weeks under an extremely cold situation, you should remove the on-board battery and keep it indoors so as to protect it from damage.

## Battery charging and battery replacement

Only when you possess the essential professional knowledge should you perform maintenance on the battery.

If the vehicle is frequently driven over short distances or is parked and not used for a long time, be sure to increase the frequency of battery checks between the specified maintenance cycle.

In the event of battery damage, the battery power will be insufficient, making it difficult to start the vehicle. If this happens, it is recommended that the battery shall be recharged or replaced by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV and the intelligent battery sensor shall be re-matched

 Note

Only the electrical devices confirming to the national electromagnetic compatibility specifications and approved by BAIC ORV can be used.

## Battery charging

If the battery has been used for a rather long time, it may not maintain charging efficiency when it is completely new. If the vehicle is used too infrequently, or the vehicle makes too many short starts, or runs in a cold environment, then its battery needs to be charged regularly.

Before charging, be sure to check the state of the battery.

 Warning

- Do not charge the battery when it is connected to the vehicle. This may seriously damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- If the battery monitor indication is colorless, do not attempt to charge the battery.
- Do not attempt to charge the battery if the battery freezes.

During charging, the battery will produce corrosive acidic volatile gases and generate currents that can cause serious damage. Therefore, the following precautions shall be taken during charging:

- It is necessary to disconnect the terminal from the vehicle and remove the battery before charging. Charging the battery that are connected to cables will damage the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before turning on the charger switch, make sure that the battery charger cable is securely clamped to the terminal of the battery. Do not move the cable once the charger is turned on.
- Protect your eyes during charging.
- Keep good ventilation around the top of the battery and avoid strong light near the battery (the battery will produce flammable hydrogen before and after charging). When the color in the battery monitor indication window shows green, please stop charging, otherwise the battery will be overcharged.
- Turn off the battery charger before disconnecting the wire from the battery terminal after charging.

If the Start/Stop button is in "RUN" mode for a long time after the engine is switched off, or lighting equipment such as headlamp is turned on for a long time, the battery may discharge rapidly, causing battery loss.

**Note**

**In cold weather, the battery takes longer to recharge. After charging, it is necessary to leave the battery for more than 1 hour before loading it on the car again, in order to dissipate flammable gases and minimize the danger of fire and explosion.**

4

This vehicle is equipped with 48 V lithium battery used for Start/Stop function. Do not disassemble or discard it at will. Please contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV if you have any problems.

## Replacement of battery

Only use a battery of the same model and the same specification as that of the battery to be replaced. Otherwise, there may be situations of inconsistent dimensions or different terminal positions, thus likely to cause battery damage, leakage or fire.

When replacing a battery, ensure that it is correctly mounted. Be sure that the battery tray and the pressing board are correctly fixed so as to prevent the battery from moving in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

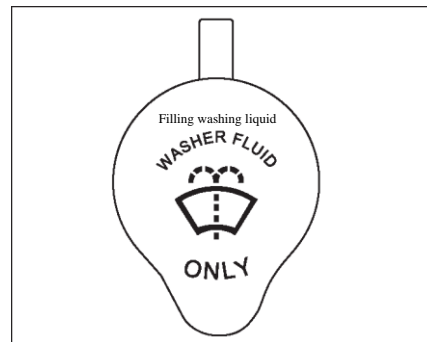
The battery of the original factory of BAIC ORV can meet the requirements of vehicle maintenance, vehicle performance and safety.

**Note**

**Before starting battery maintenance, be sure to carefully read and follow the safety warning instructions for battery maintenance.**

## Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade

### Adding Windshield Washing Liquid



The washing liquid of both the front and rear windshield is supplied from the washing liquid storage tank inside the engine compartment. If it is found the washing liquid level is too low, be sure to promptly add washing liquid into the storage tank.



It is difficult to wash the front and rear windshields thoroughly with pure water, and they may freeze in cold conditions, so please use a windscreen washer fluid that meets the requirements of BAIC ORV.

 **Warning**

**When performing maintenance on the engine compartment, be sure to exercise extra care.**

- **Be sure to carefully read and observe the relevant warnings before starting work.**
- **Do not add coolant or any other additives into the glass windscreen washer fluid. Otherwise, greasy stains will be left when cleaning the glass, which will seriously affect the front vision and cause accidents.**

## Replacement of windshield wiper blade

 **Note**

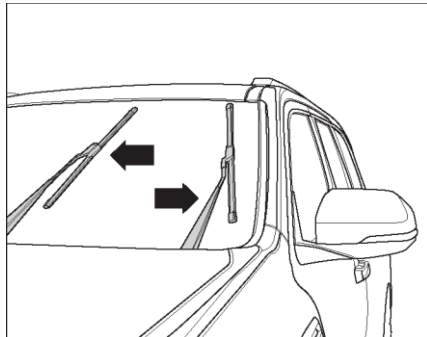
- **The wiper blade must be kept in a good state, which is necessary to keep a clear view.**
- **The wiper blade shall be cleaned regularly with windshield cleaning agent to prevent the formation of schlieren. If the windshield glass is very dirty, such as with insect remains, you may use a sponge and cloth to clean and wipe the wiper blade.**
- **In cold weather, check whether the wiper blade is frozen before turning on the windshield washer each time. The windshield washer can be operated only when the front rear wiper blade is free of interference or obstruction.**

If there is friction noise in the wiper blade, it may be caused by:

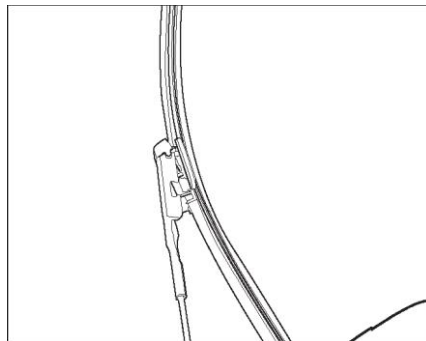
- When washing the vehicle in the automatic vehicle washing equipment, there is a hard wax residue that is consolidated on the windshield. Such hard wax residues can only be cleared using a special cleaning agent. This friction noise can be eliminated by adding windshield cleaning agent that dissolves paraffin. Ordinary washing liquids which can only dissolve grease cannot clear such deposits.
- If the wiper blade is damaged, it can also cause friction noise. In this case, the wiper blade shall be replaced.
- If the positioning angle of the wiper arm is incorrect, please go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to check and adjust the positioning angle.

It is necessary to regularly check the wiper blade and replace the wiper blade as required. Otherwise, it will damage the front and rear windshield.

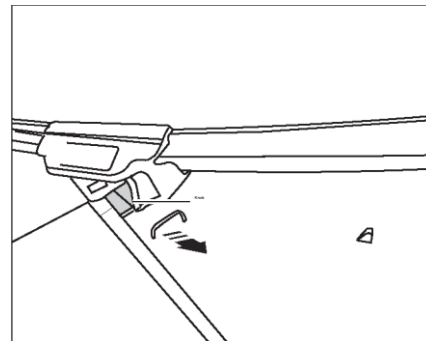
## Replacing Front Wiper Blade



1. Turn on the wiper inspection and repair mode through the infotainment screen.



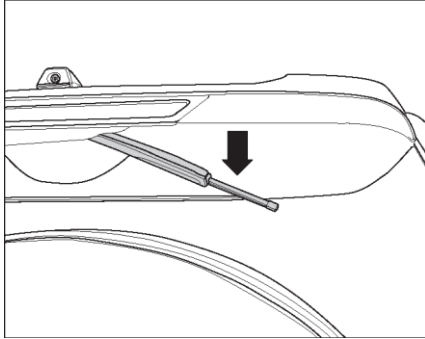
2. Pull up the wiper arm and turn the wiper blade along the arrow direction to the position shown in the figure.



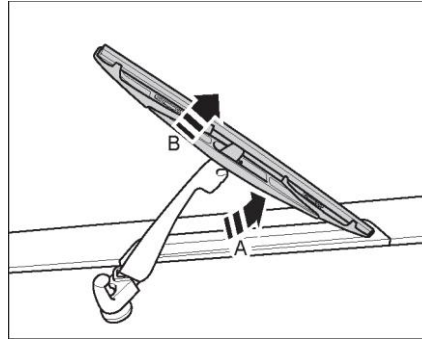
3. Press the button to unlock the wiper blade, and then pull the wiper blade in the direction of arrow-

A wiper blade can be mounted following the sequence opposite that of removing the wiper blade.

## Replacing Rear Wiper Blade



1. Turn on the wiper inspection and repair mode through the infotainment screen.
2. Pull up the rear wiper arm.



3. Turn the rear wiper to the position shown in the figure along -arrow A- and remove the rear wiper along -arrow B- after disengaging it from the slot on the rear wiper arm.

Rear wiper blade can be mounted following the sequence opposite that of removing the rear wiper blade.

### Warning

While driving, be sure to clean all vehicle window glass to maintain good vision!

- Clean wiper blade and all windows regularly.
- The wiper blade should be replaced once or twice a year.
- It is advisable to avoid the wiper blade from dry scraping the windshield to avoid aging, abrasion and fuzzing of rubber strips, which may affect driving safety.

## Tire

Defective tires are very dangerous! Do not drive in case of the tires are damaged, excessive wear or improper pressure.

When driving, please pay close attention to the state of the tires, and regularly check the tread and sidewall for deformation (bulge), scratches, abnormal wear, cracks, spikes, etc.

The most common causes of tire failure:

- Hitting or rubbing the shoulder
- Driving through deep pothole on the road
- Too low or too high tire pressure

### Note

**Be careful to prevent tire wear from engine oil, grease, gasoline and other vehicle liquids.**

## Instructions for tire storage

Before removing the tire, a mark shall be made on the tire to indicate the tire rotation direction. When installing the tire, resetting according to the mark can ensure that the direction of rotation and dynamic state of the wheel remain unchanged.

The removed wheels and tires should be stored in a cool and dry place, ideally in shade, away from sunlight.

Tires which are not yet mounted on the vehicle should be stored vertically.

### Tire pressure

The correct tire pressure can prolong the service life of tires. It can also ensure the best combination of driving comfort, fuel economy and drivability.

When the tire pressure is too low, it will intensify tire wear, greatly affect the drivability and fuel economy of the vehicle and increase the danger of lost tire effectiveness. If the tire pressure is too high, it will cause driving instability and uneven tire wear, thus reducing the service life of the tires.

Check the tire pressure (including the spare tire) at least once a week. Make sure the tire is at room temperature - as little as 1.6 km of driving will allow the tires to heat up sufficiently to affect the pressure.

The pressure in a hot tire will inevitably rise; If it is necessary to check the tire pressure when the tire is hot (after the vehicle has been running for a while), the pressure should increase by about 0.2 to 0.5 bar. In such a situation, please do NOT deflate the tires for the purpose of making the tire pressure up to the standard.

Please refer to the "Tire Information" on page 315 for details on the tire pressure standards in cold state.

## When to Check Tire Pressure?

Tires should be checked at least once a week. Do not forget to check the spare tire pressure, which is 240 kPa (5 seats), 260 kPa (7 seats).

## How to Check Tire Pressure?

Besides the tire pressure monitoring system, tire pressure can also be checked with high-quality pocket-type tire pressure gauge. It is not possible to determine whether the tire pressure is normal by visual checks alone. Even if not adequately inflated, radial tires still look very normal. Check inflated tire pressure when they are cold. The cold state means the vehicle has been stopped for more than three hours or travelled no more than 1.6 km.

Remove the valve cap from the valve core of the tire, press the tire pressure gauge to the valve with force, and then the tire pressure will be displayed. No adjustment will be needed if the inflated pressure of the tire in a cold state meets the recommended pressure value on the tire and loading information label. If the pressure is too low, inflate it to the recommended value. If the pressure is too high, bleed the air by pressing the valve until it reaches the recommended pressure.

After the check is completed, be sure to screw the valve cap back on the valve core. The valve cap can prevent dust and moisture from entering the tire.

## Tire puncture

Your vehicle is equipped with treadless tires. When the tires are punctured by a sharp object, there may not be apparent air leakage in the tires. If you spot such a situation, immediately slow down and drive carefully. Replace the punctured tire with a spare tire or repair it.

As this type of puncture will reduce the tire pressure, it is very important to check the atmospheric pressure regularly. Punctured or damaged tire must be repaired immediately or replaced as soon as possible.


## Concealed damage

Damage to tire and rim is often not easy to find. If abnormal vibration or deviation of the vehicle is found during vehicle driving, a tire may be faulty. In this case, you should go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for tire inspection as soon as possible.



Warning

- **As the adhesion on the road for the new tires is impossible to reach the best state within the first 500 km, the vehicle must be operated carefully at an appropriate speed, so as to avoid accidents.**
- **Insufficient road adhesion of without running-in tire or excessively worn tire can directly affect the braking effect.**
- **Do not continue driving after the tires are damaged, otherwise it is very easy to cause accidents, because the damaged tire may burst during driving, resulting in traffic accidents and injuries.**
- **The tire pressure must comply with regulations, otherwise it may cause accidents. If the tire pressure is insufficient, the vehicle will continue to run at high speeds, causing the tire to flex. This can easily lead to overheating of the tire, which can lead to tire burst.**
- **Never use tires that have been damaged or worn to the tire tread wear mark, and replace such tires in time.**

 Warning

- Avoid using tire older than six years as much as possible. If you have to use it, be sure to drive with extreme caution and at a low speed.
- Old wheel and old tire of unknown origin shall not be used, because such wheel and tire may be damaged without visible damage, which may cause loss of control of the vehicle during driving and cause accidents.
- In case of abnormal vibration or deviation of the vehicle during driving, it shall be stopped immediately to check whether the tire is damaged.

 Warning

**Precautions for off-road driving**

Be sure to pay attention to the following precautions to minimize the possibility of injury or vehicle damage:

- Be very careful and foresight when driving off-road. High speed and wrong driving may cause vehicle damage and personal injury. Do not risk driving in dangerous areas.
- When stopping, please ensure that the tires will not be squeezed and deformed by curbs or other obstacles. Otherwise, the tire may bulge, and even burst when driving.
- Large wheels: For certain tire sizes, the lower the profile, the lower the ride comfort on rough roads, the lower the tire rolling comfort and suspension comfort of the tires. The risk of wheel and tire damage increases when the vehicle passes through obstacles.

 Warning

- If you have to drive over curbs, speed bumps or similar convex places (such as gravel road with large drop, gravel road and other uneven roads), please try to drive at a low speed. Otherwise, the tire (especially the tire sidewall) may be damaged.
- When driving on off-road or bumpy roads, try to drive at a low speed. Do not jump, make sharp turns or hit objects. Otherwise, the tire, wheel and chassis may be seriously damaged, and the vehicle may be out of control or roll over, resulting in casualties.

## Valve

Keep the valve hole cap tightly screwed to prevent dust from entering the valve hole. When inspecting the tire pressure, check the valve for air leaks (preferably soapy to see if there are bubbles).

**i Hint**

A suitable amount of home-use washing liquid may be added to clear water, and spread in the valve hole to see whether air bubbles are generated. If bubbles are produced, it indicates that there is gas leakage.

**Tire inspection and transposition**

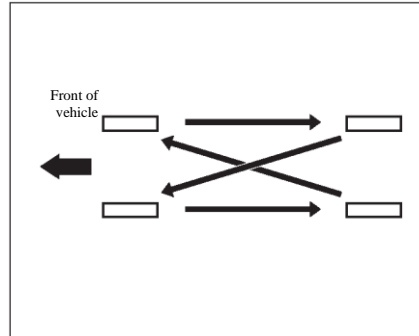
It is recommended that the tire should be transposed for every 5000km, or more frequently as required.

As long as abnormal wearing of the tire is found, it should be transposed as soon as possible and checked for wheel alignment. It is also necessary to check to see whether the tires or wheels are damaged.

In addition, regularly check the tightening torque of the wheel nut to ensure that the torque after alignment reaches  $(140 \pm 10)$  N·m. It is recommended to check the tightening torque of each nut when the vehicle travels 1500km, 5000km and 8000km. In the future, tighten the nuts in strict accordance with the torque requirements every time the wheel assembly is removed.

**i Hint**

The purpose of regularly rotating tires is to make all tires wear evenly.



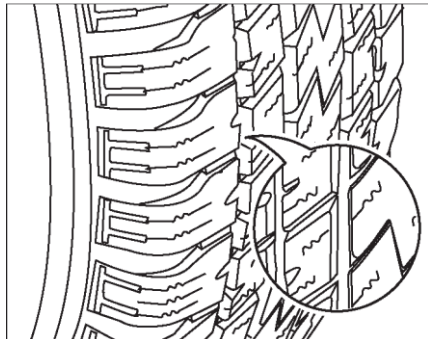
When rotating tires, be sure to follow the correct rotation mode as shown in the diagram.

After the tires are rotated, adjust the inflation pressures of the front and rear tires according to the tire and loading information label. Ensure that all lug nuts have been correctly fastened.

**⚠ Warning**

Rusting or dirt on the wheels or wheel connectors will cause the loosening of the lug nuts after a certain period of time, thus resulting in the falling-off of wheels and traffic accidents. Therefore when replacing wheels, it is necessary to clear any rust or dirt on the wheels and their connectors. In emergency situations, cloth or tissues may be used to clean. If necessary, a scraper or a wire brush may be used to clear all rust or dirt. At the same time, regularly check the tightening torque of the wheel nut, and ensure that the torque reaches  $(140 \pm 10)$  N·m after calibration. It is recommended to check the tightening torque of each nut for every 1500 km, 5000 km and 8000 km of the vehicle driving, and tighten them by strictly following the requirements of the torque for every time removing the wheel assembly.

## When to replace new tires



All original tires are marked with a wear indication, which locates in narrow strips inside the grooves of the tread and is distributed on the circumference of the tire. On the road side of the tires, there are small triangle signs indicating the position of the marks. When the tread pattern has been worn to the indication mark, the tires should be promptly replaced.

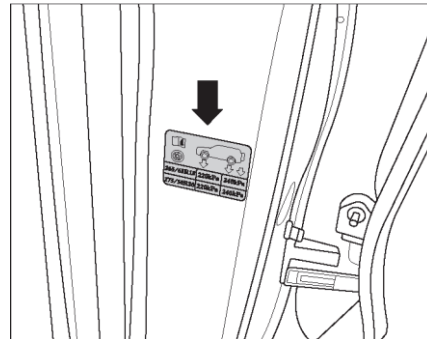
### i Hint

**If the tire wear is uneven (only worn on one side) or excessively worn, you shall go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for wheel alignment.**

If any of the following situations occurs, tires will need to be replaced:

- The tire wear indication mark is worn.
- The cord or cord fabric in the tire can be observed directly.
- The tread or tyre wall is cracked, and the crack is so deep that the cord fabric or cord thread can be seen.
- Tire bulge, uplift, or delamination.
- The tire is punctured, scratched or otherwise damaged, and the damaged size and position are difficult to repair.

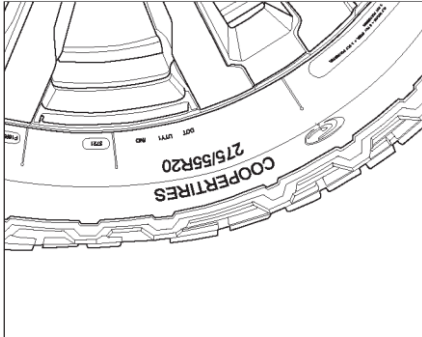
## Tire Information



There is a nameplate about tire information on the B-pillar on the driver side, which shall be inflated according to the tire pressure specified on the nameplate.



### Purchase of new tire



View the tire and loading information label on the vehicle to get information on the model and dimension of the tires needed.

### Warning

**Mixed use of tires will make the vehicle run out of control while driving. If you mix tires of different dimensions or models (radial tires and bias-belted tires), it will not be possible to steer the vehicle normally, thus causing accidents. Use of tires of different dimensions may damage the vehicle. Therefore, all wheels must have the same dimension and model.**

## Balance of wheels

When the vehicle leaves the factory, the wheel has been balanced, but there are many factors that will affect the wheel balance during the vehicle wheel.

Be sure to promptly perform dynamic balance treatment on imbalanced wheels. Otherwise, it will cause excessive wear to the steering system, the suspension system and tires.

After tires are replaced, the wheels must be dynamically balanced again.

Dynamic balance standard of wheel:

- Unilateral residual unbalance  $\leq 8$  g (HT tyre)
- Unilateral residual unbalance  $\leq 10$  g (AT tyre)

## Inaccurate Wheel Alignment

Wheel alignment misalignment will lead to uneven tire wear, which will reduce driving safety. If uneven tire wear is found, the driver shall go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible for wheel alignment.

### Replacement of rim

Bent, cracked or seriously rusting or corroded rims should be replaced. If the wheel nuts become loose frequently, the wheel and wheel nuts shall be replaced. Wheels that leak should be replaced (except for some repairable aluminium wheels). If any of the above occurs, go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV for repair.

Authorized dealership of BAIC ORV are aware of what kind of rim to use. The load capacity, diameter, width and eccentricity of the new rim should be the same as those of the original wheels, and the method of installation should be the same.

If you need to replace the rim, you should only use the original spare parts of BAIC ORV to replace it, which will ensure that the rim matches your vehicle.

### Warning

- **It is very dangerous to use inappropriate rim, which may affect the brake and maneuverability of the vehicle, cause tire leak and make the vehicle out of control. It may cause accidents, injuring you or others.**
- **Wrong rims can also cause problems in bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or distance calibration, headlamp aiming, bumper height, ground clearance, and clearance between tires or tire chains and the body and chassis.**
- **Replacement with used rim for vehicles can also be dangerous. There is no way for you to know how the used rim has been used or how many miles it has been driven. Such rims may suddenly break down and cause an accident. If you need to replace the rim, be sure to use a new original BAIC ORV rim.**

### In tire burst

Tire puncturing is not often seen while driving. This is particularly true when the tires are properly maintained. If a tire leaks, it could be very slow. However, once tire puncturing is encountered, the phenomena that occur and the suggested measures for coping with them are as follows:

If a front tire is punctured, the drag effect of the flat tire will make the vehicle deviate to its side. At this time, you should immediately lift off the accelerator pedal and tightly hold the steering wheel. Steer the vehicle to keep it in the original lane and lightly depress the brake to stop the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe place.

If a rear tire is punctured, you should release the accelerator pedal. Turn the steering wheel to your desired driving direction so as to keep control over the vehicle. It may be bumpy and noisy, but you can still control the turning and gently step on the brake to stop the vehicle in the emergency lane or a safe place.

## Tire chain

Do not install any tire chain that are not approved by BAIC ORV. This may damage the brake parts.

Nonskid chains not suitable for the snow ground will damage the tires, rims, suspension, brake, and body of the vehicle. Only use the tire chain recommended by the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV and passed the Beijing Off-Road Test. When using, please pay attention to the following requirements:

1. The tire chain can only be installed on the drive wheel;
2. Please follow the tensioning instructions of the tire chain installation and the speed limits for different road conditions.
3. Do not exceed a speed of 50 km/h.
4. To avoid excessive wear of the tires are damaged and the tire chain, be sure to remove the tire chain when driving on a snowless road.

## Recovery and environmental protection

### Material recycling

#### Plastic

Plastic and rubber parts are marked in accordance with the regulations in force. To facilitate recycling, the range of materials used has been limited: most plastic are thermoplastics materials that can be recycled by melting, granulating and crushing.

#### Metal

100% recyclable.

#### Glass

It can be disassembled and disposed by the window manufacturer.

#### Rubber

After being crushed, the tire and sealing ring can be used as waterproof membrane, rubber track, etc.

## Environmental protection

Consigning your vehicle to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV will help you to contribute to the environmental protection by controlling various pollution hazards.

### Scrapped or damaged parts

They cannot be thrown away casually. The authorized dealership of BAIC ORV has measures for recycling and environmental protection.

### Waste fluid

Authorized dealership of BAIC ORV shall be responsible for collecting and disposing wastes, and entrusted to replace and control various pollution and hazards.

### Waste battery and battery

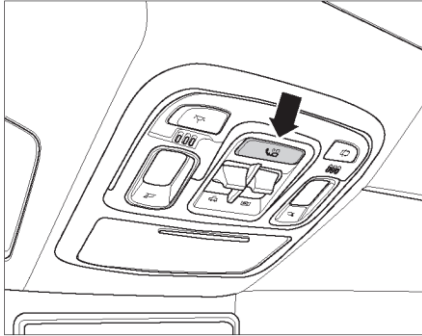
Don't throw away battery and remote control battery. They are harmful to the environment. Please take them to an approved collection point.

---

## 5 Accident handling

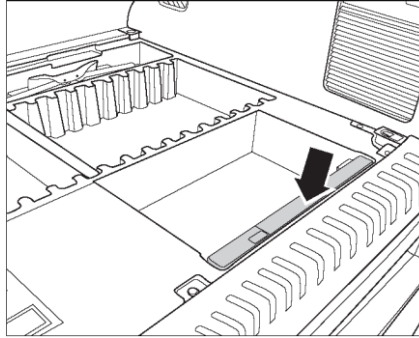
Roadside assistance.....	299
Warning Triangles.....	299
Spare Tires and Tools .....	300
Replacement of Fuse.....	308
Replacement of Bulb.....	320
Emergency Startup.....	321
Emergency tow .....	322

## Roadside assistance



You may press and hold the roadside assistance button at the ceiling lamp position, and then call the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV at 4008108177 for help.

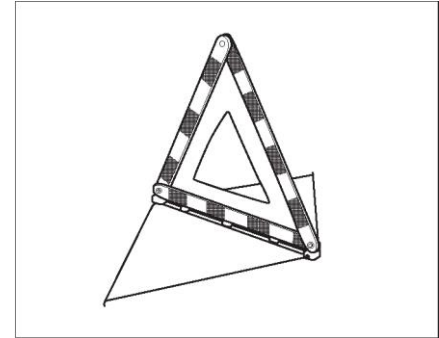
## Warning Triangles



### **i** Hint

**The warning triangle is located in the rear floor storage box.**

If the vehicle breaks down on the road, park it on the emergency lane or a safe place, turn on the danger warning light, get warning triangle from the driver's seat, fold them out, and put them in the designated positions so that drivers of other vehicles can spot the danger, slow down and pass by.



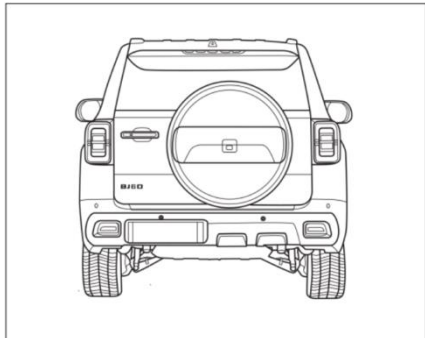
The warning triangles should be placed behind the vehicle driving direction in accordance with the relevant State regulations. When setting up a warning triangle on the ordinary highway during the day, it shall be set at a place about 50-100 M in the direction of oncoming traffic, if it is on the expressway, it shall be set at a place about 150 M in the direction of oncoming traffic, and at night the distance shall be increased according to the actual situation.

### **👁** Note

**Please correctly use the warning triangles in accordance with the relevant State laws and regulations.**

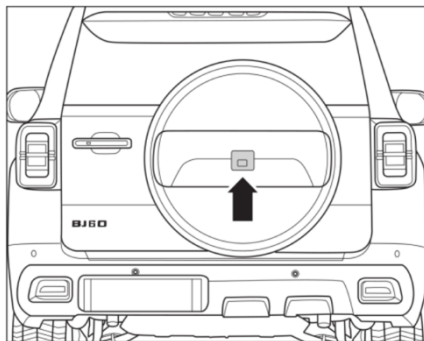
## Spare Tires and Tools

### Spare Tire

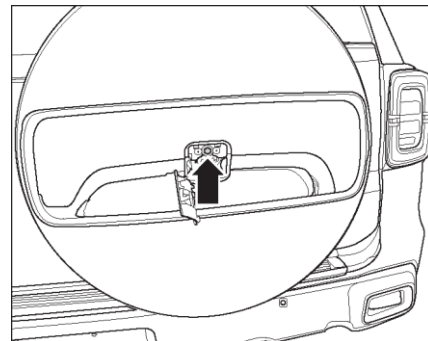


The spare tire is located under the spare tire rack of the tail door. To use it, please take it out according to the following steps:

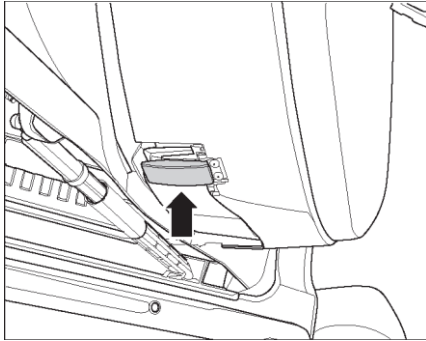
1. Remove the key and wheel nut wrench from the driver's tools.



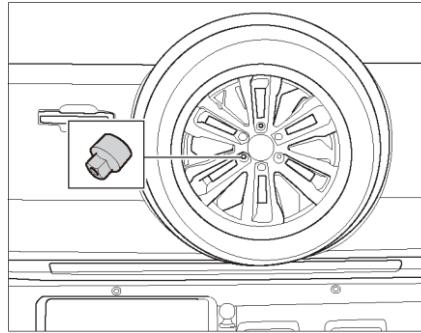
2. Use a tool to raise the lower edge of the spare tire cover \* at the opening.



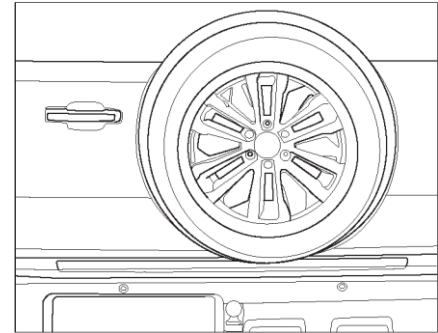
3. Unscrew the fixing bolt with a double-end wrench.



4. Unlock the buckle under the spare tire cover\* and remove the spare tire cover\*.



5. Insert the key into the nut and remove the nut by turning the key; Next, remove the other three ordinary wheel nuts in turn.



6. Align the center hole of the replaced old tire with the stud on the spare tire frame and place it properly.
7. First, pretighten 3 nuts by hand, then if they are ordinary wheel nuts, tighten them with a tightening torque of  $(110 \pm 5) \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ; while if they are equipped with wheel locking nuts, insert the wheel locking key into the nuts at the correct angle and tighten them with a tightening torque of  $(50 \pm 3) \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ .

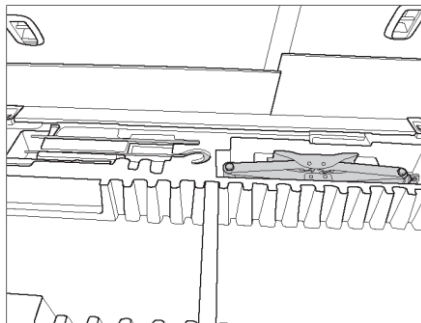
 **Warning**

- Do not use spare tires that have been damaged or worn to the limit.
- The spare tire over 6 years old can only be used in emergency and shall be driven carefully.
- Check the tire pressure as soon as possible after installing the spare tire to make sure it is within the specified limits.

 **Hint**

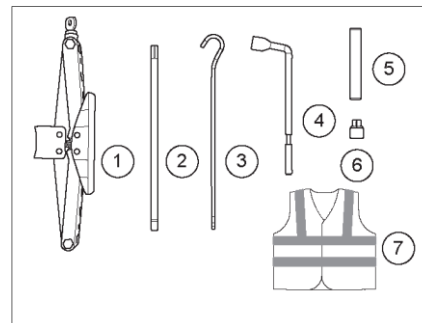
The tire pressures of spare tires are 240 kPa (five seats) and 260 kPa (seven seats).

## Driver's tools



 **Hint**

- The driver's tools of this vehicle are located in the rear floor storage box.
- The reflective vest is arranged in the front storage box.



The driver's tools include:

1. Jack
2. Extension handle for the special wrench of the jack
3. Special wrench for jack
4. wheel assembly removal wrench
5. Double-ended wrench
6. Wheel lock key
7. Reflective waistcoat



 Warning

- **Improper use of the jack may cause serious injuries.**
- **Only use the jack on a hard and flat ground.**
- **The attached jack can only be used to replace wheels of this vehicle. It cannot be used to lift other heavy objects or vehicles.**
- **Do not start the engine when using the jack; otherwise, accidents may occur.**
- **When lifting the vehicle with a jack, remember not to place any part of your body under the vehicle to avoid accidents.**
- **If it is really necessary to work under the vehicle, a suitable protective support must be placed under the vehicle.**

 Warning

- **The wheel nut must be tightened correctly according to the specified tightening torque. Otherwise, the nut may become loose when the vehicle is running, which may cause accidents easily.**
- **Tighten the wheel nut with the provided wheel assembly removal wrench, but the torque cannot be guaranteed. Reasonably control the speed during driving, avoid rapid acceleration and emergency brake, and go to a professional site as soon as possible to check and ensure that the wheel nuts is tightened to the specified torque. The wheel nut torque is (140±10) N·m.**

 Note

**After use, the jack must be put back to its original place. Also pay attention to the supporting angle of the jack and ensure that the jack can be put into the installation box.**

## Replacement of faulty tire

The dimensions of the emergency spare tires and their rims of this car are the same as those of the damaged wheels.

After an emergency spare tire is mounted, the steering performance of the vehicle will change. Please control speed properly to avoid rapid acceleration and emergency brake.

While driving, do NOT use more than one emergency spare tire.

## Preparatory Work

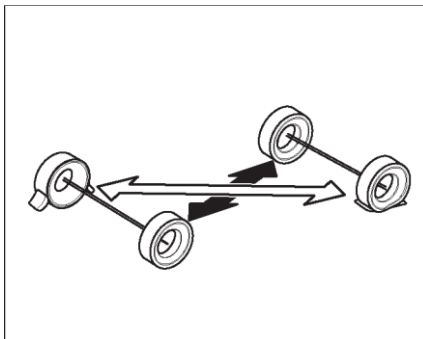
If you find that a tire is flat, you should slowly drive the vehicle to a flat place where safe maintenance can be performed so as to prevent further damage to the tire and the rim. Also, put a warning triangle in a suitable place behind the vehicle, and turn on the emergency warning light.

 **Warning**

There are risks when tires are replaced. The vehicle may slide off the jack, tip over or fall upon you or others, thus causing serious injury. Please find a flat and safe place to replace tires. The relevant laws and regulations must be strictly complied with. All passengers must leave the vehicle and wait in a safe place.

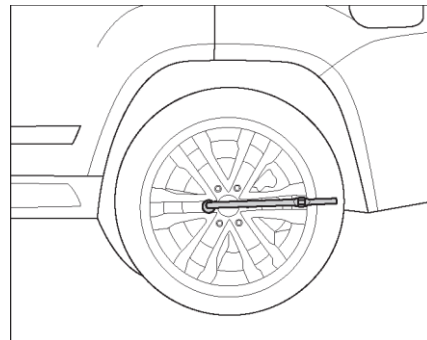
To prevent the vehicle from moving, the following measures should be taken:

1. Apply parking brake.
2. Place the gearshift handle in N position.
3. Turn off the engine and do not start the engine during vehicle lift.
4. Do not allow passengers to stay in vehicle.



To further ensure that the vehicle will not move, you may place a stopper in front of and behind the tire which is farthest away from the tire to be replaced (e.g. the tire which is diagonal to the tire to be replaced).

## Unscrew the wheel nut



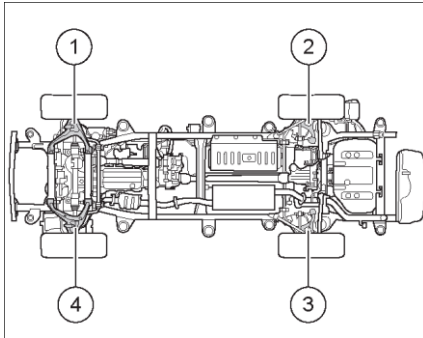
Before jacking the vehicle, be sure to loosen the various wheel nuts first.

Turn the wheel nuts counter-clockwise to loosen them. To get maximum torque, be sure to put the nut into the wrench as shown in the diagram above, hold the end part of the wrench handle and pull it upwards. But, be sure to NOT let the wrench go off the nut.

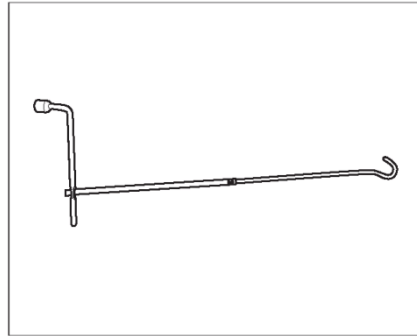
Do NOT remove the nut. Instead, just loosen it by approximately one turn.

**i Hint**

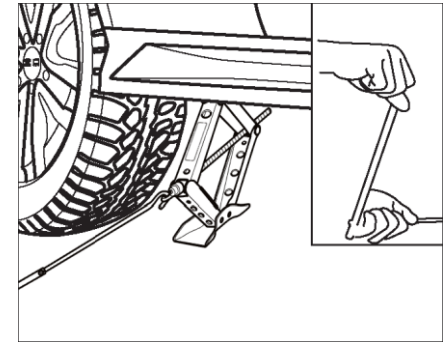
- The wheel nut can only be loosened by one turn before lifting the vehicle with jack.
- The wheel assembly wrench can be used to loosen it.

**Lift vehicle**

Put the jack at the right lifting point. Be sure that the jack is placed on flat, solid ground.



As shown in the diagram, first assemble the jack-use wrench, the jack-use wrench extension rod and the wheel assembly wrench as shown.



Lift the vehicle by turning the jack clockwise with the assembled tool until the tire is off the ground.

Remove the wheel nut first, and then the faulty tire. Be sure to exercise care when touching the lug nuts, because these nuts could have become very hot due to vehicle driving. After removing the faulty tire, place it on the ground with the outer surface facing up.

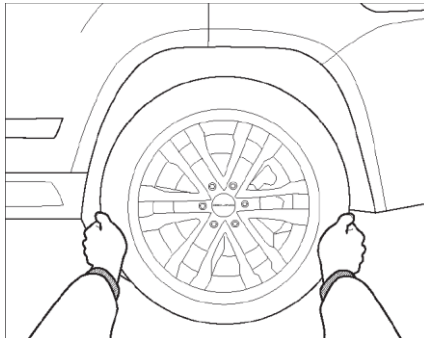
 Note

The lifting and follow-up replacement procedures could only be performed after the nuts of the wheel to be replaced have been loosened.

 Warning

- The jack must be used on a hard and flat ground.
- The jack must be placed in a suitable lift.
- Strictly follow the precautions for jack operation.
- The trailer must be separated from the main vehicle for vehicles with a trailer.
- During the lifting process, it is necessary to continuously observe the condition of the vehicle. If there is a noticeable inclination of the vehicle body, the lifting shall be stopped to identify the problem and solve it before lifting.

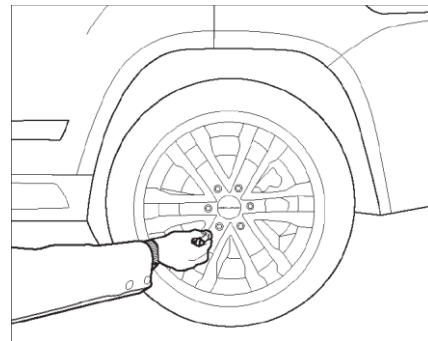
## Installation of spare tire



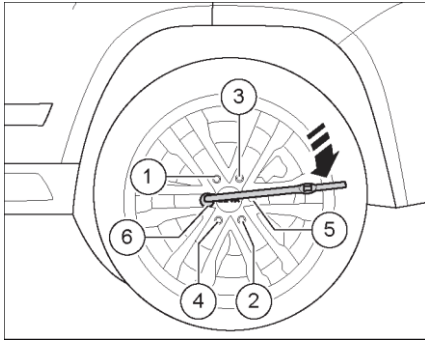
Align the mounting hole of the spare wheel with the mounting hole in the brake disc.

 Note

Before mounting the tire, be sure to use a wire brush (or similar tool) to remove all corrosive items from the mounting surface.



When mounting the lug nuts, use your hand to tighten them first. Then, push the wheel backwards to see if it can be tightened a bit more.



Turn the jack handle clockwise to lower the vehicle.

Tighten the wheel nut with a wheel assembly wrench. Do not use other tools or any handles other than your hand, such as a hammer, pipe, or foot. Make sure the wrench fits snugly over the nut.

Following the sequence as shown in the diagram and evenly tighten the lug nuts.

#### Note

- **Tighten the wheel nut evenly in the sequence shown in the figure.**
- **After installing the wheel, check the wheel nut tightening torque at the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV as soon as possible.**
- **When replacing the wheel, if the nut is rusty or difficult to screw, it must be replaced when checking the tightening torque of the wheel nut, and cleaned the thread.**

#### Warning

**The threads on the lug nuts and the hub must be kept clean and free of grease and other attached items.**

#### Instructions for wheel replacement

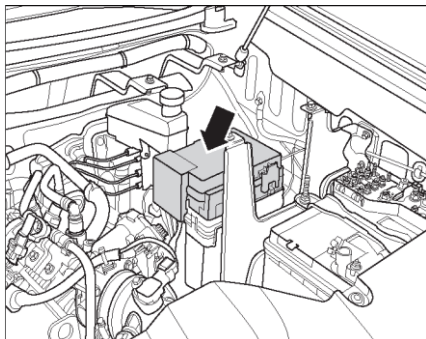
- The replaced wheel shall be correctly installed in the spare tire place in time.
- After use, the driver's tools shall be cleaned in time and put back to the original position.
- Check the wheel nut tightening torque as soon as possible.
- Damaged wheel must be repaired as soon as possible.

#### Note

**The emergency spare tire or the replaced wheel must be reliably fixed to the spare tire rack.**

## Replacement of Fuse

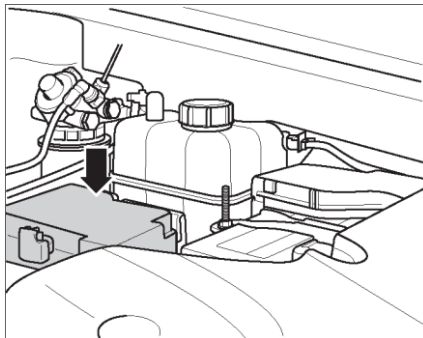
### Engine compartment fuse box (gasoline model)



#### **i** Hint

The electrical box in engine compartment is installed on the left front wheel cover assembly, and the upper cover of the electrical box in engine compartment shall be removed for easy viewing during inspection or repair.

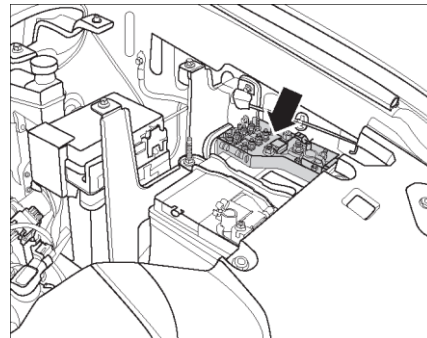
### Engine compartment fuse box (diesel models)



#### **i** Hint

The electrical box in engine compartment is installed on the left front wheel cover assembly, and the upper cover of the electrical box in engine compartment shall be removed for easy viewing during inspection or repair.

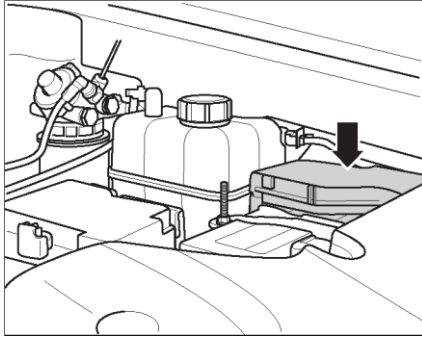
### Battery positive fuse box (gasoline model)



#### **i** Hint

The positive fuse box of the battery is located on the positive pole of the battery. The cover of the fuse box should be removed for inspection or repair.

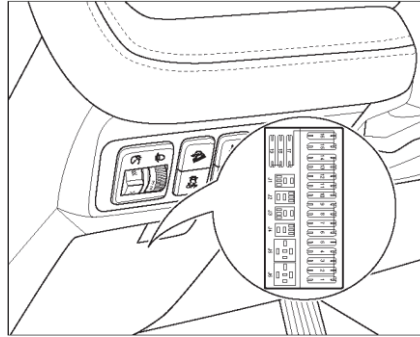
### Battery positive fuse box (diesel models)



#### **i** Hint

The positive fuse box of the battery is located on the positive pole of the battery. The cover of the fuse box should be removed for inspection or repair.

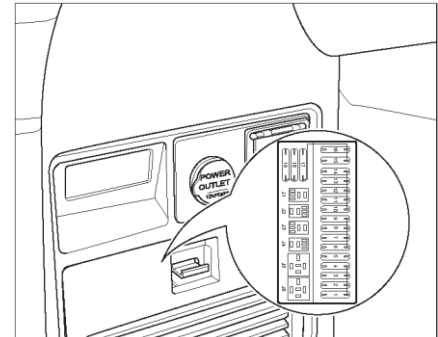
### Fuse box of the dashboard



#### **i** Hint

The dashboard fuse box is located on the left side of the turning column under the dashboard, behind the left storage box of the dashboard. The left storage box of the dashboard shall be removed for inspection or repair.

### Body fuse box



#### **i** Hint

The body fuse box is located on the left side of the trunk and behind the access cover plate. The access cover plate needs to be removed for inspection or repair.

## Check and replace fuse

If a certain electrical device on-board stops working, you should check whether it is caused by fuse damage. It is possible to determine which fuse or fuses to control the component by following the diagram in the "engine compartment distribution center layout" or the location diagram on the fuse box cover. Before it is uncertain if a damaged fuse is the cause of the problem, replace all damaged fuse and check that the electrical devices is working properly. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

Pull out the fuse of the electrical device which has stopped working, and check it out.

Find the melted metal wire in the fuse. If the fuse has melted (the fuse in the place of the arrow in the diagram has been disconnected), be sure to use a spare fuse of the same or lower amperage to replace it.

If no spare fuse can be used and the vehicle cannot be moved as a result, a fuse of the same or lower amperage may be removed from another circuit to make the replacement. However, you must be sure that even if this circuit, such as the circuit of the

cigarette lighter or the radio, is temporarily not used, and that it will not affect your driving.

If the alternative fuse of the same rating blows out in a short time, it indicates that the vehicle may have a serious electrical problem. At this time, the blown fuse shall be left on the circuit and contact the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV.

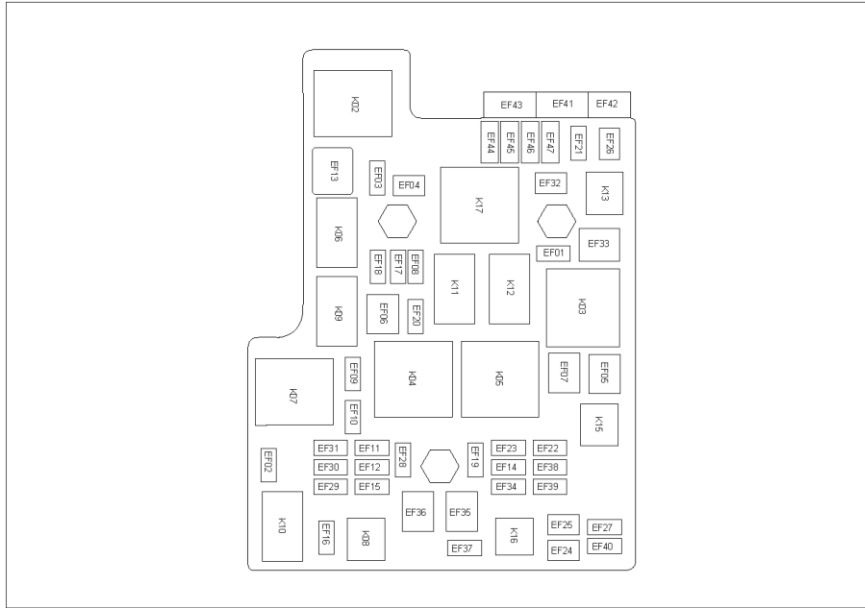


### Note

**If you use a spare fuse of a rather low amperage to replace the melted fuse, it may melt again. If the fault is fixed, you should also use a fuse of the correct rated value to replace it as soon as possible.**



## Engine compartment fuse box (gasoline model)



## Functions and Specifications of Engine Compartment Fuse

Position	Specification	Function
EF01	10A	EMS B+
EF02	15A	Compressor
EF03	5A	Start Feedback
EF04	30A	Starter
EF05	-	Reserved
EF06	-	Reserved
EF07	-	Reserved
EF08	20A	Oil pump
EF09	10A	87 Electrical signal fuse
EF10	15A	ECU-K
EF11	15A	EMS load
EF12	15A	Ignition coil
EF13	30A	Main relay
EF14	5A	DCDC sensor
EF15	5A	IBS
EF16	-	Reserved
EF17	15A	Left low beam fuse
EF18	15A	Right low beam fuse
EF19	20A	High beam relay

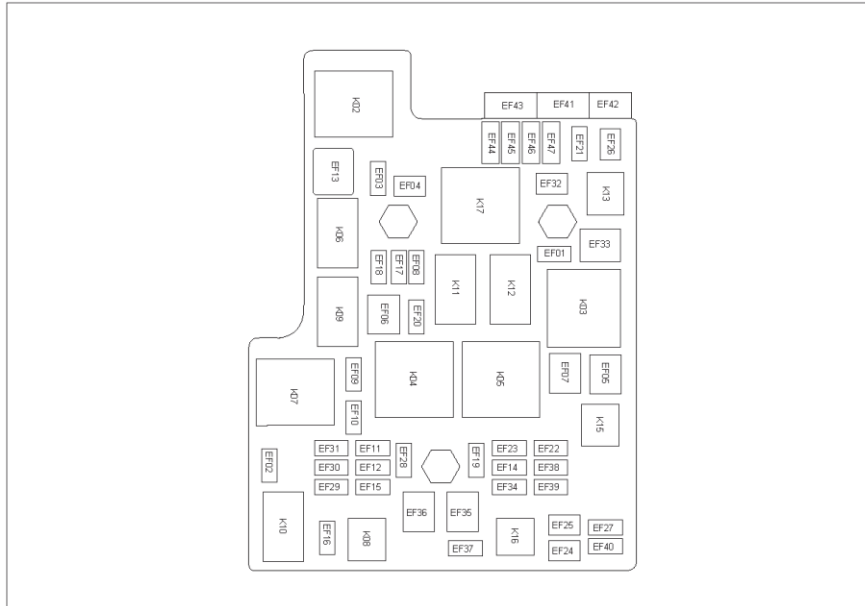
EF20	25A	Front wiper
EF21	10A	Left front fog lamp
EF22	10A	Right front fog lamp
EF23	15A	Horn relay
EF24	-	Reserved
EF25	-	Reserved
EF26	-	Reserved
EF27	-	Reserved
EF28	10A	Constant electric of BSG motor
EF29	-	Reserved
EF30	-	Reserved
EF31	-	Reserved
EF32	-	Reserved
EF33	40A	Front blower
EF34	10A	TCU B+
EF35	40A	WCBS B+
EF36	-	Reserved
EF37	-	Reserved
EF38	-	Reserved
EF39	-	Reserved
EF40	-	Reserved
EF41	80A	IEC

EF42	60A	Body fuse box
EF43	60A	WCBS
K01	Built-in relay	Compressor
K02	-	Starter
K03	-	Reserved
K04	-	Reserved
K05	-	Reserved
K06	-	Oil pump
K07	-	Main relay
K08	-	Reserved
K09	-	Low beam relay
K10	-	High beam relay
K11	-	Front low speed wiper
K12	-	Front wiper
K13	-	Left front fog lamp
K14	Built-in relay	Right front fog lamp
K15	-	Horn relay
K16	-	Reserved
K18	Built-in relay	Reserved
K19	Built-in relay	Reserved

### Hint

- As shown in the figure, there is a spare fuse in the fuse box. If the fuse on your vehicle is damaged, you can use the spare fuse to replace it.
- The fuse described above is not guaranteed to be suitable for every model. For more information about the fuse's purpose, please check the vehicle. Different vehicle models may have slightly different fuses.
- Some electrical appliances may have more than one fuse, or more than one electrical appliance may share a fuse.

## Engine compartment fuse box (diesel models)



## Functions and Specifications of Engine Compartment Fuse

Position	Specification	Function
EF01	10A	EMS B+
EF02	15A	Compressor
EF03	5A	Start Feedback
EF04	30A	Starter
EF05	40A	Reserved
EF06	-	Reserved
EF07	-	Reserved
EF08	30A	Oil pump
EF09	10A	87 Electrical signal fuse
EF10	20A	ECU-K
EF11	15A	EMS load
EF12	15A	EMS load 1
EF13	40A	Main relay
EF14	5A	DCDC sensor
EF15	5A	IBS
EF16	15A	Reserved
EF17	15A	Left low beam fuse
EF18	15A	Right low beam fuse
EF19	20A	High beam relay

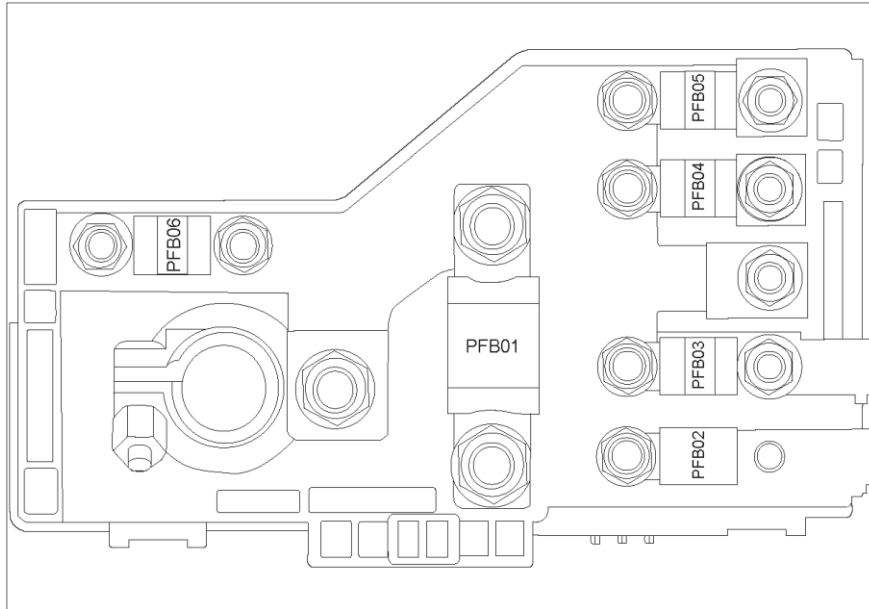
EF20	25A	Front wiper
EF21	10A	Left front fog lamp
EF22	10A	Right front fog lamp
EF23	15A	Horn relay
EF24	-	Reserved
EF25	-	Reserved
EF26	-	Reserved
EF27	-	Reserved
EF28	10A	Constant electric of BSG motor
EF29	-	Reserved
EF30	-	Reserved
EF31	-	Reserved
EF32	-	Reserved
EF33	40A	Front blower
EF34	10A	TCU B+
EF35	40A	WCBS B+
EF36	60A	Reserved
EF37	-	Reserved
EF38	-	Reserved
EF39	-	Reserved
EF40	-	Reserved
EF41	80A	IEC

EF42	60A	Body fuse box
EF43	60A	WCBS
K01	Built-in relay	Compressor
K02	-	Starter
K03	-	Reserved
K04	-	Reserved
K05	-	Reserved
K06	-	Oil pump
K07	-	Main relay
K08	-	Reserved
K09	-	Low beam relay
K10	-	High beam relay
K11	-	Front low speed wiper
K12	-	Front wiper
K13	-	Left front fog lamp
K14	Built-in relay	Right front fog lamp
K15	-	Horn relay
K16	-	Reserved
K18	Built-in relay	Reserved
K19	Built-in relay	Reserved

### Hint

- As shown in the figure, there is a spare fuse in the fuse box. If the fuse on your vehicle is damaged, you can use the spare fuse to replace it.
- The fuse described above is not guaranteed to be suitable for every model. For more information about the fuse's purpose, please check the vehicle. Different vehicle models may have slightly different fuses.
- Some electrical appliances may have more than one fuse, or more than one electrical appliance may share a fuse.

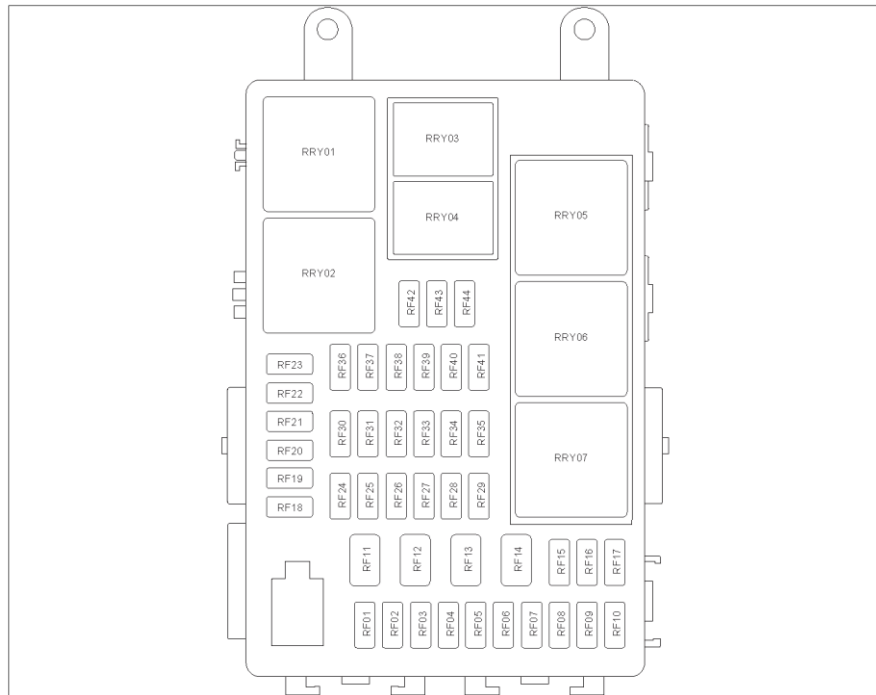
## Battery positive fuse box



## Function and specification of battery positive fuse

Position	Specification	Function
PFB01	200A	Alternator
PFB02	-	Reserved
PFB03	125A	Engine compartment fuse box power supply
PFB04	60A	Right fan
PFB05	100A	EPS (electronic assist turning)
PFB06	80A	Left fan

## Fuse box of the dashboard



## Function and specification of dashboard fuse

Position	Specification	Function
RF01	30A	Electric sunroof
RF02	30A	IG1 relay
RF03	30A	Constant power
RF04	10A	Left front door control module
RF05	10A	Right front door control module
RF06	10A	Auxiliary Instrument Harness Constant Electric
RF07	20A	Electronic differential lock
RF08	-	Reserved
RF09	15A	Auxiliary instrument harness ACC
RF10	15A	Second row 12V power supply ACC
RF11	30A	Left side window motor
RF12	30A	Right side window motor
RF13	30A	Adjustment of front passenger seat
RF14	40A	ACC relay
RF15	-	Reserved
RF16	-	Reserved
RF17	-	Reserved
RF18	10A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)

Position	Specification	Function
RF19	5A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)
RF20	15A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)
RF21	25A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)
RF22	25A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)
RF23	10A	BDC (Body Domain Control system)
RF24	10A	Engine compartment IG/brake lamp switch IG/yaw rate sensor IG/BDC IG
RF25	15A	Turning wheel heating IG
RF26	10A	Body line ACC/turning wheel switch ACC
RF27	10A	Host ACC/APA ACC/Assistant instrument TYPEC charging port ACC/BDC ACC
RF28	10A	Front 220V power supply ACC/Rear 220V power supply ACC
RF29	15A	Rear 12V power supply ACC
RF30	10A	Body line IG
RF31	10A	Instrument IG

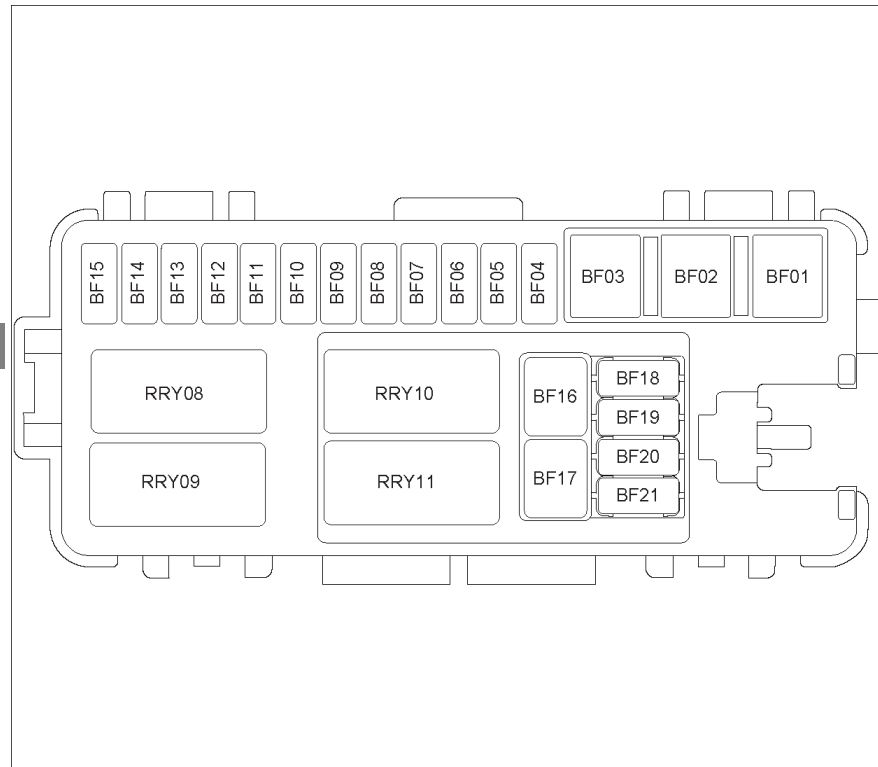
Position	Specification	Function
RF32	5A	Airbag controller IG
RF33	5A	Gateway IG
RF34	10A	Auxiliary instrument IG/Off-road information module IG
RF35	10A	Engine compartment sensor IG/Corner IG
RF36	10A	Brake lamp switch/HUD/turning wheel switch/front A/C switch/off-road information/one-key start constant power
RF37	15A	OBD/Host BATT
RF38	10A	Gateway Normal Current
RF39	10A	Instrument cluster/T-BOX BATT
RF40	10A	DVR/streaming media side mirror/ETC/rain sensor/ambient light/A/C controller normally ON
RF41	-	Reserved
RF42	-	Reserved
RF43	-	Reserved
RF44	-	Reserved
RRY01	-	Reserved
RRY02	-	Reserved
RRY03	-	Reserved

Position	Specification	Function
RRY04	-	Reserved
RRY05	-	Reserved
RRY06	Small relay	IG1 relay
RRY07	Small relay	ACC relay

### Hint

- As shown in the figure, there is a spare fuse in the fuse box. If the fuse on your vehicle is damaged, you can use the spare fuse to replace it.
- The fuse described above is not guaranteed to be suitable for every model. For more information about the fuse's purpose, please check the vehicle. Different vehicle models may have slightly different fuses.
- Some electrical appliances may have more than one fuse, or more than one electrical appliance may share a fuse.

## Body fuse box



## Body fuse functions and specifications

Position	Specification	Function
BF01	30A	Driver's seat power supply
BF02	30A	Driver's seat power supply
BF03	30A	Rear A/C box
BF04	20A	Second row seat power supply
BF05	30A	Rear defrosting
BF06	10A	Driver's lumbar support/front passenger's lumbar support
BF07	30A	Rear 220V power supply
BF08	10A	48 V battery/ACC camera
BF09	25A	Power amplifier controller A
BF10	15A	Rear wiper
BF11	30A	Front 220V power supply
BF12	5A	Rear left corner sensor/RF receiving antenna
BF13	30A	4WD controller
BF14	25A	Power amplifier controller A
BF15	10A	Automatic parking controller
BF16	30A	Driver's seat power supply
BF17	-	Reserved
BF18	-	Reserved



Position	Specification	Function
BF19	-	Reserved
BF20	-	Reserved
BF21	-	Reserved
RRY08	Small relay	Rear wiper relay
RRY09	Small relay	Rear A/C box relay
RRY10	Small relay	Rear defroster relay Accessories relay
RRY11	-	Reserved

**i Hint**

- As shown in the figure, there is a spare fuse in the fuse box. If the fuse on your vehicle is damaged, you can use the spare fuse to replace it.
- The fuse described above is not guaranteed to be suitable for every model. For more information about the fuse's purpose, please check the vehicle. Different vehicle models may have slightly different fuses.
- Some electrical appliances may have more than one fuse, or more than one electrical appliance may share a fuse.

## Replacement of Bulb

It is not usually possible to change a bulb without first removing the other vehicle parts, especially if the bulb is only accessible from the engine compartment. Such work requires professional skills.

Therefore, we recommend that you go to the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV to replace the bulb.

### Warning

- Take special care when working in engine compartment!
- The bulb is under pressure and may explode during replacement - beware of injury!

## Emergency Startup

If the vehicle cannot be started due to a discharged battery, the engine can be started by means of a jumper cable using the battery of another vehicle, and note the following points:

- The rated voltage of the power supply battery must be 12V and its capacity (Ah) should not be lower than the discharged battery of the vehicle.
- Only use jumper cable of sufficient cross-section and pay attention to the cables manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use jumper cable with insulated electrode clamps.

### Hint

The battery capacity of this vehicle is 70 Ah

### Warning

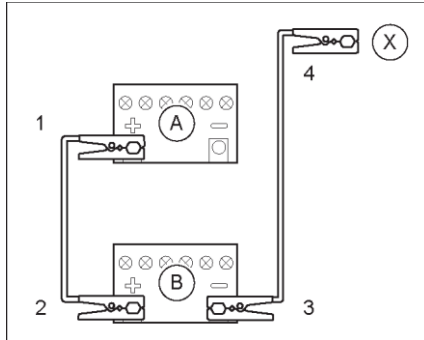
- Never charge a frozen battery - danger of explosion! Even if unfrozen, batteries may encounter overflowing acids when charged, thus causing corrosive damage. Frozen batteries must be replaced.

### Note

- The two vehicles shall not contact with each other during a jump start. Otherwise, once the positive poles of the two batteries are connected, the current is immediately connected, and danger may occur.
- Be sure to carefully read and observe the safety warnings related to battery operation before starting work on the battery.

## Jumper Cables

To connect batteries via jumper cables, it is necessary to connect the positive terminals first and then the negative terminals.



1. Wear protective glasses and remove metal ornaments such as watches and bracelets to prevent electric shock;
2. Turn the Start/Stop button to "OFF" position.
3. Connect one end ① of the red cables to the anode (+) of battery "A" with electricity shortage.
4. Connect the other end ② to the positive pole (+) of power battery "B".

5. Connect one end ③ of the black cable to the cathode (-) of battery "B" with electricity supply, and the other end - 4 - to the engine block of battery "A" with electricity shortage or the metal part fixed to the engine block.
6. Start the vehicle with a powered battery installed and run it at idle speed, then start the engine of the power-starved battery vehicle, which needs to run for a while to allow the motor to charge the battery.
7. Remove the cables in the reverse order of above. When removing the jumper cables, it is necessary to turn on the blower fan or rear windshield heater of the vehicle with the power-receiving battery to lower the peak voltage value generated when the power cables are removed.

### Note

- Position the jumper cable properly to avoid contact between the cables and the moving parts of the engine.
- When removing the jumper cable, it is necessary to turn on the blower or rear windshield heater of the power-starved battery vehicle to reduce the voltage peak generated during removal of the cables.
- The engine shall be running at idle speed state during removal to ensure successful bridging.

### Warning

**Improper use of the jumper cable may cause battery explosion that seriously injures people.**

- The engine compartment is a high-risk area, and improper operation can easily lead to casualties.
- Do not connect the negative cables directly to the negative pole of the battery which is short of electricity. Otherwise, spark will occur at the moment of cables connection. The inflammable gases generated by the battery may be ignited by the sparks, thus causing explosive accidents.
- Do not connect the negative cables to the parts of the fuel system or to the brake pipeline, otherwise there is a risk of fire.
- Do not bend and face at the battery during operation. Avoid being burned by acid.
- Do not touch the open flame, otherwise it may cause explosion.

## Emergency tow

The front and rear parts of the vehicle are both equipped with a towing ring which can be used for towing things. When your vehicle breaks down or has an accident, the front or rear towing ring can be used as a traction point to tow your vehicle.

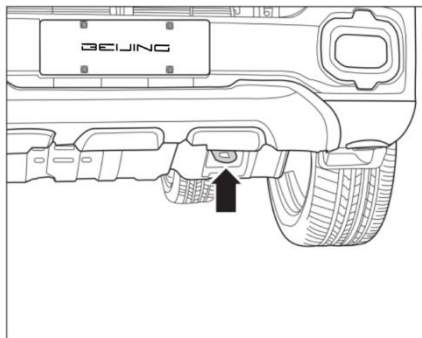
### Note

**The towing ring must not be used to tow other vehicles. It cannot be used to tow trailers.**

The best towing method is to use a special towing vehicle. If hoisting towing (with the front wheels lifted) is needed or the vehicle must be towed with all four wheels on the ground, attention should be paid to:

- Turn on the hazard indicator light when the Start/Stop button is in the "RUN" position.
- The transmission gearshift handle shall be placed in the "N" position and the transfer case shall be placed in the 2H position.
- If it is necessary to tow the vehicle, be sure to place the transmission in the "N" position through the "P" position unlocking mechanism first (see "Transmission P emergency unlock" on Page 181).

## Vehicle front tow



The front towing eye is mounted on the lower left side of the front bumper of the vehicle.

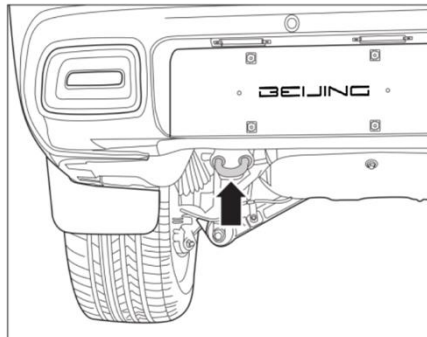
### Warning

- **Inexperienced driver should never attempt to tow other vehicle to prevent accidents.**

### Note

- **The driver of the tow vehicle must open the hazard warning light, and at the same time, please comply with relevant local regulations.**
- **Ensure that the tow rope is always in a taut state.**

## Vehicle Rear Tow



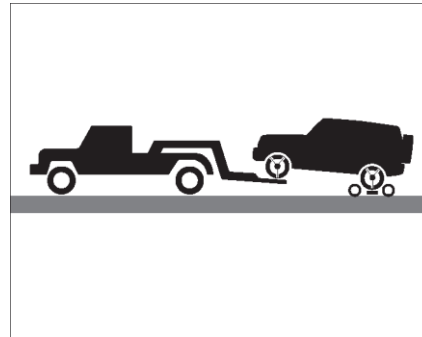
The rear towing eye (as shown in the figure) is mounted on a welded plate at the rear of the vehicle.

## Vehicle towing

If the vehicle needs to be towed, it is recommended that you entrust the authorized dealership of BAIC ORV or commercial towing company to handle it for you. When you contact them, you must tell them how the vehicle needs to be dragged.

To drag the vehicle, a suitable towing device may be used to ensure that the vehicle is dragged without damage. Commercial towing company personnel are familiar with national/provincial and local towing laws and can be consulted for assistance!

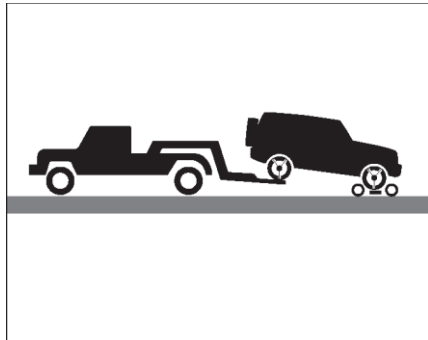
## Towing from the front



### Note

**Do NOT drag the vehicle from the front when its rear wheels are on the ground. When the wheels are lifted, be sure to confirm that the opposite end of the lifted side keeps a suitable clearance off the ground. Otherwise, during the dragging the bumper or body of the dragged vehicle might be damaged.**

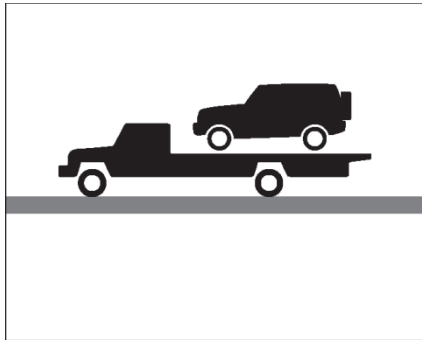
## Dragging from Behind



### Note

Do NOT drag the vehicle from the rear when the front wheels are on the ground. This will seriously damage the transmission of the vehicle.

## Use of platform vehicle



### Note

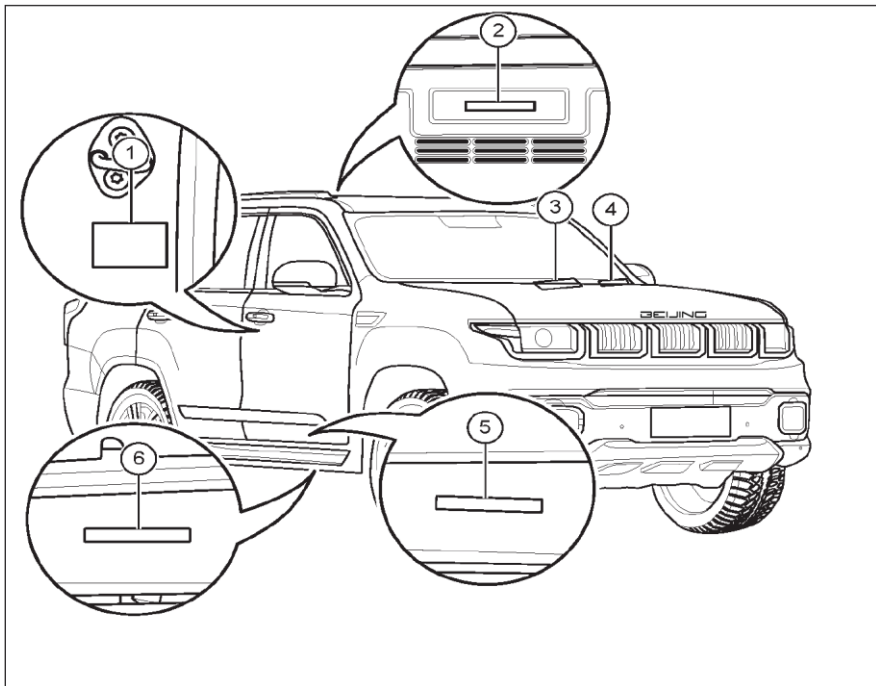
Be sure to apply the parking brake and fix all four wheels properly to prevent the vehicle from moving in the event of emergency braking.

---

## 6 Technical data

Identification Number .....	326
Vehicle Parameters .....	330

## Identification Number



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is marked in six places: on the vehicle plate①, on the inside of the tailgate ②, in the middle of the engine compartment hood③, on the underside of the left windshield④, on the cross member of the passenger seat⑤, and on the side member of the right frame⑥.

In addition to marking the vehicle VIN on the vehicle, the diagnostic device can be connected to the vehicle through the OBD interface of the vehicle. The engine controller EMS can be selected based on the vehicle model, and the vehicle VIN of the controller can be read. The vehicle data plate is affixed to the middle and lower part of the right pillar B, and some model data plates are riveted to the right elevation of the engine compartment.

Purchasing channels and contact information of the diagnostic instrument: BAIC International Development Co., Ltd. contact@baicintl.com

Diagnostic instrument system at present:

Accessory code: T19900010

Accessory name: PAD diagnostic instrument kit



## Event data recording system

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recording system (EDR). The main purpose of EDR is to record some of the vehicle's vehicle states in case of major collision accident, including the vehicle's longitudinal acceleration, braking state, vehicle speed and vehicle identification number (VIN) so as to understand the driving situation of the vehicle in case of collision accident. The EDR will not record data under normal driving conditions.

Specific meaning of record content:

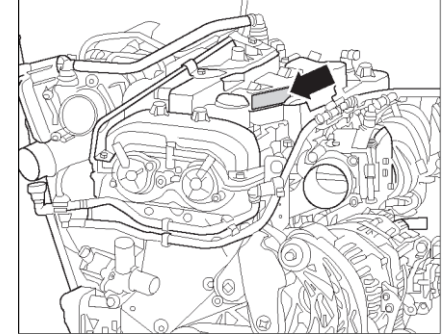
- Longitudinal acceleration: The acceleration in the forward direction of the vehicle at the time of collision accident.
- Brake state: The braking situation in case of collision accident.
- Vehicle speed: the vehicle speed at which the collision accident occurs.
- Vehicle identification code: i.e. vehicle VIN.

### Hint

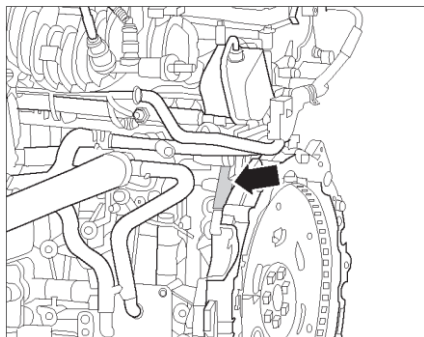
**The purpose of the above is to capture the vehicle state at the time of the incident and to facilitate the investigation of the collision accident by third parties such as law enforcement.**

Access to the data recorded by EDR requires a special equipment and authorization from the vehicle or EDR. In addition to the manufacturer of the vehicle, third parties with specialized equipment (such as law enforcement) can access the information when authorized to use the vehicle or EDR.

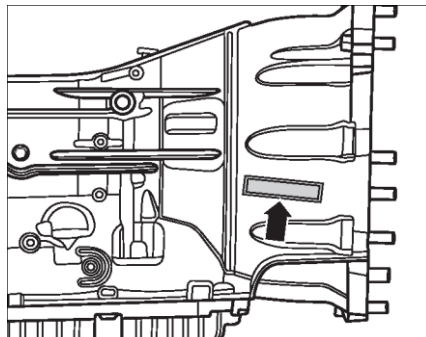
## Engine, gearbox and transfer case coding



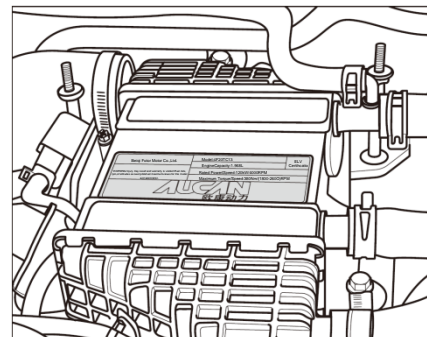
The engine code is pasted on the body of the engine.



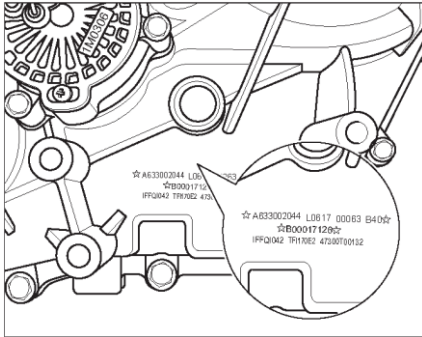
The engine code is engraved on the body of the engine.



The transmission code is pasted to the transmission housing.

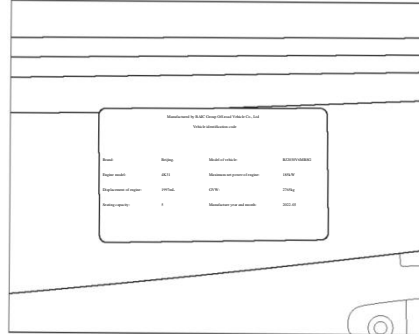


The diesel engine model and code are affixed to the top intercooler of the engine and the front timing system cover.



The transfer case code is engraved on the rear housing of the transfer case.

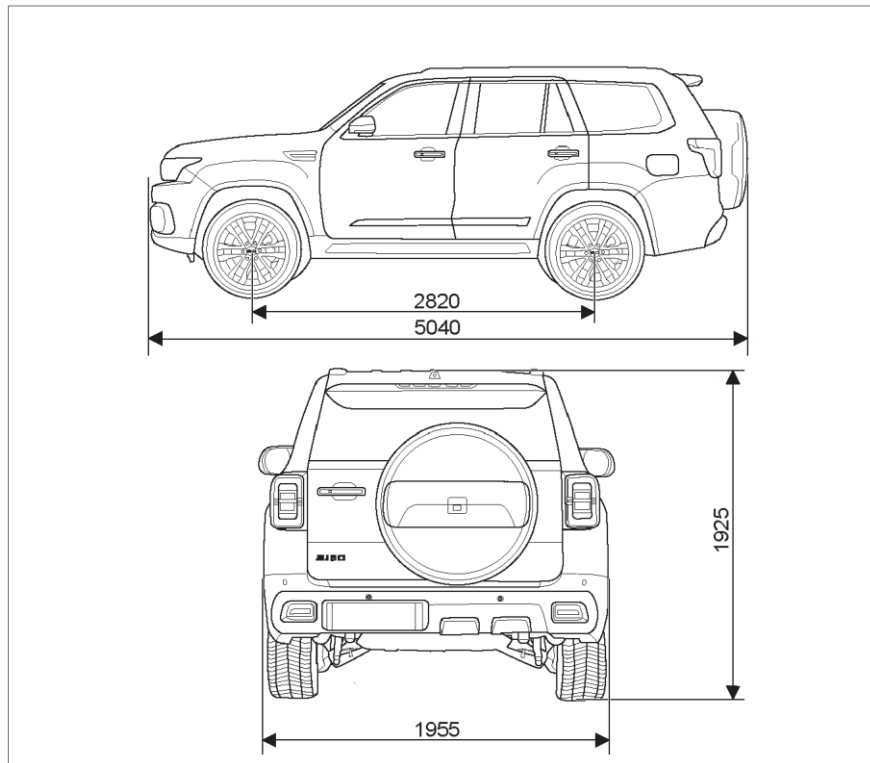
## Vehicle nameplate



The nameplate is located in the middle and lower part of the B-pillar on the front passenger side. The following information can be read on the nameplate:

1. Vehicle identification code
2. Brand, vehicle model
3. Engine model and the maximum net power of engine
4. Engine displacement and GVW
5. Number of occupants, date of manufacture
6. Name of manufacturer
7. Country of manufacture

## Vehicle Parameters



Item	Dimension
Total length (mm)	5040
Overall width (mm)	1955
Overall height (mm)	1925
Wheelbase (mm)	2820
Minimum ground clearance (mm)	≥215
Front wheel distance (mm)	1620
Rear wheel track (mm)	1640

Name of parts not included in the overall dimensions of vehicle according to GB1589: side mirror.

The side mirror locates in the front middle of the left and right front doors, above the door hinges.

## Main models and technical specifications

Model of vehicle	BJ2030V6M	BJ2030V6MBSG	BJ2030V61MBSG	BJ2030V6NBSG	BJ2030V61NBSG
Engine model	4K31TD	4K31TD	4K31TD	4F20TC30	4F20TC30
Drive type	Time-sharing 4 WD	Time-sharing 4 WD	Time-sharing 4 WD	Time-sharing 4 WD	Time-sharing 4 WD
Vehicle emission level at the time of delivery	National VI b	National VI b	National VI b	National VI b	National VI b
Length(mm)	5040	5040	5040	5040	5040
Width(mm)	1955	1955	1955	1955	1955
Height (mm)	1925	1925	1925	1925	1925
Wheelbase (mm)	2820	2820	2820	2820	2820
Front wheel distance (mm)	1620	1620	1620	1620	1620
Rear wheel track (mm)	1640	1640	1640	1640	1640
Minimum ground clearance (mm)	215	215	215	215	215
Number of passengers allowed	5	5	7	5	7
Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	11.2	11.2	11.2	11.2	11.2
Approach angle / departure angle (°)	30/24	30/24	30/24	30/24	30/24
Empty vehicle mass (kg)	2200	2295	2320	2400	2450
Axle load front/rear (kerb state)	1100/1100	1148/1147	1137/1183	1176/1224	1176/1274
Total mass (kg)	2700	2795	2920	2900	3050
Axle Load Front/Rear (Full Load State)	1215/1485	1250/1545	1225/1695	1276/1624	1281/1769
0-100km/h continuous gear shifting acceleration time (s)	≤10.5	≤9.5	≤9.5	≤14.8	≤14.8
Maximum speed (km/h)	≥180	≥180	≥180	≥160	≥160
Maximum climbing gradient (%) on dry and hard concrete pavement	≥100	≥100	≥100	≥100	≥100
Fuel consumption under comprehensive working conditions (L/100km)	≤9.8	≤9.5	≤9.5	≤8.5	≤8.5
Fuel consumption at equal speed of 90Km/h (L/100km)	≤9.0	≤9.0	≤9.0	≤8.0	≤8.0

## Front Wheel Alignment Parameters

Kingpin inclination	13°24'±20'
Kingpin Caster	5°30'±30'
Extroversion of wheels	0°±30'
Toe-in angle (one side)	0°9'±3'

## Rear wheel alignment parameters

Toe-in angle (one side)	-10'±6'
Extroversion of wheels	-1°±30'

## Wheel parameter

Item		Front Wheel	Rear Wheel	Spare tire
Tire pressure (cold state) (kPa)	5 seats	220	240	240
	7 seats	220	240 (half load)	260
	260 (full load)			
Rim and tire size		18X8J、265/65R18 20X8.5J、275/50R20		
Wheel nut torque (N·m)		140±10	140±10	110±5(Ordinary nut) 50±3 (wheel lock nut, if any)
Dynamic Balance standard of Wheel		Unilateral Residual Unbalance ≤8 g (HT Tire) Unilateral Residual Unbalance ≤10 g (AT Tyre)		

## Brake system

Brake pedal's free stroke (mm)	10~20
Use limit of front brake lining (not including backboard thickness) (mm)	2
Use limit of rear brake lining (not including backboard thickness) (mm)	2

## Electrical appliance

Type of Battery	Maintenance-free
20h rate capacity	70AH
Voltage and electrode	12V, negative pole (-) grounding

## Engine Parameters

Engine model	4K31TD	4F20TC30
Fuel type	Gasoline	Diesel
Form	In-line four-cylinder	In-line
Emission standard	National VI (6b)	National VI (6b)
Cylinder diameter (mm)	81.5	81
Piston stroke (mm)	95.7	95.5
Displacement (L)	1.997	1.968
Compression ratio	10:1	16.2:1
Rated power (RPM) kW (r/min)	196/5600	120/3600
Maximum net power (RPM) kW (r/min)	188/5600	119/3600
Maximum torque (RPM) N·m (r/min)	400/2000-4000	400/1500-2400
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is not working) (under fully thermal engine conditions)	700±25	710±30
Idle speed (r/min) (when the A/C is running) (fully warmed up)	750	710±30

### Consumption and filling amount

	Dosage or filling amount (L)	Brand
Fuel tank (gasoline model)	85±2	Gasoline 92# and Above
Fuel tank (diesel models)	85±2	Diesel/-35#-0# Diesel
Engine oil (gasoline model)	5.3 (Replace the engine oil and engine oil filter) 5.1 (Engine oil change only)	Select SP5W-30 when the temperature is above -30°C, and select SP0W-20 when the temperature is below -30°C
Engine oil (diesel models)	5.2	Special engine oil for diesel engines of ACEA standard C3 or higher shall be used. GS Kixx D1 C3 5W-30 and PAO1 0W-30 are recommended. For extreme temperatures, the engine shall select the appropriate engine oil according to the outside temperature.
Automatic transmission lubricant	8.5	Shell L12108 is recommended
Splitter liquid	1.8	SAEGL-475W85
Coolant (gasoline model)	10	Ethylene glycol based antifreeze
Coolant (diesel models)	11	Ethylene glycol based antifreeze
Windshield washing liquid	2.7	-
Brake fluid	1	DOT4

### Front and rear axle gear oil

Name	Usage or injected amount (L)	Brand
Front axle gear oil	1.1	GL-5 80W-90
Rear axle gear oil	1.8	GL-5 80W-90



**Lamp light source**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Model</b>	<b>Specification</b>
Front combination lamp (including high/low beam, position lamp and front turn signal)	LED	—
Rear combination lamp (including position lamp, brake lamp, backup lamp and turn signal)	LED	—
High braking light	LED	—
Daytime driving lights	LED	—
Trunk light	LED	—
Foot space lamp	LED	—
Ambient lamp	LED	—
Front fog lamp	LED	—
Rear fog lamp	P21W	12V21W
Roof light	C10W	12V10W
Vanity mirror light	LED	—
Reading Light	LED	—
Glove box light	C5W	12V5W

---

## **7 Rescue services**

Rescue service.....	337
---------------------	-----

## Rescue service

Beijing Offroad is available 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. When your vehicle breaks down and you can't handle it yourself, you can get help by:

- Call the local authorized dealership of BAIC ORV;
- Call BAIC ORV national rescue service hotline: 4008108177, we will send rescue teams to implement rescue services in the shortest time.

Vehicle rescue service for faults occurring during the warranty period and within warranty claim scope shall be free of charge (including availability expenses, towing expenses), with exceptions in the following cases:

- Rescue activities without the prior consent of BAIC ORV and its service providers;
- Vehicles already in the repair shop;
- Due to accidents, theft or vandalism, as well as any damage caused thereof;
- Losses caused by intentional or negligent acts;
- Damages caused by participation in car racing or other activities involving driving at extreme speeds;
- Damage caused by retrofitting of components and parts not approved by BAIC Offroad or retrofitting of the vehicle without permission from BAIC Offroad.

Vehicle rescue service for faults occurring during the warranty period but beyond the claim scope shall be at the customer's expenses, including availability expenses, towing expenses, man-hour expenses and material expenses.

---

## **8 Maintenance information**

Maintenance Specifications .....	339
----------------------------------	-----

## Maintenance Specifications

There are two types of Maintenance and Repair Standards on this vehicle. Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the specifications.

"Class A Maintenance and Repair Standards" specifies the maintenance intervals under normal use; If your vehicle is frequently used under the following conditions, it should be maintained according to "Class B Maintenance and Repair Standards":

- Frequent short-distance driving not exceeding 8 km;
- Often travels in a dusty environment;
- Often used as a trailer;
- The vehicle is in idle state for a long time;
- Driving at high speed more than 50% of the time in an environment above 32°C;
- Off-road driving;
- Driving in the desert.

In addition, when you stop your car and fuel it each time,

- Check the engine oil level and fill it as required;
- Check the cleaning agent of the windshield and fill it as required.
- The following maintenance and inspection shall be carried out monthly:
  - Check the tire pressure and wearing conditions;
  - Check the voltage, clean the battery electrode and tighten it if necessary;
  - Check the level of coolant, brake fluid and power turning fluid, and fill it if necessary;
  - Check whether all lights and electrical appliances on the vehicle work normally, and inspection and repair them immediately if there is any abnormality.
- At each engine oil replacement,
- Inspection exhaust system;
- Check the brake tubing;
- Check the engine coolant, pipes and clips;
- Check the external surface of transmission and transfer case for leakage;
- Lubricate sliding splines as required;
- After off-road driving, check the vehicle bottom thoroughly and tighten loose parts.

### Note

**Whenever there is component failure or doubt about whether a component does not work, be sure to check and maintain the vehicle and keep the repair records.**

### Note

- **If the vehicle inventory lasts more than 3 months, the engine must be run once for at least 20 minutes.**
- **If the vehicle is driven in harsh environment and working conditions for a long time, please conduct maintenance in advance. For details, please consult the local authorized dealer.**

### Maintenance and Repair Standards of Category A (Gasoline Models)

Maintenance Time Maintenance item	First maintenance 5,000 km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular service 10,000km/12 months whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	●	●	Replace every 10,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Oil pan drain plug washer	●	●	Replace every 10,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Engine oil filter	●	●	Replace every 10,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Throttle valve	—	—	Clean for the first 15,000 km/18 months (whichever comes first) and every 20,000 km/18 months thereafter (replace if necessary)
Spark plug	—	—	Replace every 30,000 km/36 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessories drive belt	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	Add inspection items for each maintenance (if there is crack, and the edge is seriously worn, replace it); Afterwards, replace it at an interval not exceeding 100,000 km
Air filter element	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check and clean every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)
Air cleaner filter	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)
Fuel filter	—	—	Replace every 30000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant	○	—	Replace every 40,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Brake fluid of the brake system	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 40,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)
Splitter oil	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 50,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)

<b>Maintenance Time</b> <b>Maintenance item</b>	<b>First maintenance 5,000 km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first</b>	<b>Regular service 10,000km/12 months whichever comes first</b>	<b>Additional maintenance</b>
Brake Lining	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	—
Front & rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	40,000 km/24 months replacement (whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushing	—	—	Check every 20,000 km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable Replacement Period of Fuel (Gas) Hose	—	—	Check the rubber hose for leakage every 60,000 km/36 months, and replace it if necessary
Sunroof	○	○	—

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replacement — No instructions

### Class B Maintenance and Repair Standards (gasoline model)

Maintenance Time Maintenance item	First maintenance at 2,500 km/3 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regular service at 5,000km/6 months (whichever comes first)	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	●	●	Replace it every 5,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Oil pan drain plug washer	●	●	Replace it every 5,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine oil filter	●	●	Replace it every 5,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Throttle valve	—	—	After cleaning for the first 7,500 km/9 months (whichever comes first), do cleaning for every 10,000 km/9 months thereafter (replace parts if necessary)
Spark plug	—	—	Replace every 15,000 km/18 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessories drive belt	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	Add inspection items for each maintenance (if there is crack, and the edge is seriously worn, replace it); Afterwards, replace it at an interval not exceeding 50,000 km
Air filter element	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first) Check and clean it every 5,000 km (replace it if necessary) Desert area: check and clean the filter element in time, and replace it if necessary.
Air cleaner filter	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first) Check every 5,000 km (replace if necessary)
Fuel filter	—	—	Replace parts for every 15,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant	○	—	Replace parts for every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Brake fluid of the brake system	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 40,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)



<b>Maintenance Time</b> <b>Maintenance item</b>	<b>First maintenance at 2,500 km/3 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first</b>	<b>Regular service at 5,000km/6 months (whichever comes first)</b>	<b>Additional maintenance</b>
Splitter oil	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace parts for every 25,000 km / 12 months (whichever comes first) and check for every 5,000 km (replace parts if necessary)
Brake Lining	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	—
Front & rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	20,000 km/12 months replacement (whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushing	—	—	Inspect every 10,000 km/6 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable Replacement Period of Fuel (Gas) Hose	—	—	Check the hose for leakage every 30,000 km/18 months, and replace it if necessary
Sunroof	○	○	—

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replacement — No instructions

### Maintenance and Repair Standards of category A (diesel models)

Maintenance Time Maintenance item	First maintenance 5,000 km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first	Regularly service it every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first). Check the engine oil level every 1,000 km and refill it if necessary
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace parts for every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessories drive belt	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	Add inspection items for each maintenance (if there is crack, and the edge is seriously worn, replace it); Afterwards, replace it at an interval not exceeding 100,000 km
Timing belt	—	—	Inspect every 10,000km, and replace if necessary
Three-leakage (Water Leakage, Air Leakage and Oil Leakage)	○	—	Check every 10,000 km
Electrical Devices, Joints	○	—	Check every 10,000 km
Tightening of Each Accessory	○	—	Check every 10,000 km
Air filter element	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check and clean every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)
Air cleaner filter	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)
Diesel filter	—	—	Replace it every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 40,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Brake fluid of the brake system	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 40,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first)

<b>Maintenance Time</b> <b>Maintenance item</b>	<b>First maintenance 5,000 km/6 months (subject to the purchase invoice), whichever comes first</b>	<b>Regularly service it every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)</b>	<b>Additional maintenance</b>
Splitter oil	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace every 50,000 km/24 months (whichever comes first) Check every 10,000 km (replace if necessary)
Brake Lining	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	—
Front & rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	40,000 km/24 months replacement (whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushing	—	—	Check every 20,000 km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar pillar cushion	—	—	Check every 20,000 km/12 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable Replacement Period of Fuel (Gas) Hose	—	—	No replacement, with vehicle life
Sunroof	○	○	—
Urea tank vent valve	—	—	Replace every 16,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replacement — No instructions

### Maintenance and Repair Standards of Category B (Diesel Models)

Maintenance Time Maintenance item	Initial maintenance: 2,000km (Subject to the purchase invoice)	Regular service for 5,000 km/3 months whichever comes first	Additional maintenance
Engine oil	•	•	Replace every 5,000km or 3 months (whichever comes first), check the oil level every 1,000 km, and add if necessary
Engine oil filter	•	•	Replace it every 5,000 km/3 months (whichever comes first)
Engine accessories drive belt	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	Add inspection items for each maintenance (if there is crack, and the edge is seriously worn, replace it); Afterwards, replace it at an interval not exceeding 50,000 km
Timing belt	—	—	Inspect every 10,000km, and replace if necessary
Three-leakage (Water Leakage, Air Leakage and Oil Leakage)	○	—	—
Electrical Devices, Joints	○	—	—
Tightening of Each Accessory	○	—	—
Air filter element	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first) Check and clean it every 5,000 km (replace it if necessary) Desert area: check and clean the filter element in time, and replace it if necessary.
Air cleaner filter	○ (Clean when necessary)	○ (Clean when necessary)	Replace every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first) Check every 5,000 km (replace if necessary)
Diesel filter	—	—	Replace parts for every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)
Engine coolant	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace parts for every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)
Automatic transmission oil	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free	Maintenance-free
Brake fluid of the brake system	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace it every 20,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first)

<b>Maintenance Time Maintenance item</b>	<b>Initial maintenance: 2,000km (Subject to the purchase invoice)</b>	<b>Regular service for 5,000 km/3 months whichever comes first</b>	<b>Additional maintenance</b>
Splitter oil	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	Replace parts for every 25,000 km/12 months (whichever comes first) and check for every 5,000 km (replace parts if necessary)
Brake Lining	○ (Replace when necessary)	○ (Replace when necessary)	—
Front & rear axle assembly gear oil	—	—	20,000 km/12 months replacement (whichever comes first)
Drive shaft spline grease	○ (Add when necessary)	○ (Add when necessary)	—
Front/rear stabilizer bar bushing	—	—	Inspect every 10,000 km/6 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Stabilizer bar pillar cushion	—	—	Inspect every 10,000 km/6 months (replace if necessary) (whichever comes first)
Reasonable Replacement Period of Fuel (Gas) Hose	—	—	No replacement, with vehicle life
Sunroof	○	○	—
Urea tank vent valve	—	—	Replace parts for every 10,000 km/6 months (whichever comes first)

Note: ○ Inspection ● Replacement — No instructions